TONTITOWN DRAINAGE CRITERIA MANUAL

CITY OF TONTITOWN

May 2021

CHAPTER 1. SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

CONTENTS

Section Page
SR-

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Purpose of the Chapter

The purpose of this Submittal Requirements chapter is to provide a means to standardize the plans and drainage reports for proposed improvements submitted to the City for review.

1.0 PLAN REQUIREMENTS

1.1 Plan Sheets

The plan sheets for improvements shall be submitted on 24”x36” sheets. Plan drawings shall be of an appropriate scale to be legible; the suggested scale is typically 1”=100’. Legibility will be determined by the City’s engineer or planning staff. Profile drawings shall be provided for all storm sewers and drainage ditches at a suggested scale of 1”=20’ horizontal and 1”=5’ (minimum) vertical.

Plan sheets shall conform to generally accepted engineering practices; special conditions may require additional information.

1.1.1 Title Sheet

The title sheet shall include:

- Project name, nature of the project, city and state.
- Index of sheets.
- A location or vicinity map showing the project in relation to existing streets, railroads and physical features with a 2 mile radius.
- A project control benchmark identified and referenced to the City of Tontitown GPS control monuments.
- The name and address of the project owner and the engineer preparing the plans.
- Engineer’s seal, signature and date.
- North arrow and scale
- Certificates per City of Tontitown Code of Ordinances Subsection 152.116
- Property description
- Utility companies
- Project information: setbacks, site area, zoning, property usage, etc.
- General Notes specific to the project
- Existing and proposed legend

1.1.2 Layout Sheets

In general, layout sheets shall contain to the following:

- North arrow and scale.
- Name of project.
- Boundary line of project area.
- Location and description of existing major drainage facilities within or adjacent to the project area.
- Location of proposed drainage facilities.
- Location and description of utilities within or adjacent to the project area.
- Provide match lines if more than one sheet is necessary.
- The date, registration seal, and signature of the Engineer of Record.
- Elevations shown in the plans shall be based on City of Tontitown GPS control monuments.
- The top of each page shall be either north or east. The stationing of street plans and profiles shall be from left to right and downstream to upstream for open and closed channels.
- Show topography a minimum of 20' beyond the project area; 50' for channel improvements.
- Show existing and proposed property and easement lines with dimensions.
- Minimum finish floor elevations shall be shown a minimum of two feet above the 100-year water surface elevation on each lot when located in a designated floodplain and in areas where flooding is known to occur. All buildings, whether in or out of a designated floodplain shall have the finished floor elevation a minimum of 12 inches above the land immediately surrounding the building. All buildings in a subdivision are required to have the finish floor 12 inches above the gutter line of the curb.

1.2 Drainage Report

- The following items shall be included in the Drainage Report that accompanies each proposed improvement plan set submitted to the City:
- Project title and date.
- Project location – include the street address and a vicinity map.
- Project description – a brief description of the proposed project.
- Project owner's name, address, and telephone number.
- Site area – to the nearest 0.1 acre.

- Site drainage – a brief description of the site drainage for the proposed project.
- Area drainage problems – provide a description of any known on-site, downstream, or upstream drainage/flooding problems.
- Upstream and downstream drainage – pre- and post-developed drainage area maps as well as inlet area maps with the time of concentration flow paths and proposed and existing topography shown as appropriate.
- Summary of runoff – provide a table with the 1-, 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year storm flows for existing and proposed conditions (with and without detention if shown) and the proposed difference in flows.
- Calculations – provide copies of all calculations performed, including:
    - Runoff flow calculations for the 1-, 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year storm events (existing and proposed conditions),
    - Coefficients or runoff curve numbers,
    - Inlet calculations,
    - Pipe or culvert calculations,
    - Open-channel calculations including any flumes,
    - Detention calculations including
        - Basin sizing calculations
        - Outlet structure design with release rates computations for the 1-, 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year storm events,
        - Stage-storage and stage-discharge curves
    - Hydraulic grade line calculations.
- Recommendations/Summary – description of any assumptions made in the calculations, drainage improvements to be made to the site, and the expected effects of the project.
- Certification – all drainage reports shall be signed, sealed and dated by an engineer registered in the State of Arkansas and shall include the following certification:

I ___________________________, Registered Professional Engineer No. __________ in the State of Arkansas, hereby certify that the drainage designs and specifications contained in this Report have been prepared by me, or under my responsible supervision, in accordance with the regulations of the City of Tontitown, Arkansas and the Professional Engineers Registration Act of the State of Arkansas, and reflect the application of generally accepted standards of engineering practice. I further certify that the improvements outlined in this Report will not have any adverse effects to life or downstream properties. I understand that review of these plans is limited to general compliance with the City codes and regulations and does not warrant the engineer's design or imply any liability to the City of Tontitown for the designs contained herein.

____

Signed and Sealed by Professional Engineer

1.3 As-built Drawings and Certifications

Final as-built plans and a certification letter shall be submitted to the City's Planning Office upon completion of all work for the drainage improvements. The certification letter shall be signed by the engineer of record affirming that all improvements have been constructed as shown in the as-built plans which shall conform to the approved construction plans. All modifications approved by the City post construction document approval shall be shown in amended construction plans and drainage report. All improvements must be in place and as-builts, certifications, one-year maintenance bond for 50% of the cost of drainage improvements and easements provided to the City Planner prior to Final Plat for a subdivision or issuance of the Certificate of Occupancy for a Large Scale Development. **As-built plans shall be based on surveyed data of all constructed improvements.** As-builts will be submitted on:

- One hard-copy plan set (signed, sealed, and dated by the engineer of record)
- An AutoCAD file formatted to AutoCAD 2014 or earlier
- One PDF copy of as-built plans and drainage report

CHAPTER 2. STORMWATER PLANNING

CONTENTS

Section Page
SWP-

TABLES

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Purpose of the Chapter

The purpose of this Stormwater Planning chapter is to provide a summary of fundamental principles and guidelines that should be considered when planning an urban stormwater drainage system.

Chapter Summary

Benefits of Stormwater Planning – If drainage planning is incorporated into the initial stages of an urban design, the benefits that result from a well-planned storm drainage system are numerous and include improved functionality of the drainage system, reduced development costs, and improved building sites for residential and commercial development with increased opportunities to make the storm drainage system a development amenity.

Stormwater Planning Principles - Ten principles of stormwater drainage management are identified that provide the foundation of the design criteria discussed in this manual. These principles are based on sound engineering practices in combination with other planning considerations that are separate from drainage issues. These principles are summarized below:

1. The primary stormwater planning objective is protection of human health, safety, and welfare.
2. A watershed approach for stormwater planning should be adopted because water resources are affected by all who conduct activities within a watershed; therefore, all parties should be involved in the process to care for its water resources.
3. Stormwater management planning should be compatible with other planning objectives including transportation, open space, recreation, and others.
4. Flood control is primarily an issue of space allocation; if adequate provision is not made for drainage space requirements, stormwater runoff will conflict with other land uses and may result in damage to public and private property.
5. Floodplains should be preserved wherever feasible and practical to maintain naturally occurring stormwater storage.
6. Streams and riparian corridors should be maintained as they naturally occur to the maximum extent practical because buffer areas promote filtering of pollutants from urban runoff before it enters a stream.
7. Every urban area has a minor and a major drainage system, whether or not they are actually planned or designed.
8. Impacts of urbanization should be reduced by using Best Management Practices (BMPs).
9. The stormwater drainage system should be designed for sustainability, with careful consideration given to the need for accessibility and maintenance.

10. A stormwater drainage system should be designed beginning with the point of discharge, with careful consideration given to downstream impacts and the effects of off-site flows.

Major Drainage Planning - Major drainageways can consist of open channels or closed conduits. In cases where major drainageways already exist in a natural condition, they should generally be preserved, except where special measures are necessary. Primary Channels, as defined in Chapter 7 – *Open Channel Flow* of this *Manual*, will be the foundation of major drainageways. Primary channels must therefore be allotted adequate space for constructing channels to manage planned hydraulic activity and for providing channel maintenance and buffers. When planning new development and redevelopment, the designer must note the drainage patterns on the site and upstream to evaluate the need for implementing a primary channel as a part of the project. Typically, as mentioned earlier, major drainageways already exist in a natural condition. If that is the case on a project, then preserving the area near and around the existing major drainageway is required as well as any improvements necessary to compensate for a planned project's impact to the major drainageway.

Floodplain management and regulation is necessary for a government to exercise its duty to protect the health, safety, and welfare of the public. There are two floodplain management goals: 1) reduce the vulnerability of the residents in the City of Tontitown to the danger and damage of floods, and 2) preserve and enhance the natural characteristics of the City's floodplains. Part of the strategy to manage flood losses involves flood insurance; the City is a participant in the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP), which is administered by the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA). The planner and engineer should proceed cautiously when planning facilities on lands below the expected elevation of the 100-year flood. FEMA National Flood insurance Program Maps can be found at the FEMA Flood Map Service Center website (msc.fema.gov).

Minor Drainage Planning - The minor drainage system includes features such as street inlets, storm sewers, site drainage, on-site detention, and on-site best management practices (BMPs). The objective of the site collection system is to completely collect, control, and convey the required design storm for specific street classifications (see Chapter 6 – *Storm Sewer System Design)* and protect properties adjacent to streets during runoff from storms up to the 100-year design flow.

The objective of street drainage design is to reasonably minimize inconvenience to the traveling public, provide for safe passage of emergency vehicles during runoff from storms up to a 100-year event, and prevent damage to property and structures due to overflow of runoff from streets onto private property during runoff from storms up to a 100-year event.

Detention for flood control is designed to prevent increases in peak flow from the 1-, 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year storms. On-site detention shall be located at the low point(s) on the site and discharge to a public right-of-way or drainage easement unless otherwise approved by the City.

Stormwater quality BMPs are required on all developments to reduce adverse impacts on downstream water quality and to meet the requirements of the City's federally-mandated National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Municipal Separate Storm Sewer (MS4) permit.

Transportation Planning - Developments near major transportation features and facilities, such as highways and railroads, should include a careful evaluation of the effects caused by any stormwater conduits or structures related to the transportation facility. Many flooding problems can be created by bottlenecks of conduits under transportation-related structures, particularly by those that are older or inadequate. Conversely, removing such structures may also create downstream flooding problems.

Open Space Planning - Floodplains often serve as excellent locations for community or neighborhood open space, particularly since periodic flooding in these areas makes many types of developments unfeasible. While leaving floodplains open reduces the flood risk to a community, it also serves multiple other purposes, such as enhancing water quality/habitat and providing space for the creation of greenway trails and other recreational uses.

Permitting - Common permits related to stormwater runoff are summarized and include: Large Scale Development Plan (City), Preliminary Plat (City), Grading Permit (City), General Permit for Stormwater Discharges Associated with Construction Activity (ADEQ), the Section 404 Permit (USACE), and Conditional Letter of Map Revision (CLOMR) and/or Letter of Map Revision (LOMR) (FEMA) as required.

Development Review Process - All Large Scale Development Plans, Subdivision Plans (Preliminary and Final Plats), and any projects that greatly impact the City of Tontitown must go through the Technical Review process. To become familiar with the development approval process, and to understand the development review schedule, refer to the Planning Review Cycle diagram on the City of Tontitown's Planning Office website (tontitown.com).

1.0 INTRODUCTION

Planning of the urban storm drainage system is an integral part of urban design. A well-planned urban drainage system is critical for the overall effectiveness of flood control and water quality measures. Furthermore, the drainage system is a central component of a plan that best utilizes a property and considers the natural drainage.

Planning of urban drainage facilities should be based upon integrating natural waterways, artificial channels, storm sewers, and other drainage works into the layout of a desirable, aesthetic, and environmentally-sensitive urban community. It is imperative that runoff and drainage patterns be considered early in the design process for new developments, *before* site layout begins, rather than attempting to superimpose drainage works on a development after it is laid out, as is frequently done with water supply and sanitary sewer facilities. A well-planned major drainage system can reduce or eliminate the need for costly underground storm sewers, and it can provide improved protection from property damage, injury, and loss of life caused by flooding.

In addition to involving drainage engineering, planning for the management of urban runoff requires a comprehensive understanding of city planning and the many social, technical, and environmental issues associated with each watershed. Therefore, the drainage engineer should serve as one member of the urban design team and should be included in the earliest stages of the urban planning process.

1.1 Benefits of Stormwater Planning

If drainage planning is incorporated *after* other decisions have been made related to the layout of a new project, costly drainage and urban space allocation problems may result that are difficult to correct. In contrast, if drainage planning is incorporated into the initial stages of an urban design, the benefits that result from a well-planned storm drainage system are numerous and include the following:

Improved functionality of drainage system

- Minimized increases in peak flow rates, diversions, improper discharges, and other actions that can potentially harm neighboring properties
- Minimized constrictions to flow conveyance and storage
- Improved water quality
- Protection and enhancement of environmentally sensitive areas

- Improved public health, safety and welfare

Reduced development costs

- Reduced storm drainage system construction and maintenance costs
- Reduced excavation, fill, and grading costs
- Reduced street construction and maintenance costs
- Reduced costs for open space and parks

Improved building sites and land use

- Improved building sites for residential and commercial development
- Improved aesthetics of overall development and increased opportunities to make the storm drainage system a development amenity
- Increased recreational opportunities

1.2 Master Planning

Watershed plans identify requirements for flood control, detention, and water quality management throughout a watershed. As watershed plans are completed and made available to the public, developments can be designed in accordance with the plans, which provide a basis for the proper location and sizing of inlets, pipes, detention basins, and Best Management Practices (BMPs) that are necessary to effectively control downstream flooding and meet water quality requirements. These factors will have a direct bearing on the layout of a new development.

During the master planning phase, major decisions are made related to drainage that address factors such as design velocities, locations of structures, open space allocation for drainages, and integration of drainage features with recreational uses. Potential alternate uses for stormwater facilities, such as parks or open space, are identified for open channels, detention facilities, and water quality facilities. In addition, the master planning phase involves making decisions whether to use downstream or upstream detention storage, and the use of either off-stream or in-channel ponds or reservoirs. It is noted that off-channel detention is preferred, and in-line detention requires approval by the City staff during the conceptual phase of the development process.

1.3 Categories of Stormwater Planning

Major Drainage System - The major drainage system frequently consists of open channels, as either stabilized natural waterways, modified natural channels, or artificial channels with grass or other lining; alternatively, the major drainage system may also include closed conduits such as box culverts or large pipes. When well-planned, the major system can reduce or eliminate the need for underground storm sewers and can protect an urban area from extensive property damage, injury, and loss of life from flooding.

The major drainage system exists in a community regardless of whether it has been planned and regardless of where development is located. The planning process can best serve the community by ensuring that natural drainageways are maintained along major drainage routes. Floodplain delineation and zoning are tools that should be used freely to designate major drainageways. Small waterways and valleys lend themselves to floodplain regulations in the same manner as larger creeks.

Minor Drainage System - The minor drainage system, or initial system, consists of grass and paved swales, streets and gutters, storm sewers, and smaller open channels. If properly planned and designed, the minor drainage system can eliminate many complaints to the City. A well-planned minor drainage system provides convenient drainage, reduces costs of streets and storm sewers, and has a direct effect on the orderliness of an urban area during runoff events.

Planning of urban drainage features should proceed on a well-organized basis with a defined set of drainage policies that have the backing of suitable ordinances. The policies presented in this *Manual* provide a basis upon which additional localized and specific policies can be built.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

2.0 STORMWATER DRAINAGE PRINCIPLES

Planning and development of stormwater drainage systems must be guided by a set of underlying principles that are based on sound engineering practice in combination with other community objectives. Key principles that serve as the foundation of the design criteria provided in this manual are described below.

2.1 Stormwater Planning Objectives

The primary objective of stormwater drainage design is the protection of public health, safety, and welfare. Stormwater systems should be designed to minimize the potential for health risks associated with stormwater systems and runoff and should minimize the risk of damage to both public and private property, including minimizing the risk of structure inundation. Streets and the minor drainage system should be designed for the safe and efficient movement of traffic to the maximum extent practicable. Consideration should also be given to the public health and welfare benefits that result from the protection of water quality and other environmental characteristics of a watershed.

2.2 Watershed Approach for Stormwater Planning

The water resources of a watershed are affected by all who conduct activities within it and, therefore, all should be a part of the process to care for its water resources. Stormwater drainage is independent of government boundaries and, hence, stormwater system planning and implementation should include coordination with all affected agencies, communities, and neighborhoods within the watershed, regardless of government boundaries. The watershed approach to stormwater drainage and management has been embraced by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) and many other agencies and communities across the country.

2.3 Compatibility with Other Planning Objectives

In addition to protecting public health, safety, and welfare, the stormwater drainage system must consider other urban planning objectives. Stormwater system planning and design for any new development must be compatible with watershed master plans and objectives and be coordinated with plans for land use, open space, transportation, and other community objectives. Watershed master plans must consistently address both stormwater quantity and quality issues in the context of the local and regional drainage basins.

2.4 Space Allocation for Flood Control

Flood control is primarily an issue of space allocation. The amount of stormwater runoff present at any time in an urban watershed cannot be compressed or diminished. Open and enclosed storm systems serve both conveyance and storage functions. If adequate provision is not made for drainage space requirements, stormwater runoff may conflict with other land uses and result in damage to public and private property and the impairment or disruption of other urban systems. In urban watersheds that have been developed without adequate stormwater planning, there is generally inadequate space available to construct detention storage facilities to reduce peak flows significantly along major waterways. Creation of adequate space to construct such storage facilities frequently requires the removal of valuable existing buildings or other facilities and is often not economically or socially feasible.

2.5 Floodplain Preservation

Floodplains should be preserved wherever feasible and practical to maintain naturally occurring stormwater storage. Floodplains serve as natural outfall areas for urban drainage, riparian corridors, and habitat for diverse ecological systems. Encroachment into floodplains should be avoided and should occur only after careful planning and engineering have been conducted so that the effects are fully recognized and minimized. Preservation of urban floodplains provides value to communities through flood hazard reduction, water quality enhancement, stream protection, plant and animal habitat preservation, open space and linear park creation, and provision of recreational opportunities. When determining the width of a floodplain to preserve, consideration should be given to the intended use of the floodplain and the dynamic nature of stream channels.

2.6 Stream and Riparian Corridor Preservation

Streams and riparian corridors should be maintained as they naturally occur to the maximum extent practical. Providing buffers between valuable riparian corridors and urban development promotes filtering of pollutants from urban runoff before it enters a stream. Each site’s development plan should include careful consideration to preserve and enhance natural features, including riparian corridors, to the maximum extent practicable. Consideration should be given to environmentally sensitive stream stabilization in areas where urbanization, altered hydrology, or soil characteristics result in unstable natural channel conditions. In certain cases, urban hydrologic conditions will require structural stabilization of streams to avoid degradation. These improvements should be completed in an aesthetic and environmentally sensitive manner.

2.7 Major and Minor Drainage Systems

Every urban area has a minor and a major drainage system, whether or not they are actually planned or designed. Generally, the minor and major drainage systems have distinctly different design criteria based on public health, safety and welfare, and economic considerations. The minor drainage system is typically designed to accommodate moderate flooding. For minor drainage systems, local street flooding resulting from extreme, less frequent rainfall events may be permissible for short periods, provided that public health, safety, and welfare are protected, and structures are protected from inundation. The major system will generally have a higher design standard to minimize the impacts of flooding from more severe, less frequent floods. This approach is used because of the greater potential threat to public health, safety, and welfare that generally exists along major waterways.

2.8 BMPs to Mitigate Impacts

Impacts of urbanization should be reduced by using Best Management Practices (BMPs). In general, urbanization tends to increase downstream peak flows, runoff volumes, and runoff velocities, which can cause the capacity of inadequately designed downstream systems to be exceeded and can disrupt natural waterways. The impacts of new urbanization must be reduced by using structural and non-structural BMPs that typically include stormwater detention to limit peak flow rates to predevelopment rates. Detention facilities may be constructed either on-site or as regional facilities. Regional facilities developed by the City will be constructed and evaluated as the need arises. It will be up to the City to determine the need and location of any regional detention they see as a cost effective and useful tool for controlling stormwater runoff in nuisance/flooding prone areas of the city. Other BMPs include hydraulically disconnecting impervious areas to the extent practicable to achieve maximum contact between runoff and vegetation, thereby maximizing infiltration and filtering of pollutants. While it is generally not practical to maintain predevelopment runoff volumes, accepted stormwater BMPs should be used to the maximum extent practicable to minimize runoff volume. For redevelopment projects, consideration should be given to retrofitting the existing stormwater controls as necessary, given the size of the redevelopment project and its location within the watershed.

2.9 Sustainability and Maintenance

The stormwater drainage system should be designed for sustainability, with careful consideration given to the need for accessibility and maintenance to sustain adequate function, whether the facilities will be publicly or privately maintained. The major drainage system is more likely to be maintained by a public entity, whereas the minor system is more often maintained by a private entity. Parts of the major system that serve specific functions for private entities should be maintained by those private entities. Failure to provide proper maintenance reduces both the hydraulic capacity and the pollutant removal efficiency of the drainage system. Planning and design of drainage facilities should include consideration of the funding necessary to provide proper maintenance.

2.10 Consideration of Downstream Impacts

A stormwater drainage system should be designed beginning with the point of discharge, with careful consideration given to downstream impacts and the effects of off-site flows. The location and method of discharge from a development site must be carefully determined to avoid causing harm to properties located either downstream or adjacent to the site. The engineer should evaluate the conveyance system downstream of each point of discharge from a new development to ensure that it has sufficient capacity for design discharges without adverse backwater or downstream impacts such as flooding, stream bank erosion, and sediment deposition. In addition, great care must also be taken to determine the method of receiving, conveying, and discharging stormwater runoff that originates from off-site.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

3.0 MAJOR DRAINAGE PLANNING

Major drainageways can consist of open channels or closed conduits. Primary Channels, as defined in Chapter 7 – *Open Channel Flow* of this *Manual*, will be the foundation of major drainageways. Open channels can include stabilized natural waterways, modified natural channels, or artificial channels with grass or other lining. Closed conduits include structures such as box culverts and large pipes.

In cases where major drainageways already exist in a natural condition, they should generally be preserved, except where any engineered improvements, such as grade control, erosion protection, or restoration, are needed. The practice of lining, straightening, narrowing, and filling major natural waterways is strongly discouraged, whether the channel is perennial (wet) or ephemeral (dry except for storm runoff). In contrast, the practice of preserving natural waterways is highly encouraged because it generally provides benefits in terms of preservation of natural floodplain storage, reduction of channel erosion, enhancement of water quality, preservation of habitat, and opportunities for parks, greenway trails, and other recreational uses.

Important planning-level considerations for initial major drainage planning, open channels, and floodplain regulation are discussed in Section 3.1 through Section 3.3, respectively. Detailed design criteria are not provided in this chapter but are provided, where applicable, in other chapters as noted in the text.

3.1 Initial Major Drainage Planning

When planning a new development, a variety of drainage concepts should be evaluated prior to determination of the location of streets and lot layout. Decisions made at this point in the development process have the greatest impact regarding the cost and performance of the drainage facilities.

Developments should be designed around the existing natural drainage patterns and topography to achieve the most efficient drainage system. The designer should begin by determining the location and width of existing waterways and floodplains. A preliminary estimate of the design flow rate is necessary to approximate the capacity and size of a channel or conduit (See Chapter 3 - *Determination of Storm Runoff*).

Streets and lots should be laid out in a manner that preserves the existing drainage system to the greatest extent practical. Constructed channels should only be used when it is not practical or feasible to use existing waterways. Proposals to modify major natural waterways should be submitted to the City for approval prior to detailed design. In such cases, it must be shown why it is not feasible to preserve the natural major drainageway.

3.2 Open Channels

The use of open channels for major drainageways can provide significant advantages, compared with closed conduits, in terms of cost, capacity, potential for recreational uses, aesthetics, environmental protection/enhancement, and detention storage. Disadvantages of open channels compared with closed conduits include increased space and right-of-way requirements and additional maintenance needs associated with channel instability.

Open channels in new developments typically fall in one of the following categories:

Existing natural channels

- Existing natural channels that are stable, are expected to remain stable, and are being preserved in a natural state.
- Existing natural channels that are unstable, are not expected to remain stable because of changes in the watershed, and are being stabilized with bioengineering methods to maintain the natural character of the channel.

Existing or proposed semi-improved channels

- Existing or proposed semi-improved channels where some modifications are made, such as grading, but the channel appears to be natural and is lined with vegetation such as grass and trees.

Existing or proposed improved channels

- Existing or proposed improved channels with a natural lining, such as a trapezoidal grass channel that is mowed on a regular basis. An improved channel may include a small, concrete low-flow channel to reduce erosion and allow the grade to be maintained.
- Existing or proposed improved channels where a hard lining such as concrete, rock, or other hard armor material makes up a significant part of the channel. Examples include rectangular or trapezoidal channels lined with riprap or concrete.

The volume of storm runoff, peak discharge rate, and frequency of bank-full discharges from an urban area are often larger than under historic, undeveloped conditions, depending on the nature of the development (Leopold 1994; Urbonas 1980; ASCE and WEF 1992; WEF and ASCE 1998). When natural channels begin to carry storm runoff from a newly urbanized area, the changed runoff regime may result in new and increased erosional tendencies.

Careful hydraulic analysis of natural channels must be made to assess and address these potential impacts. Some modification of the channel is frequently required to create a more stabilized condition to withstand changes to surface runoff created by urbanization. Channel modifications should not be undertaken unless they are found to be absolutely necessary. The objective is to avoid excessive and extensive channel disturbance and the subsequent negative impacts on erosion, sediment deposition, and water quality.

Factors to consider when choosing between using the existing channel or making improvements to the channel include:

- Required channel capacity for flood control compared with the existing channel capacity
- Space availability within the development
- Recent and expected changes in upstream runoff from the contributing watershed
- Physical characteristics of the natural channel such as slope, soil characteristics, and vegetative condition

Measures to stabilize a natural channel frequently include construction of grade controls or drop structures at regular intervals to decrease the longitudinal slope of the thalweg (channel invert), thereby controlling erosion. Bank and bottom stabilization measures may also be necessary.

If site conditions are conducive, channels should be left in a condition that resembles the natural state to the extent feasible, provided it can be demonstrated that the channel is stable during the 25-year event. It is preferred that natural channels be preserved or stabilized through bioengineering methods. If bioengineering methods are not feasible, improved grass channels are generally preferred to channels with a hard lining, except where armoring is necessary because of the physical or hydrologic characteristics of the site. Benefits of a stabilized natural channel can include:

- Lower flow velocities
- Longer concentration times and lower downstream peak flows
- Channel and adjacent floodplain storage that tends to decrease peak flows
- Protection of riparian and aquatic habitat
- Greenbelt and recreational area that adds significant social benefits

Specific design criteria along major drainageways are provided in Chapter 7 – *Open Channel Flow*.

3.3 Floodplain Management and Regulation

Floodplain management and regulation is necessary for a government to exercise its duty to protect the health, safety, and welfare of the public. The concept of the existence of a natural floodway fringe for the storage and passage of floodwaters is fundamental to the assumption of regulatory powers in a definable flood zone. Floodplain regulation must define the boundary of the natural floodway fringe and must delineate easement occupancy that will be consistent with public interests.

3.3.1 Floodplain Management Goals

There are two major goals with respect to floodplain management:

Floodplain Management Goal 1 - Reduce the vulnerability of the residents in the City of Tontitown to the danger and damage of floods.

Floodplain Management Goal 2 - Preserve and enhance the natural characteristics of the City's floodplains.

These two goals are achievable through appropriate management shared by the agencies involved. A multi-pronged approach to achieve the floodplain management goals described above is summarized below:

- Adopt effective floodplain regulations.
- Appropriately modify local land use practices, programs, and regulations in flood-prone areas.
- Provide a balanced program of measures to reduce losses from flooding.
- Foster the preservation and/or creation of greenbelts, with associated wildlife and other ecological benefits, in urban areas.

Floodplain management practices must be implemented to be of value. Although hydrologic data are critical to the development of a floodplain management program, the program is largely dependent on a series of policy, planning, and design decisions.

3.3.2 National Flood Insurance Program

Flood insurance should be an integral part of a strategy to manage flood losses. The City is a participant in the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP), which is administered by the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA). As a participant, the City must maintain and enforce regulations meeting minimum requirements of the NFIP and restricting development in designated flood hazard areas shown on FEMA Flood Insurance Rate Maps (FIRMs). Federal requirements mandate that flood insurance be purchased for mortgaged properties within a FEMA flood hazard area. Because the City is an NFIP participant in good standing, all property owners in the City are able to obtain flood insurance for their property with premiums based on the flood hazard zones shown on the FIRM. For additional information related to flood hazard zones, refer to the City of Tontitown Code of Ordinances Chapter 151 – *Flood Damage Prevention*.

3.3.3 Floodplain Filling

While floodplain management includes some utilization of the flood fringe (i.e., areas outside of the formal floodway), the planner and engineer should proceed cautiously when planning facilities on lands below the expected elevation of the 100-year flood. Flood peaks from urbanized watersheds are high and short-lived, and filling the flood fringe tends to increase downstream peaks.

3.3.4 Floodplain Mapping

FEMA Flood Insurance Rate Maps (FIRM) are an important tool to assist with good floodplain management. The National Flood Insurance Act of 1968 established the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP), which included a national floodplain mapping effort. Certain areas in the City of Tontitown have been designated as floodplains and are regulated as required by the NFIP. While these maps were created to indicate risk factors for determining appropriate flood insurance rate premiums, they are also useful for designating flood prone areas. Anyone considering developing property in the City of Tontitown should obtain a copy of the FEMA FIRM panels and understand the effects any floodplain may have on a proposed development. Refer to Map Panel ID No. 05143CIND0A for an Index Map of the FIRM panels in the City of Tontitown area (FEMA 2008).

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

4.0 MINOR DRAINAGE PLANNING

In addition to addressing major drainage, effective drainage planning also requires thorough attention to the initial or minor drainage system. The minor drainage system includes features such as street inlets, storm sewers, site drainage, on-site detention, and on-site best management practices (BMPs). This section provides planning-level considerations for the minor drainage system and references to chapters in this *Manual* that have detailed design criteria for specific minor drainage features.

4.1 Site Drainage

The initial collection system within a development may include curbs, gutters, inlets, swales, pipes, flumes, channels, open waterways, detention, and water quality BMPs. The collection system is critical to the protection of adjacent streets and properties from flooding. The objective of the site collection system is to completely collect, control, and convey the required design storm for specific street classifications (see Chapter 6 – *Storm Sewer System Design)* and protect properties adjacent to streets during runoff from storms up to the 100-year design flow.

Discharges from the site must connect directly to the existing drainage system where possible, as opposed to discharging to the street. Provision must be made to protect streets and sidewalks from flooding. Discharges to the street should not exceed the street design criteria and discharges across a sidewalk must protect the sidewalk from inundation up to the 2-year flow.

4.2 Streets, Inlets and Storm Sewers

Streets serve as part of the initial collection system in an overall drainage system. The objective of street drainage design is to reasonably minimize inconvenience to the traveling public, provide for safe passage of emergency vehicles during runoff from storms up to a 100-year event, and prevent the overflow of runoff from streets onto private property (unless in an easement) during runoff from storms up to a 100-year event. Well-planned street location and preliminary design can greatly reduce street drainage improvement construction costs.

Inlets must be properly selected and designed to minimize the possibility of clogging and to limit spread based on the street classification. Typical inlet types include curb opening inlets, open-side drop inlets (also called “area inlets”), and grated inlets. (See Chapter 6 - *Storm Sewer System Design*, for detailed design criteria.) Site storm sewer pipes and box culverts must be designed to convey flow from the design storm frequency associated with site specific infrastructure as described in Chapter 4 – *Culvert Hydraulics* and Chapter 6 – *Storm Sewer System Design*.

4.3 Site Detention

Any development that increases runoff must address runoff through construction of on-site detention or other compensatory measure approved by the City. Detention for flood control is designed to prevent increases in peak flow from the 1-, 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year storms. On-site detention should be located at the low point(s) on the site and shall discharge to a public right-of-way or drainage easement.

Detention basins should be planned to match existing topography to minimize cut and fill, land disturbance, and environmental impacts. Aesthetics should also be considered during design so that the facility complements surrounding land uses. In all cases, opportunities should be sought to create amenities with detention basins by utilizing permanent pools, gentle slopes, landscaping, and trees and incorporating multi-purpose uses, such as recreation. Design criteria for detention basins are provided in Chapter 5 – *Stormwater Detention*.

In-line detention that collects off-site runoff should be avoided, particularly when the volume of runoff from off-site is greater than the volume from on-site. Larger off-site areas draining through a detention basin cause increased requirements for volume and control structure size, resulting in higher basin construction costs. In addition, in-line detention basins along major drainageways may require a U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Section 404 Permit. Therefore, it is preferred to have off-line detention with the waterway preserved in a more natural state. The use of in-line detention as a means to control stormwater runoff requires City approval prior to implementation.

As an alternative to constructing on-site detention, a payment in lieu of constructing detention may be acceptable by the City, but only if an existing regional detention facility with adequate capacity, as determined by the City, exists downstream from the proposed development. The funds collected from fee in lieu payments will be used by the City for regional stormwater facilities or other measures that will benefit the stormwater management in the community.

Permanent pool detention basins are encouraged because they provide added benefits with respect to water quality, aesthetics, and habitat. When designed and constructed properly, permanent pool detention basins can be an amenity to both the development and the community. Detailed design criteria for permanent pool detention areas are provided in Chapter 5 – *Stormwater Detention*.

Detention basins sited on or near the upstream portion of a site to reduce off-site peak runoff may be considered as an option to compensate for increased peak runoff from the site in cases where the low point of the site is not conducive to detention facilities. It must be shown that the total peak runoff rates for the design storms at locations downstream of the site are no greater than pre-development conditions. Careful attention must be given to the timing of peak runoff; a conservative design may be appropriate to assure that peak flow rates are not increased because of inaccurate modeling of the peak timing.

4.4 On-Site Best Management Practices

Stormwater quality and quantity (rate and volume) are closely related and should be planned and designed concurrently. Stormwater quality BMPs are required on new developments to reduce adverse impacts on downstream water quality and to meet the requirements of the City's federally-mandated National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Municipal Separate Storm Sewer (MS4) permit. Planning for a new development should include determination of the BMPs to be used, which commonly include extended or wet detention basins, disconnecting impervious areas, and utilizing grass buffer strips, swales, and channels.

BMPs should also include open channel designs that both filter runoff and maintain long-term stability, thereby reducing pollutants and sediment. Several common water quality BMPs are provided in Chapter 8 – *Erosion and Sediment Control*. Design criteria for open channels that provide stable channel linings and reduce the amount of impervious area are provided in Chapter 7 - *Open Channel Flow*.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

5.0 TRANSPORTATION PLANNING

Developments near major transportation features and facilities, such as highways and railroads, should include a careful evaluation of the effects caused by any stormwater conduits or structures related to the transportation facility. Many flooding problems can be created by bottlenecks of conduits under transportation-related structures, particularly by those that are older or inadequate. For example, culverts at highway or railroad embankments can cause drainage hazards such as excessive flooding upstream of the culvert or, alternatively, can cause excessive flow velocity and erosion downstream of the culvert.

Many storm drainage problems can be avoided through cooperation and coordination between the developer or transportation agency and the local governing authority over the drainage system. Drainage conditions at transportation facilities should be investigated early in the planning process to determine what limitations exist or what costs might be required to address the situation. Furthermore, it must be shown that any improvements to an existing drainage system will not create downstream flooding. This situation could occur when replacing historically inadequate crossings with larger crossings, where the original crossing effectively detained upstream runoff and after the improvements the runoff is now allowed to travel downstream more quickly. Proposals for new developments or improvements by transportation agencies should be closely coordinated with the City to identify drainage issues, potential problems, and requirements and incorporation of watershed planning objectives.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

6.0 OPEN SPACE PLANNING

Floodplains often serve as excellent locations for community or neighborhood open space, particularly since periodic flooding in these areas makes many types of developments unfeasible. While leaving floodplains open reduces the flood risk to a community, it also serves multiple other purposes, such as enhancement of water quality and habitat, and provides space for the creation of greenway trails and other recreational uses.

The area adjacent to floodplains may be appropriate for a broader riparian and buffer corridor, larger scale recreational uses, or parks. The designer of new developments should consider these options for floodplains and consult the City for any watershed plans that address land use along floodplains or Master Trail plans.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

7.0 REQUIRED PERMITS

Planning for any new development must consider the need for city, county, state, and federal permits early in the planning process. This is particularly important when the development will involve construction along a major drainageway. Common permits related to stormwater runoff are listed below:

- Large Scale Development Plan (LSDP) or Preliminary Plat – A preliminary plan set designed to meet the requirements of the City of Tontitown development ordinances. An approved LSDP Preliminary Plat is required prior to obtaining a grading permit (see below).

- Grading Permit – The City requires any project/site that involves a LSDP approval or a Preliminary Plat to obtain a grading permit prior to commencement of earthwork at a project site or before more than 1 acre is disturbed. A grading permit will be issued by the City of Tontitown only after approval of the LSDP or Preliminary Plat.

- General Permit for stormwater discharges associated with construction activity – The Arkansas Department of Environmental Quality (ADEQ) requires a permit to allow discharges of stormwater from construction sites in cases where those discharges enter surface waters of the State or a municipal separate storm sewer system (MS4) leading to surface waters of the State subject to the conditions set forth in the permit. The general permit that became effective on November 1, 2016 replaces the previous permit. The reader is encouraged to either contact ADEQ or review the permit requirements on the ADEQ website (www.adeq.state.ar.us/). Careful review of the general permit is necessary to understand which stormwater discharges are allowed under the coverage of the general permit and which are not.

- Section 404 Permit - Section 404 of the Clean Water Act requires approval from the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) prior to discharging dredged or fill material into the "Waters of the U.S." Waters of the U.S. include essentially all surface waters, such as all navigable waters and their tributaries, all interstate waters and their tributaries, all wetlands adjacent to these waters, and all impoundments of these waters. Any waterway with a permanent flow of water is generally considered a Water of the U.S. Some intermittent waterways also may be considered Waters of the U.S.

  Wetlands are areas characterized by growth of wetland vegetation (e.g., bulrushes, cattails, rushes, sedges, willows, etc.) where the soil is saturated during a portion of the growing season or the surface is flooded during part of most years. Wetlands generally include swamps, marshes, bogs, and similar areas.

Typical activities within Waters of the U.S. and adjacent wetlands that require Section 404 permits are:

- Site development fill for residential, commercial, or recreational construction
- Construction of in-channel structures
- Placement of riprap
- Construction of roads
- Construction of dams
- Any grading within the channel of Waters of the U.S.

When activities of this type are proposed, the developer should contact the USACE to determine if a Section 404 Permit will be required and to identify major issues involved in obtaining the permit. The City of Tontitown is in the Little Rock District of the USACE.

Any work considered to be covered under one of the several Nationwide Permits authorized by the USACE still requires the submittal of an “APPLICATION FOR DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY PERMIT – 33 CFR 325”. Additional requirements needed to complete this permit include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Historic Preservation – evidence must be provided that a project is not going to adversely impact protected historic landmarks. The *Arkansas Historic Preservation Program* shall be contacted in regard to providing guidance and evidence as to whether a proposed project will or will not adversely impact protected historic landmarks.
- Endangered Species Protection – evidence must be provided that a project is not going to adversely impact protected threatened and endangered species. The *US Fish and Wildlife, Arkansas Field Office* shall be contacted in regard to providing guidance and evidence as to whether a proposed project will or will not adversely impact threatened or endangered species.

<u>Floodplain Use Permit (if required)</u> –If development is to occur within a FEMA regulatory floodplain, a floodplain use permit must be obtained from the City. In addition, if necessary, additional floodplain requirements, such as a Conditional Letter of Map Revision (CLOMR) or Letter of Map Revision (LOMR) must be obtained through FEMA or a “No Rise Certification” (for floodways) must be obtained by the “Design Engineer”.

8.0 DEVELOPMENT REVIEW PROCESS

All Large Scale Development Plans, Subdivision Plans (Preliminary and Final Plats), and any projects that greatly impact the City of Tontitown must go through the planning review process. To become familiar with the development approval process in the City of Tontitown, and to understand the development review schedule, refer to the City of Tontitown Planning Office's web page which provides the current review schedule. (See link: www.tontitown.com/departments/planning-zoning/planning-docs/).

8.1 Subdivisions

Submittal requirements for subdivision development in the City of Tontitown are specified in Chapter 152.047 of the Code of Ordinances for the City. Early planning for a new subdivision should include meeting with the Planning Office to develop an acceptable stormwater management plan that will be less likely to experience problems in the review process and will result in a more efficient and optimum stormwater design. Major conceptual stormwater issues can be identified to help with development of a design that can maximize flood control and water quality protection and minimize project costs and future conflicts and construction difficulties.

Major design features that should be identified first are the preservation of major drainageways, the location and configuration of detention basins and water quality controls, and the location and configuration of streets and lots. Any watershed plans affecting the development should be identified so that compliance approach can be incorporated early in the design process. The developer should obtain a copy of the Preliminary Plat checklist from the Planning Office, to begin preparation of acceptable stormwater drainage plans and plat layout.

8.2 Large Scale Development Plans

Submittal requirements for a Large Scale Development Plan (LSDP) in the City of Tontitown are specified in Chapter 152.097 of the Code of Ordinances for the City. In accordance with the ordinance, storm drainage design for an LSDP must meet the minimum drainage requirements as defined by city ordinance. Drainage improvements must be indicated on the plans and a drainage report must accompany the plans. An engineer's certified calculations must be provided for all improvements. Improvements must be completed and certified by the engineer of record prior to the issuance of a certificate of occupancy.

Developments within a floodplain or floodway must provide floodplain data certified by an engineer and must meet all FEMA requirements for new construction in floodplains or floodways.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

9.0 REFERENCES

American Society of Civil Engineers and Water Environment Federation. 1992. *Design and Construction of Urban Stormwater Management Systems.* ASCE Manual and Reports of Engineering Practice No. 77 and WEF Manual of Practice FD-20. Alexandria,VA: Water Environment Federation.

City of Tontitown, Arkansas, Code of Ordinances: amlegal.com/codes/client/Tontitown_ar/

FEMA Map Service Center website: msc.fema.gov

Leopold, L.B. 1994. *A View of the River*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Urban Drainage and Flood Control District. 2001. *Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual, Volume 1*. Denver, CO: Urban Drainage and Flood Control District.

Urbonas, B. 1980. Drainageway Erosion in Semi-arid Urbanizing Areas. *Flood Hazard News* 10:1-2, 8.

Water Environment Federation and American Society of Civil Engineers. 1998. *Urban Runoff Quality Management*. WEF Manual of Practice No. 23 and ASCE Manual and Report on Engineering Practice No. 87. Alexandria, VA: Water Environment Federation.

CHAPTER 3. DETERMINATION OF STORM WATER RUNOFF

CONTENTS

Section Page

RO-

TABLES

FIGURES

1.0 OVERVIEW

The intent of this chapter of the *Manual* is to provide reasonably dependable and consistent methods of approximating the characteristics of runoff in urban and nonurban areas within the City of Tontitown, Arkansas. This chapter will guide the designer in how to choose the proper method for calculating runoff, based on the conditions present at a site as well as the necessary information/calculations the City requires for their review prior to development of the site.

This section of the *Manual* on the determination of storm water runoff was developed using several references including: Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual developed by Urban Drainage and Flood Control District in Denver, Colorado; *National Engineering Handbook*, Section 4 (NEH-4), 1985; NRCS Technical Paper No. 40, 1961; and NRCS Technical Release No. 55, 1986. Detailed information for all references used in this section can be found at the end of this chapter.

This chapter of the *Manual* should be utilized in conjunction with other universally accepted articles and engineering references and studies. NRCS Technical Release 55 is referenced extensively throughout this chapter as it is an excellent resource for urban hydrology design and methodology. It is important for the individual using this section of the manual to already have a firm understanding of the information provided in this document prior to implementing the recommendations outlined in this *Manual*.

1.1 Introduction

Determining the peak flow rate and volume of storm water runoff generated in a watershed for a given storm event is an essential step in evaluating drainage design. The size of rainfall event, type of flow condition, and flow rate of the runoff all play a major role in the sizing, configuration, and operation of storm drainage and flood control systems. Numerous methods for calculating runoff have been developed and studied as engineering design options but only a few are accepted by the City of Tontitown, based on the climate and natural environment.

1.2 City of Tontitown Drainage Methods

There are a number of different methods and procedures for computing runoff on which the design of storm drainage and flood control systems are based. The three methods the City accepts are:

1) The Rational Method

2) The Soil Conservation Service Technical Release – 55 Synthetic Hydrograph Method (SCS method)

3) USGS Regional Regression Equations. This third method will not be discussed in detail in this *Manual*, but can be examined and further studied in *Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Arkansas* (USGS – WRIR 95-4224, 1995).

The two main drainage methods described in this *Manual* are: (1) the Rational Method and (2) SCS method. The Rational Method is generally used for smaller watersheds when only the peak flow rate or the total volume of runoff is needed at a design point or points (e.g., storm sewer sizing or simple detention basin sizing). The SCS method is used for larger watersheds and when a hydrograph of the storm event is needed (e.g., sizing large detention facilities). The watershed size limits and/or ranges for each analysis method are shown in Table RO-1.

Table RO-1 — Watershed Size Applicability for Peak Runoff Calculations

Watershed Size (acres)	Applicable Drainage Method
0 to 30	Rational Method
30 to 2000	SCS Method
2000 +	Computer models (such as HEC-HMS, TR-20, or equivalent)

2.0 RATIONAL METHOD

For urban watersheds that are not complex and are generally 30 acres or less in size, it is acceptable that the design storm runoff be analyzed by the Rational Method. If properly understood and applied, the Rational Method can produce satisfactory results for the design of urban storm sewers and small on-site detention facilities.

2.1 Rational Formula

The Rational Method is based on the Rational Formula which is expressed as:

$$Q = k_i*C*I*A \qquad \textbf{(Equation RO-1)}$$

in which:

Q = peak rate of runoff (cubic feet per second [cfs]). Q is actually in units of acre-inches per hour (ac-in/hr), but conversion of the results to cubic-feet per second (cfs) differs by less than 1 percent. Since the difference is so small, the Q value calculated by the equation is accepted as cubic feet per second (cfs).

k_i = adjustment multiplier for design storm recurrence interval (see Table RO-4)

C = runoff coefficient - represented in the ratio of the amount of runoff to the amount of rainfall (see Section 2.5).

I = average intensity of rainfall (inches per hour [in/hr]) for a period of time equal to the critical time of full contribution of the drainage area under consideration (see Section 2.6). This critical time for full contribution is commonly referred to as "time of concentration," t_c (see Section 2.8)

A = area (acres) that contributes to runoff at the point of design or the point under consideration (see Section 2.7).

2.2 Rational Method Calculation Procedure

The general procedure for Rational Method calculations for a single watershed is as follows:

1) Delineate the watershed boundary and measure its area in acres.

2) Define the flow path from the hydraulically most distant point of the watershed to the design point. This flow path should be divided into reaches of similar flow type [i.e. overland flow (sheet flow), shallow concentrated flow (swales, shallow ditches, etc.)], and channelized flow (gutters, storm sewers, open channels, etc.). The length and slope of each reach should be measured.

3) Determine the time of concentration, t_c, for the watershed. Refer to Section 2.8 of this chapter for additional information on calculating t_c.

4) Find the rainfall intensity, I, for the design storm using the calculated t_c and the rainfall intensity-duration-frequency information (see Table RO-5). Use arithmetic interpolation to calculate rainfall intensity for t_c not displayed in the table.

5) Determine the runoff coefficient, C, (see Table RO-2 and/or Table RO-3) for the watershed boundary and its resulting subareas.

6) Calculate the peak flow rate from the watershed using Equation RO-1.

2.3 Assumptions

Basic assumptions associated with use of the Rational Method are as follows:

1) The computed peak rate of runoff to the design point is a function of the average rainfall rate during the time of concentration for the watershed.

2) The time of concentration is the critical value in determining the design rainfall intensity and is equal to the time required for water to flow from the hydraulically most distant point in the watershed to the point of design.

3) The runoff coefficient, C, is uniform during the entire duration of the storm event.

4) The rate of rainfall or rainfall intensity, I, is uniform for the entire duration of the storm event and is uniformly distributed over the entire watershed area.

5) The depth of rainfall used is that which occurs from the start of the storm to the time of concentration. The design rainfall depth during that time period is converted to the average rainfall intensity for that period in inches per hour (in/hr).

6) The maximum runoff rate occurs when the entire area is contributing flow. However, this assumption has to be modified when a more intensely developed portion of the watershed with a shorter time of concentration produces a higher rate of maximum runoff than the entire watershed with a longer time of concentration.

2.4 Limitations

The Rational Method is an adequate method for approximating the peak rate of runoff from a design rainstorm in a given watershed area. The greatest drawback to the Rational Method is that it normally provides only one point on the runoff hydrograph. When the areas become complex and where sub-watersheds come together, the Rational Method will tend to overestimate the actual flow, which results in oversizing of drainage facilities. The Rational Method provides no direct information needed to route hydrographs through the drainage facilities. One reason the Rational Method is limited to small areas is that good design practice requires the routing of hydrographs for larger watersheds to achieve an economic design.

Another disadvantage of the Rational Method is that in the typical design procedure one normally assumes that all of the design flow is collected at the design point and that no water bypasses or runs overland to the next design point. However, this is not a limitation of the Rational Method but of the design procedure. The Rational Method must be modified, or another type of analysis used, when analyzing an existing system that is under-designed or when analyzing the effects of a major storm on a system designed for the minor storm.

2.5 Runoff Coefficient, C

The runoff coefficient, C, represents the integrated effects of infiltration, detention storage, evaporation, retention, flow routing, and interception, all of which affect the time of distribution and peak rate of runoff. The proportion of the total rainfall that runs off depends on the relative porosity or imperviousness of the ground surface, the surface slope, and the ponding character of the surface. Impervious surfaces, such as asphalt pavements and roofs of buildings, will be subject to nearly 100 percent runoff, regardless of the slope, after the surfaces have become thoroughly wet. On-site inspections and aerial photographs are valuable in determining the types of surfaces within the drainage area and are essential when assessing the runoff coefficient, C.

2.5.1 Soil Type

The runoff coefficient, C, in the Rational Formula is also dependent on the character of the surface soil. The type and condition of the soil determines its ability to absorb precipitation. The rate at which a soil absorbs rainfall typically decreases if the rainfall continues for an extended period of time. The soil absorption or infiltration rate during a rainfall event is also influenced by the degree of soil saturation before a rain (antecedent moisture condition), the rainfall intensity, the proximity of ground water, the degree of soil compaction, the porosity of the subsoil, vegetation, ground slopes, and surface topography (or relief). Detailed soil information is described in *Section 3.3.1 – Hydrologic Soil Group*.

2.5.2 Selection of Runoff Coefficients, C

The runoff coefficient, C, is the variable of the Rational Method which is most difficult to precisely determine. Proper selection requires judgment and experience on the part of the design engineer, and its use in the formula implies a fixed ratio for any given drainage area over the course of a rainfall event, which in reality is not the case. A reasonable runoff coefficient must be chosen in order to determine accurate volumes for runoff.

To standardize City design computations, Table RO-2 provides standard runoff coefficient values based on current zoning and land use designations. However, if the designer chooses, Table RO-3 provides runoff coefficient values for specific types of land/surface areas that can be used to evaluate a composite analysis that may provide a more accurate runoff coefficient value for an area.

Additionally, the values in Table RO-2 and Table RO-3 are typical for design storms with recurrence intervals of 1 to 10 years. For less frequent recurrence intervals (i.e., larger storm events), the runoff coefficient, C, must be adjusted upward using the correction factors shown in Table RO-4 due to saturated soil conditions that typically increase the runoff during larger storm events. Table RO-4 contains correction factors for the 1-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50-, and 100-year events. To determine the appropriate runoff coefficient for these events, the runoff coefficient from either Table RO-2 or Table RO-3 shall be multiplied by the appropriate factor in Table RO-4.

Table RO-2 — Runoff Coefficients, *C*, for Specific City of Tontitown Zoning

Tontitown Zoning	Description	Runoff Coefficient, *C*
A	Agriculture	0.35
RE	Estate Single-Family Residential	0.40
R-1	Single-Family Residential	0.45
R-2	Single-Family Residential	0.50
R-3	Single-Family Residential	0.65
R-3L	Single-Family Residential	0.60
R-MF	Multi-Family Residential	0.75
R-MH	Manufactured/Mobile Home Residential	0.70
C-1	Light Commercial/Office District	0.80
C-2	General Commercial District	0.90
I	Light to Medium Density Industrial	0.90

Table RO-3 — Runoff Coefficient, *C*, for Composite Land/Surface Areas in the City of Tontitown

Character of Surface	Description	Runoff Coefficient, *C*
UNDEVELOPED AREAS	Historic Flow Analysis, Greenbelts, Agricultural, Natural Vegetation	
	Clay Soil	
	Flat, 2% slopes	0.30
	Average, 2 - 7% slopes	0.40
	Steep, 7% slopes	0.50
	Sandy Soil	
	Flat, 2% slopes	0.12
	Average, 2 - 7% slopes	0.20
	Steep, 7% slopes	0.30
STREETS	Paved	0.98
	Gravel	0.60
DRIVES & WALKS		0.98
ROOFS		0.98
LAWNS	Clay Soil	
	Flat, 2% slopes	0.18
	Average, 2 - 7% slopes	0.22
	Steep, 7% slopes	0.35
	Sandy Soil	
	Flat, 2% slopes	0.10
	Average, 2 - 7% slopes	0.15
	Steep, 7% slopes	0.20

Table RO-4 — Frequency Factor Multipliers for Runoff Coefficients (Debo and Reese 2002)

Recurrence Interval (years)	Adjustment Multiplier (k_i)
1 to 10	1.0
25	1.1
50	1.2
100	1.25

2.6 Rainfall Intensity, I

Rainfall intensity, I, is the design rainfall rate in inches-per-hour (in/hr) for a particular drainage basin or subbasin of a watershed. The rainfall intensity, I, is obtained from an intensity-duration-frequency (IDF) chart for a specified return period under the assumption that the duration is equal to the time of concentration for the watershed being evaluated. Once the time of concentration is known, the design intensity of rainfall may be interpolated from Table RO-5. The frequency of recurrence interval is a statistical variable which is established by City standards.

Table RO-5 — Rainfall Intensity-Duration-Frequency Chart for the City of Tontitown, Arkansas

Duration (min)	2 Year (in/hr)	5 Year (in/hr)	10 Year (in/hr)	25 Year (in/hr)	50 Year (in/hr)	100 Year (in/hr)
5	5.61	6.49	7.21	8.27	9.26	10.15
6	5.38	6.23	6.92	7.94	8.9	9.74
7	5.17	5.98	6.66	7.64	8.56	9.38
8	4.97	5.76	6.41	7.36	8.25	9.04
9	4.79	5.56	6.19	7.1	7.97	8.74
10	4.62	5.37	5.98	6.87	7.71	8.45
11	4.47	5.2	5.79	6.65	7.47	8.19
12	4.32	5.03	5.62	6.45	7.25	7.95
13	4.19	4.88	5.45	6.26	7.04	7.72
14	4.06	4.74	5.29	6.09	6.85	7.51
15	3.94	4.61	5.15	5.92	6.67	7.31
16	3.83	4.48	5.01	5.77	6.5	7.13

Duration (min)	2 Year (in/hr)	5 Year (in/hr)	10 Year (in/hr)	25 Year (in/hr)	50 Year (in/hr)	100 Year (in/hr)
17	3.72	4.37	4.88	5.62	6.33	6.95
18	3.63	4.25	4.76	5.48	6.18	6.79
19	3.53	4.15	4.65	5.36	6.04	6.63
20	3.44	4.05	4.54	5.23	5.9	6.49
21	3.36	3.96	4.44	5.12	5.78	6.35
22	3.28	3.87	4.34	5.01	5.65	6.21
23	3.2	3.78	4.24	4.9	5.54	6.09
24	3.13	3.7	4.16	4.8	5.43	5.97
25	3.06	3.62	4.07	4.71	5.32	5.85
26	3	3.55	3.99	4.62	5.22	5.75
27	2.93	3.48	3.91	4.53	5.13	5.64
28	2.87	3.41	3.84	4.45	5.03	5.54
29	2.82	3.35	3.77	4.37	4.95	5.45
30	2.76	3.29	3.7	4.29	4.86	5.35
31	2.71	3.23	3.64	4.22	4.78	5.27
32	2.66	3.17	3.57	4.15	4.7	5.18
33	2.61	3.12	3.51	4.08	4.63	5.1
34	2.56	3.06	3.46	4.01	4.55	5.02
35	2.52	3.01	3.4	3.95	4.49	4.95
36	2.47	2.96	3.35	3.89	4.42	4.87
37	2.43	2.92	3.3	3.83	4.35	4.8
38	2.39	2.87	3.25	3.78	4.29	4.74
39	2.35	2.83	3.2	3.72	4.23	4.67
40	2.31	2.78	3.15	3.67	4.17	4.61
41	2.28	2.74	3.11	3.62	4.12	4.55
42	2.24	2.7	3.06	3.57	4.06	4.49
43	2.21	2.67	3.02	3.52	4.01	4.43
44	2.17	2.63	2.98	3.48	3.96	4.37
45	2.14	2.59	2.94	3.43	3.91	4.32
46	2.11	2.56	2.9	3.39	3.86	4.27
47	2.08	2.52	2.86	3.34	3.81	4.22
48	2.05	2.49	2.83	3.3	3.76	4.17

Duration (min)	2 Year (in/hr)	5 Year (in/hr)	10 Year (in/hr)	25 Year (in/hr)	50 Year (in/hr)	100 Year (in/hr)
49	2.02	2.46	2.79	3.26	3.72	4.12
50	2	2.43	2.76	3.23	3.68	4.07
51	1.97	2.4	2.72	3.19	3.64	4.03
52	1.94	2.37	2.69	3.15	3.59	3.98
53	1.92	2.34	2.66	3.12	3.55	3.94
54	1.89	2.31	2.63	3.08	3.52	3.9
55	1.87	2.28	2.6	3.05	3.48	3.86
56	1.85	2.26	2.57	3.01	3.44	3.82
57	1.82	2.23	2.54	2.98	3.41	3.78
58	1.8	2.21	2.51	2.95	3.37	3.74
59	1.78	2.18	2.49	2.92	3.34	3.7
60	1.76	2.16	2.46	2.89	3.3	3.67
70	1.64	2.02	2.31	2.72	3.11	3.46
80	1.52	1.88	2.15	2.54	2.91	3.25
90	1.41	1.75	2.00	2.37	2.72	3.04
100	1.29	1.61	1.85	2.20	2.53	2.82
110	1.17	1.47	1.69	2.02	2.33	2.61
120	1.05	1.33	1.54	1.85	2.14	2.4
140	0.95	1.22	1.41	1.70	1.97	2.21
160	0.85	1.10	1.29	1.55	1.80	2.03
180	0.75	0.99	1.16	1.4	1.63	1.84
360	0.42	0.58	0.69	0.86	1.01	1.16
720	0.23	0.34	0.41	0.52	0.62	0.72
1,440	0.13	0.19	0.24	0.31	0.38	0.45

2.7 Drainage Area, *A*

The drainage area is measured in acres when using the Rational Method. Drainage areas should be calculated using planimetric-topographic maps, supplemented by field surveys where topographic data has changed or where the contour interval is too great to distinguish the exact direction of overland flows. Field surveys are also useful for verifying flows through culverts or other drainage structures. City topography is available for use in designating off-site drainage or preliminary designs. An actual site survey will be required for all large scale developments and subdivisions.

2.8 Time of Concentration, t_c

The time of concentration, t_c, is best defined as the time required for water to flow from the hydraulically most distant point of a watershed to the design point at which peak runoff is desired. The critical time of concentration is the time to the peak of the runoff hydrograph at the location of the design point. Runoff from a watershed usually reaches a peak at the time when the entire watershed area is contributing to flow. The critical time of concentration, therefore, is assumed to be the flow time measured from the most remote part of the watershed to the design point. A trial and error procedure should be used to select the most remote point of a watershed since type of flow, ground slopes, soil types, surface treatments and improved conveyances all affect flow velocity and time of flow.

Water moves through a watershed as overland flow (sheet flow), shallow concentrated flow (swales, shallow ditches, etc.), channelized flow (gutters, storm sewers, open channels, etc.) or some combination of these. The type that occurs is a function of the conveyance system and is best determined by field inspection.

The time of concentration, t_c, is represented by Equation RO-2 for both urban and non-urban areas:

$$t_c = t_o + t_s + t_t$$ **(Equation RO-2)**

in which:

t_c = time of concentration (minutes)

t_o = overland flow time (minutes)

t_s = shallow concentrated flow time (minutes)

t_t = channelized flow time (minutes)

Urban areas are characterized as densely populated areas, where the collection of streets, parking lots, and rooftops in close proximity to one another create a situation where the collective runoff area is more impervious than not. Non-urban areas are characterized as less populated and more agricultural, where the majority of the area is farmland, open pastures, woodlands. This combination of agricultural land creates the situation where the collective runoff area is more pervious than not.

2.8.1 Overland Flow Time, t_o

Overland flow occurs over plane surfaces. With overland flow, the effective roughness coefficient (Manning's *n* value) includes the effect of raindrop impact; drag over the plane surface; obstacles such as litter, crop ridges, and rocks; and erosion and transportation of sediment. Table RO-6 gives Manning's *n* values for sheet flow for various surface conditions. These *n* values are for overland flow depths of approximately 0.1 foot.

The overland flow time, t_o, may be calculated using Equation RO-3:

$$t_o = \frac{0.42(n * L)^{0.8}}{(P_2)^{0.5} * S^{0.4}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation RO-3)}$$

in which:

t_o = overland flow time (minutes)

n = Manning's roughness coefficient (Table RO-6)

L = length of overland flow in feet (300-ft maximum in non-urban areas; 100-ft maximum in urban areas)

P_2 = 2-year, 24-hour rainfall (inches) calculated from Table RO-5 (or obtained from Table RO-9)

S = average basin slope (feet-per-feet) expressed as a decimal

Equation RO-3 is a simplified form of the Manning's kinematic solution, taken from TR-55 (1986), and is based on the following assumptions:

1) shallow steady uniform flow
2) constant intensity of rainfall excess (that part of a rain event available for runoff)
3) rainfall duration of 24 hours, and
4) minor effect of infiltration on travel time

Rainfall depth can be calculated from Table RO-5 (and/or can be obtained directly from Table RO-9). Engineering judgment should be used when determining the maximum overland flow distance. For example, in non-urban, gently sloping areas, with ground cover in good condition a maximum overland flow distance of 300-feet can be used. But in urban areas, where more impervious areas exist and ground cover condition is poor a maximum length of 100-feet shall be used. The engineer needs to be aware under what conditions and in what areas overland flow transitions to shallow concentrated or channelized flow when determining the overland flow distance. If the overland flow time is calculated to be in excess of 20 minutes, the designer should check to be sure that the time is reasonable considering the projected ultimate development of the area.

Table RO-6 — Roughness Coefficients (Manning's *n*) for Overland Flow (USDA NRCS – TR-55 1986)

Surface Description	*n*[1]
Smooth surfaces (concrete, asphalt,	
gravel, or bare soil)	0.011
Fallow (no residue)	0.05
Cultivated Soils:	
Residue cover ≤ 20%	0.06
Residue cover > 20%	0.17
Grass:	
Short grass prairie	0.15
Dense grasses [2]	0.24
Bermuda grass	0.41
Range (natural)	0.13
Woods: [3]	
Light underbrush	0.40
Dense underbrush	0.80

[1] The *n* values are a composite of information compiled by Engman (1986).

[2] Includes species such as weeping lovegrass, bluegrass, buffalo grass, blue grama grass, and native grass mixtures.

[3] When selecting *n*, consider cover to a height of about 0.1 ft. This is the only part of the plant cover that will obstruct sheet flow.

2.8.2 Shallow Concentrated Flow Time, t_s

After a maximum of 300- or 100-feet (depending on non-urban or urban conditions), overland flow usually becomes shallow concentrated flow. The shallow concentrated flow time, t_s, may be calculated using Equation RO-4.

Travel time (t_s) within a watershed is the ratio of flow length to flow velocity:

$$t_s = \frac{L}{60 * V} \qquad \textbf{(Equation RO-4)}$$

in which:

t_s= travel time (minutes) for shallow concentrated flow

L = flow length (feet)

V = average velocity (feet per second)

60 = conversion factor from seconds to minutes.

The average velocity for shallow concentrated flow can be determined from Equation RO-5 and Equation RO-6 for paved and unpaved areas, respectively. The average velocity can then be substituted into Equation RO-4 to calculate t_s.

$$V = 20.3282 * S^{1/2} \quad \text{(Paved Areas)} \qquad \textbf{(Equation RO-5)}$$

and

$$V = 16.1345 * S^{1/2} \quad \text{(Unpaved Areas)} \qquad \textbf{(Equation RO-6)}$$

The velocity equations presented above are based on the solution of the Manning's Equation (Equation RO-8) with different assumptions for n and R for paved and unpaved areas. For unpaved areas, n is 0.05 and R is 0.4; for paved areas, n is 0.025 and R is 0.2 (USDA NRCS – TR-55 1986).

2.8.3 Channelized Flow Time, t_t

Channelized flow is that part of the flow path which is neither overland sheet flow, nor shallow concentrated flow. Channelized flow paths may consist of storm sewers, gutters, swales, ditches, or natural drainageways in any combination. The channelized flow time, t_t, may be calculated using Equation RO-7.

$$t_t = \frac{L}{60 * V}$$ **(Equation RO-7)**

in which:

t_t = travel time (minutes) for channelized flow

L = flow length (feet)

V = average velocity (feet per second). Refer to Equation RO-8

60 = conversion factor from seconds to minutes.

And where:

$$V = \frac{1.49}{n} * R^{2/3} * S^{1/2}$$ (Manning's Equation) **(Equation RO-8)**

in which:

V = average velocity (feet per second)

n = Manning's roughness coefficient

R = hydraulic radius (feet) and is equal to A/P_w

A = cross-sectional flow area (square-feet)

P_w = wetted perimeter (feet)

S = average channel slope (feet-per-feet) expressed as a decimal

Manning's *n* values for open channel flow can be obtained from Table RO-7. After average velocity is computed using Equation RO-8, t_t for the channel segment can be estimated from Equation RO-7.

Table RO-7 — Manning's Values of Roughness Coefficient *n* for Open Channels (Bedient and Huber 2002)

Type of Channel and Description	Minimum	Normal	Maximum
Lined or built-up channels			
Concrete, float finish	0.013	0.015	0.016
Concrete, concrete bottom	0.020	0.030	0.035
Gravel bottom with riprap	0.023	0.033	0.036
Brick, glazed	0.011	0.013	0.015
Excavated or dredged canal			
Earth, straight and uniform - short grass	0.022	0.027	0.033
Earth, winding, sluggish - dense weeds	0.030	0.035	0.040
Rock cuts, jagged and irregular	0.035	0.040	0.050
Channels not maintained, weeds and brush uncut	0.050	0.080	0.120
Natural Streams			
Clean, straight, full stage	0.025	0.030	0.033
Clean, winding, some pools and shoals	0.033	0.040	0.045
Sluggish reaches, weedy, deep pools	0.050	0.070	0.080
Mountain stream steep banks; gravel and cobbles	0.030	0.040	0.050
Mountain stream steep banks; cobbles with large boulders	0.040	0.050	0.070
Floodplains			
Pasture, no brush, high grass	0.030	0.035	0.050
Brush, scattered brush, heavy weeds	0.035	0.050	0.070
Brush, medium to dense brush in summer	0.070	0.100	0.160
Trees, dense willows, summer, straight	0.110	0.150	0.200
Trees, heavy stand of timber	0.080	0.100	0.120

2.8.4 Minimum Time of Concentration

In non-urban watersheds, should the calculations result in a t_c of less than 10-minutes, a minimum value of 10-minutes shall be used. In urban watersheds, the minimum t_c shall not be less than 5-minutes; if calculations indicate a lesser value, use 5-minutes instead.

2.8.5 Common Errors in Calculating Time of Concentration

A common error is to not check the runoff peak resulting from only part of the watershed. In some cases, a lower portion of the watershed or a localized highly impervious area may produce a larger peak flow rate than the entire watershed. In such a case, the time of concentration should be calculated for the smaller area that produces the higher peak flow rate. Failing to recognize this condition will result in calculating a longer time of concentration than is appropriate which results in a lower rainfall intensity value. This error is most often encountered when the watershed is long (and narrow presumably) or the upper portion contains rural parkland areas and the lower portion is developed urban land. Such an error can result in the undersizing of stormwater infrastructure.

3.0 SCS CURVE NUMBER METHOD

The *Soil Conservation Service Technical Release – 55 Synthetic Hydrograph Method* (SCS method) is a synthetic hydrograph method developed specifically for use in urbanized and urbanizing areas. This method is useful in analyzing watersheds involving several subareas with complex runoff patterns. The method is most useful in analyzing changes in runoff volume due to development and in the evaluation and design of runoff control measures. The SCS method as described herein shall be used in all cases where the watershed being developed is characterized by complex runoff patterns and site conditions and/or is larger than 30 acres and less than 2000 acres. Complex runoff patterns and site conditions are characterized as areas with continually transitioning surface types, a collection of different flow types, numerous obstructions interfering with the runoff's direction and flow type, etc. When a watershed is observed to contain two or more distinct interacting sub-basins consistent with the conditions as dictated above then the watershed is considered complex. This method is similar to the Rational Method in that runoff is directly related to rainfall amounts through use of runoff curve numbers (CNs). The SCS method is explained in greater detail in the *National Engineering Handbook*, Section 4 (NEH-4), "Hydrology" (SCS 1985).

3.1 SCS Method Formula

Runoff, Q, for the SCS method is represented by Equation RO-9:

$$Q = \frac{(P - I_a)^2}{(P - I_a) + S}$$ **(Equation RO-9)**

in which:

Q = runoff (inches)

P = rainfall depth for design storm (inches)

S = potential maximum retention after runoff begins (inches)

I_a = initial abstraction (inches)

Initial abstraction, I_a , is all losses before runoff begins. It includes water retained in surface depressions, water intercepted by vegetation, evaporation, and infiltration. I_a is highly variable but generally is correlated with soil and cover parameters. A relationship between I_a and S was developed by USDA NRCS through studies of many small agricultural watersheds. The empirical relationship used in the SCS runoff formula is:

$$I_a = 0.2 * S$$ **(Equation RO-10)**

Substituting Equation RO-10 into Equation RO-9 gives:

$$Q = \frac{(P - 0.2 * S)^2}{(P + 0.8 * S)}$$ **(Equation RO-11)**

S is related to the soil and cover conditions of the watershed through the CN. CN has a range of 0 to 100, and S is related to CN by:

$$S = \frac{1000}{CN} - 10$$ **(Equation RO-12)**

Figure RO-1 and Table RO-8 solve Equation RO-11 and Equation RO-12 for a range of CNs and rainfall. Refer to Section 3.3 for explanations and direction in determining proper CNs for use in Equation RO-12.

Figure RO-1 — Solution of Runoff Equation (USDA NRCS – TR-55 1986)

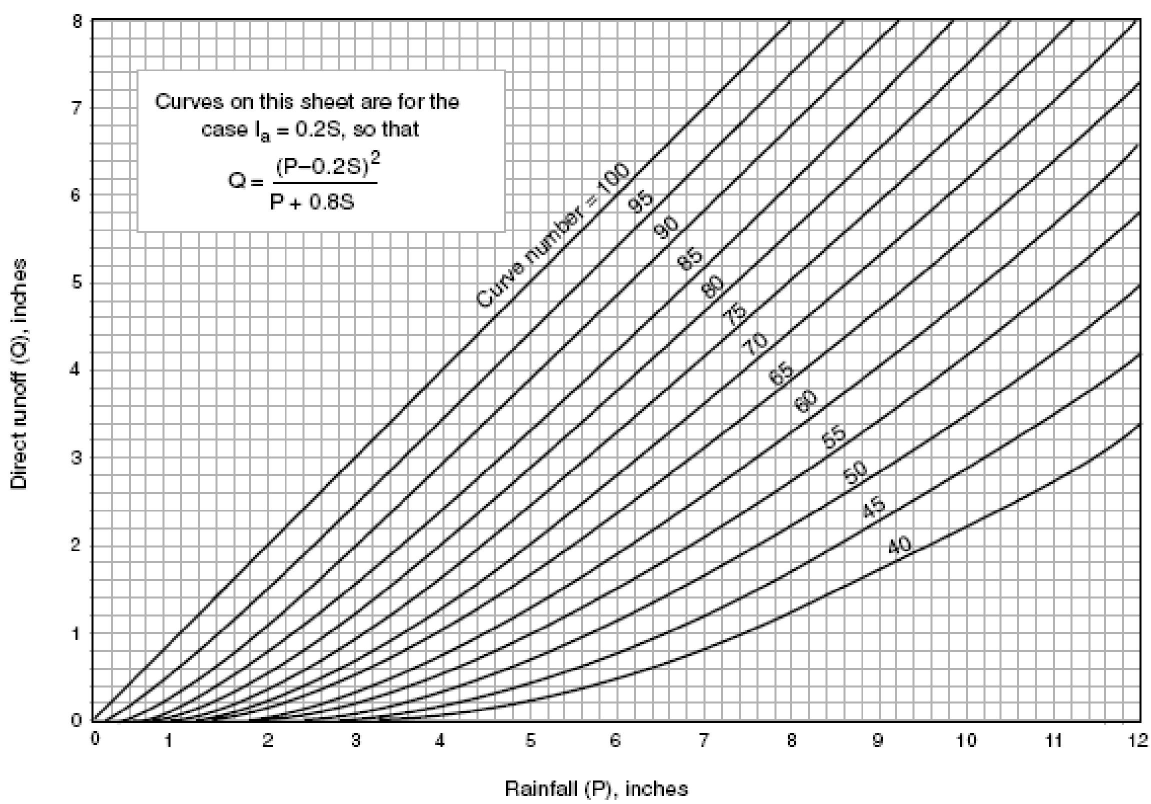


Table RO-8 — Runoff Depths for Selected CNs and Rainfall Amounts (USDA NRCS – TR-55 1986)

Rainfall (P) (inches)	Curve Number (CN [1])												
	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95	98
	Inches												
1.0	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.03	0.08	0.17	0.32	0.56	0.79
1.2	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.03	0.07	0.15	0.27	0.46	0.74	0.99
1.4	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.02	0.06	0.13	0.24	0.39	0.61	0.92	1.18
1.6	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.01	0.05	0.11	0.20	0.34	0.52	0.76	1.11	1.38
1.8	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.03	0.09	0.17	0.29	0.44	0.65	0.93	1.29	1.58
2.0	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.02	0.06	0.14	0.24	0.38	0.56	0.80	1.09	1.48	1.77
2.5	0.00	0.00	0.02	0.08	0.17	0.30	0.46	0.65	0.89	1.18	1.53	1.96	2.27
3.0	0.00	0.02	0.09	0.19	0.33	0.51	0.71	0.96	1.25	1.59	1.98	2.45	2.77
3.5	0.02	0.08	0.20	0.35	0.53	0.75	1.01	1.30	1.64	2.02	2.45	2.94	3.27
4.0	0.06	0.18	0.33	0.53	0.76	1.03	1.33	1.67	2.04	2.46	2.92	3.43	3.77
4.5	0.14	0.30	0.50	0.74	1.02	1.33	1.67	2.05	2.46	2.91	3.40	3.92	4.26
5.0	0.24	0.44	0.69	0.98	1.30	1.65	2.04	2.45	2.89	3.37	3.88	4.42	4.76
6.0	0.50	0.80	1.14	1.52	1.92	2.35	2.81	3.28	3.78	4.30	4.85	5.41	5.76
7.0	0.84	1.24	1.68	2.12	2.60	3.10	3.62	4.15	4.69	5.25	5.82	6.41	6.76
8.0	1.25	1.74	2.25	2.78	3.33	3.89	4.47	5.04	5.63	6.21	6.81	7.40	7.76
9.0	1.71	2.29	2.88	3.49	4.10	4.72	5.33	5.95	6.57	7.18	7.79	8.40	8.76
10.0	2.23	2.89	3.56	4.23	4.90	5.56	6.22	6.88	7.52	8.16	8.78	9.40	9.76
11.0	2.78	3.52	4.26	5.00	5.72	6.43	7.13	7.81	8.48	9.13	9.77	10.39	10.76
12.0	3.38	4.19	5.00	5.79	6.56	7.32	8.05	8.76	9.45	10.11	10.76	11.39	11.76
13.0	4.00	4.89	5.76	6.61	7.42	8.21	8.98	9.71	10.42	11.10	11.76	12.39	12.76
14.0	4.65	5.62	6.55	7.44	8.30	9.12	9.91	10.67	11.39	12.08	12.75	13.39	13.76
15.0	5.33	6.36	7.35	8.29	9.19	10.04	10.85	11.63	12.37	13.07	13.74	14.39	14.76

[1] - To obtain runoff depths for CNs and other rainfall amounts not shown in this Table, use arithmetic interpolation.

3.2 Design Storm Data

The SCS method is based on 24-hour rainfall amounts for various design storm recurrence intervals (e.g., 1-year, 10-year, or 100-year storm events). These rainfall amounts are taken from the U.S. Weather Bureau Technical Paper No. 40 for Tontitown and are as follows: 3.12 inches for the 2-year frequency rainfall; 4.56 inches for the 5-year frequency rainfall; 5.76 inches for the 10-year frequency rainfall; 7.44 inches for the 25-year frequency; 9.12 inches for the 50-year frequency; and 10.80 inches for the 100-year frequency. Table RO-9 provides rainfall data derived from several sources for storm durations other than the 24-hour event and for a range of storm return frequencies, if needed for further detailed analysis.

Table RO-9 — Rainfall Depth-Duration-Frequency Chart for the City of Tontitown, Arkansas (Inches)

Duration (min)	2 Year (in)	5 Year (in)	10 Year (in)	25 Year (in)	50 Year (in)	100 Year (in)
5	0.47	0.54	0.60	0.69	0.77	0.85
6	0.54	0.62	0.69	0.79	0.89	0.97
7	0.60	0.70	0.78	0.89	1.00	1.09
8	0.66	0.77	0.85	0.98	1.10	1.21
9	0.72	0.83	0.93	1.07	1.20	1.31
10	0.77	0.90	1.00	1.15	1.29	1.41
11	0.82	0.95	1.06	1.22	1.37	1.50
12	0.86	1.01	1.12	1.29	1.45	1.59
13	0.91	1.06	1.18	1.36	1.53	1.67
14	0.95	1.11	1.23	1.42	1.60	1.75
15	0.99	1.15	1.29	1.48	1.67	1.83
16	1.02	1.19	1.34	1.54	1.73	1.90
17	1.05	1.24	1.38	1.59	1.79	1.97
18	1.09	1.28	1.43	1.64	1.85	2.04
19	1.12	1.31	1.47	1.70	1.91	2.10
20	1.15	1.35	1.51	1.74	1.97	2.16
21	1.18	1.39	1.55	1.79	2.02	2.22
22	1.20	1.42	1.59	1.84	2.07	2.28
23	1.23	1.45	1.63	1.88	2.12	2.33

Duration (min)	2 Year (in)	5 Year (in)	10 Year (in)	25 Year (in)	50 Year (in)	100 Year (in)
24	1.25	1.48	1.66	1.92	2.17	2.39
25	1.28	1.51	1.70	1.96	2.22	2.44
26	1.30	1.54	1.73	2.00	2.26	2.49
27	1.32	1.57	1.76	2.04	2.31	2.54
28	1.34	1.59	1.79	2.08	2.35	2.59
29	1.36	1.62	1.82	2.11	2.39	2.63
30	1.38	1.65	1.85	2.15	2.43	2.68
31	1.40	1.67	1.88	2.18	2.47	2.72
32	1.42	1.69	1.90	2.21	2.51	2.76
33	1.44	1.72	1.93	2.24	2.55	2.81
34	1.45	1.73	1.96	2.27	2.58	2.84
35	1.47	1.76	1.98	2.30	2.62	2.89
36	1.48	1.78	2.01	2.33	2.65	2.92
37	1.50	1.80	2.04	2.36	2.68	2.96
38	1.51	1.82	2.06	2.39	2.72	3.00
39	1.53	1.84	2.08	2.42	2.75	3.04
40	1.54	1.85	2.10	2.45	2.78	3.07
41	1.56	1.87	2.13	2.47	2.82	3.11
42	1.57	1.89	2.14	2.50	2.84	3.14
43	1.58	1.91	2.16	2.52	2.87	3.17
44	1.59	1.93	2.19	2.55	2.90	3.20
45	1.61	1.94	2.21	2.57	2.93	3.24
46	1.62	1.96	2.22	2.60	2.96	3.27
47	1.63	1.97	2.24	2.62	2.98	3.31
48	1.64	1.99	2.26	2.64	3.01	3.34
49	1.65	2.01	2.28	2.66	3.04	3.36
50	1.67	2.03	2.30	2.69	3.07	3.39
51	1.67	2.04	2.31	2.71	3.09	3.43
52	1.68	2.05	2.33	2.73	3.11	3.45
53	1.70	2.07	2.35	2.76	3.14	3.48
54	1.70	2.08	2.37	2.77	3.17	3.51
55	1.71	2.09	2.38	2.80	3.19	3.54

Duration (min)	2 Year (in)	5 Year (in)	10 Year (in)	25 Year (in)	50 Year (in)	100 Year (in)
56	1.73	2.11	2.40	2.81	3.21	3.57
57	1.73	2.12	2.41	2.83	3.24	3.59
58	1.74	2.14	2.43	2.85	3.26	3.62
59	1.75	2.14	2.45	2.87	3.28	3.64
60	1.76	2.16	2.46	2.89	3.30	3.67
70	1.92	2.36	2.69	3.17	3.62	4.03
80	2.03	2.51	2.87	3.39	3.88	4.33
90	2.11	2.62	3.00	3.56	4.08	4.55
100	2.14	2.68	3.08	3.66	4.21	4.71
110	2.14	2.69	3.10	3.71	4.28	4.79
120	2.10	2.66	3.08	3.70	4.28	4.80
140	2.22	2.84	3.30	3.97	4.60	5.16
160	2.27	2.94	3.43	4.13	4.80	5.40
180	2.25	2.97	3.48	4.20	4.89	5.52
360	2.52	3.48	4.14	5.16	6.06	6.96
720	2.76	4.08	4.92	6.24	7.44	8.64
1,440	3.12	4.56	5.76	7.44	9.12	10.80

Source:

2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50-, 100-Year Design Storm

5-60 min. NOAA HYDRO-35

60-120 min. interpolated

120-1,440 min. Technical Paper No. 40

1-Year Design Storm

5-160 min. calculated from logarithmic trend line from 5,10,15,30,60,&120-min. Technical Paper 40

180-,360-,720-, and 1440-min. Technical Paper No. 40

3.3 Determination of Runoff Curve Number (CN)

The runoff curve number (CN) determines the amount of runoff that will occur given a specified rainfall amount. The determination of the CN value for a watershed is a function of the hydrologic soil group (HSG), cover type and hydrologic condition, and antecedent moisture condition (AMC). Another factor considered is whether impervious areas outlet directly to the drainage system (connected) or whether the flow spreads over pervious areas before entering the drainage system (unconnected).

CN values in Table RO-10 and Table RO-11 represent average antecedent moisture conditions for undeveloped and developed lands. For watersheds with multiple soil types or land uses, an area-weighted CN should be calculated. When significant differences in land use or natural control points exist, the watershed shall be broken into smaller drainage areas for modeling purposes. Curve Numbers presented in Table RO-10 and Table RO-11 are based on the assumption that impervious areas are directly connected. The following sections provide details on the factors governing the determination of CN values and their relationship to runoff.

3.3.1 Hydrologic Soil Group

Soils are classified as one of four (A, B, C, or D) hydrologic soil groups (HSG). A soil's HSG indicates the minimum rate of infiltration obtained for bare soil after prolonged wetting. Group A soils have the highest infiltration rates while Group D soils have the lowest. The infiltration rate is the rate at which water enters the soil at the soil surface and is controlled by the surface's cover type. The four HSGs are defined in TR-55 (USDA NRCS – TR-55 1986) as follows:

- **Group A –** (Sand, loamy sand, or sandy loam) soils have low runoff potential and high infiltration rates even when thoroughly wetted. They consist chiefly of deep, well to excessively drained sand or gravel and have a high rate of water transmission (greater than 0.30 in/hr).

- **Group B –** (Silt loam or loam) soils have moderate infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted and consist chiefly of moderately deep to deep, moderately well to well drained soils with moderately fine to moderately coarse textures. These soils have a moderate rate of water transmission (0.15- 0.30 in/hr).

- **Group C –** (Sandy clay loam) soils have low infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted and consist chiefly of soils with a layer that impedes downward movement of water and soils with moderately fine to fine texture. These soils have a low rate of water transmission (0.05-0.15 in/hr).

- **Group D –** (Clay loam, silty clay loam, sandy clay, silty clay, or clay) soils have high runoff potential. They have very low infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted and consist chiefly of clay soils with a high swelling potential, soils with a permanent high water table, soils with a claypan or clay layer at or near the surface, and shallow soils over nearly impervious material. These soils have a very low rate of water transmission (0-0.05 in/hr).

It should be noted that any disturbance of a soil profile can significantly change its infiltration characteristics. With urbanization, native soil profiles may be mixed or removed or fill material from other areas may be introduced. Therefore, for areas where the soil profile has been disturbed, the HSG shall be adjusted up one level (i.e., from A to B, B to C, or C to D) unless it can be shown to the City's satisfaction that the predevelopment soil profile has been reestablished.

The predominant HSG in the City of Tontitown is Group D. However, the soils in the area of interest for any project should be identified from a soil survey report, which can be obtained from local SCS offices, soil and water conservation district offices, or online resources such as the "Web Soil Survey" provided by USDA NRCS (http://websoilsurvey.nrcs.usda.gov).

3.3.2 Cover Type and Hydrologic Condition

Table RO-10 and Table RO-11 address most cover types, such as vegetation, bare soil, and impervious surfaces. There are several methods for determining cover type, but the most common are field reconnaissance, aerial photographs, and land use maps. It should be noted that anticipated cover types shall also be considered in runoff analysis based on the City's current zoning and future master plan for the area of interest being analyzed.

Hydrologic condition indicates the effects of cover type on infiltration and runoff for a particular HSG and is generally estimated from plant density on sample areas, with higher plant density resulting in higher rates of infiltration. "*Good*" hydrologic condition indicates that the soil usually has a low runoff potential for that specific HSG and cover type. Some factors to consider in estimating the effect of cover on infiltration and runoff are (a) canopy or density of lawns, crops, or other vegetative areas; (b) amount of year-round cover; (c) amount of grass or close-seeded legumes in rotations; and (d) degree of surface roughness.

3.3.3 Antecedent Moisture Condition

Antecedent moisture condition (AMC) is the index of runoff potential before a storm event. The AMC accounts for the existing degree of soil saturation at the beginning of a rainfall, therefore adjusting the CN to reflect more accurate runoff conditions. All values given in Table RO-10 and Table RO-11 represent AMC II (median moisture conditions) and shall be used for design. Adjustments for AMC I (dry conditions) and AMC III (wet conditions) can be made if appropriate (refer to USDA NRCS – NEH-4 1985), but will need to be approved by the City prior to their use.

3.3.4 Impervious Area Drainage Paths – Connected or Unconnected

When determining CN values it is important to consider how runoff from impervious areas is conveyed to the drainage system. For example, do the impervious areas connect directly to the drainage system, or are they disconnected and outlet onto lawns or other pervious areas where infiltration can occur?

3.3.4.1 Connected impervious areas

An impervious area is considered connected if runoff from the area flows directly into the drainage system. It is also considered connected if runoff from the area occurs as concentrated shallow flow that runs over an impervious area and then into the drainage system.

Urban Area CNs (Table RO-10) were developed for typical land use relationships based on specific assumed percentages of impervious area. These CN values were developed on the assumptions that (a) pervious urban areas are equivalent to pasture in good hydrologic condition and (b) impervious areas have a CN of 98 and are directly connected to the drainage system. Some assumed percentages of impervious area are shown in Table RO-10.

If all of the impervious area at a site is directly connected to the drainage system, but the impervious area percentages or the pervious land use assumptions in Table RO-10 are not applicable, use Figure RO-2 to compute a composite CN. For example, Table RO-10 gives a CN of 70 for a 1/2-acre lot in HSG B, with assumed impervious area of 25 percent. However, if the lot has 20 percent impervious area and a pervious area CN of 61, the composite CN obtained from Figure RO-2 is 68. The CN difference between 70 and 68 reflects the difference in percent impervious area. If composite values are used, their calculation shall be supplied in the Drainage Report.

3.3.4.2 Unconnected impervious areas

Runoff from unconnected impervious areas is spread over a pervious area as sheet flow. To determine the CN when all or part of the impervious area is not directly connected to the drainage system, (1) use Figure RO-3 if total impervious area is less than 30 percent, or (2) use Figure RO-2 if the total impervious area is equal to or greater than 30 percent, because the absorptive capacity of the remaining pervious areas will not significantly affect runoff.

When impervious area is less than 30 percent, obtain the composite CN by referring to the right half of Figure RO-3 and identifying the intersection point of the horizontal axis value (percentage of total impervious area) with the vertical axis value (ratio of total unconnected impervious area to total impervious area). From that intersection point, refer to the left portion of Figure RO-3 to the appropriate pervious CN and read down to find the composite CN. For example, for a 1/2-acre lot with 20 percent total impervious area (75 percent of which is unconnected) and pervious CN of 61, the composite CN from Figure RO-3 is 66. If all of the impervious area is connected, the resulting CN (from Figure RO-2) would be 68.

Table RO-10 — Runoff Curve Numbers (*CN*) for Urban Areas (Antecedent Moisture Condition II, and I_a = 0.2*S) (USDA NRCS – TR-55 1986)

COVER DESCRIPTION		*CN* FOR HYDROLOGIC SOIL GROUP			
COVER TYPE	AVERAGE PERCENT IMPERVIOUS AREA [3]	A	B	C	D
Open Spaces (lawns, parks, golf courses, cemeteries, etc.)					
Poor Condition (grass cover <50%)	-	68	79	86	89
Fair condition: grass cover on 50% to 75% of the area .	-	49	69	79	84
Good condition: grass cover on 75% or more of the area [1]	-	39	61	74	80
Impervious Areas:					
Paved Parking Lots, Roofs, Driveways, etc.					
(excluding right-of-way)	-	98	98	98	98
Streets and Roads:					
Paved; curbs and storm sewers (excluding R.O.W)	-	98	98	98	98
Paved; open ditches (including right-of-way)	-	83	89	92	93
Gravel (including right-of-way)	-	76	85	89	91
Dirt (including right-of-way)	-	72	82	87	89
Urban Districts:					
Commercial and Business	85	89	92	94	95
Industrial	72	81	88	91	93
Residential Districts by Average Lot Size: [2]					
1/8 acre or less (town houses)	65	77	85	90	92
1/4 acre	38	61	75	83	87
1/3 acre	30	57	72	81	86
1/2 acre	25	54	70	80	85
1 acre	20	51	68	79	84
2 acres	12	46	65	77	82
Developing Urban Areas					
Newly Graded Areas (pervious areas only, no vegetation)	-	77	86	91	94

[1] Good cover is protected from grazing and litter and brush cover soil.

[2] Curve numbers are computed assuming that the runoff from the house and driveway is directed toward the street with a minimum of roof water directed to lawns where additional infiltration could occur.

[3] The remaining pervious areas (lawn) are considered to be in good pasture condition for these curve numbers.

Table RO-11 – Runoff Curve Numbers (*CN*) for Non-Urban Areas (Antecedent Moisture Condition II, and $I_a = 0.2*S$) (USDA NRCS – TR-55 1986)

COVER DESCRIPTION		*CN* FOR HYDROLOGIC SOIL GROUP			
COVER TYPE AND HYDROLOGIC CONDITION		**A**	**B**	**C**	**D**
Idle Lands (not yet developed)					
Pasture, Grassland, or Range ---- continuous forage for grazing. [1]	Poor	68	79	86	89
	Fair	49	69	79	84
	Good	39	61	74	80
Meadow ---- continuous grass, protected from grazing and generally mowed for hay.	----	30	58	71	78
Brush ---- brush-weed-grass mixture with brush the major element. [2]	Poor	48	67	77	83
	Fair	35	56	70	77
	Good	30 [3]	48	65	73
Woods ---- grass combination (orchard or tree farm). [4]	Poor	57	73	82	86
	Fair	43	65	76	82
	Good	32	58	72	79
Woods [5]	Poor	45	66	77	83
	Fair	36	60	73	79
	Good	30 [3]	55	70	77
Farmsteads ---- buildings, lanes, driveways, and surrounding lots.	----	59	74	82	86

[1] *Poor*: <50% ground cover or heavily grazed with no mulch.

Fair: 50 to 75% ground cover and not heavily grazed.

Good: >75% ground cover and lightly or only occasionally grazed.

[2] *Poor*: <50% ground cover.

Fair: 50 to 75% ground cover.

Good: >75% ground cover.

[3] If actual CN is less than 30; use CN = 30 for runoff calculations

[4] CNs shown were computed for areas with 50% woods and 50% grass (pasture) cover. Other combinations of conditions may be computed from the CNs for woods and pasture.

[5] *Poor*: Forest litter, small trees, and brush are destroyed by heavy grazing or regular burning.

Fair: Woods are grazed but not burned, and some forest litter covers the soil

Good: Woods are protected from grazing, and litter and brush adequately cover the soil.

Figure RO-2 — Composite CN with Connected Impervious Area (USDA NRCS – TR-55 1986)

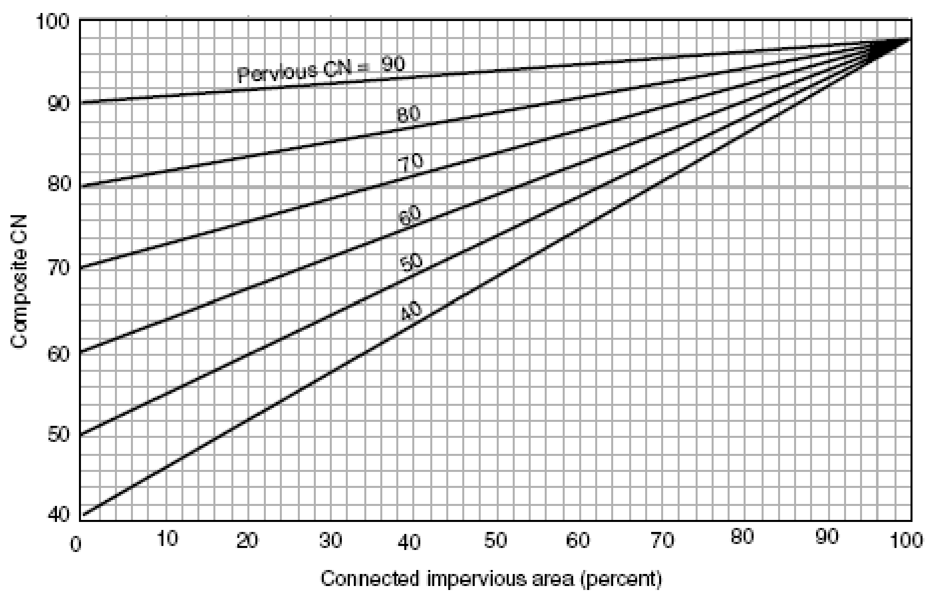
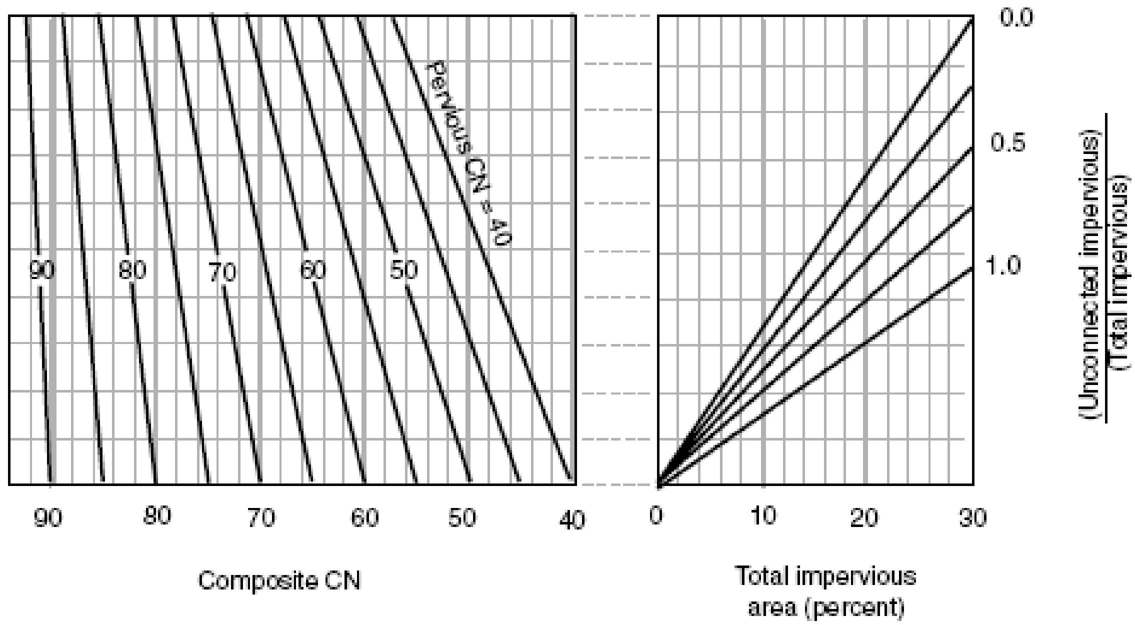


Figure RO-3 — Composite CN with Unconnected Impervious Areas and Total Impervious Areas Less than 30% (USDA NRCS – TR-55 1986)



3.4 Limitations on Use of SCS Method

- Do not use the SCS method when large changes in CN values occur among watershed subareas and when runoff volumes are less than about 1-1/2 -inches for CN values less than 60.

- The CN procedure is less accurate when runoff is less than 1/2-inch. As a check, use another procedure to determine runoff when this occurs.

- Do not use the SCS method for watersheds that have several subareas with times of concentration below six minutes. In these cases, subareas should be combined to produce a time of concentration of at least six minutes (0.10 hours) for the combined areas.

- Curve numbers describe average conditions that are useful for design purposes. If the rainfall event used is a historical storm, the modeling accuracy decreases.

- Use the runoff curve number equation with caution when re-creating specific features of an actual storm. The equation does not contain an expression for time and, therefore, does not account for rainfall duration or intensity.

- The initial abstraction relationship, $I_a = 0.2*S$, which consists of interception, initial infiltration, surface depression storage, evapotranspiration, and other factors, is based on data obtained by the USDA NRCS from agricultural watersheds (where S is the potential maximum retention after runoff begins). In reality not all watersheds (urban conditions and non-urban conditions) share the same I_a because of differing combinations of impervious and pervious areas along with differing storage features. However, for this Manual I_a will be related the same for all watershed conditions.

- Runoff from snowmelt or rain on frozen ground cannot be estimated using these procedures.

- The SCS method procedures apply only to direct surface runoff. Do not overlook large sources of subsurface flow or high ground water levels that contribute to runoff. These conditions are often related to HSG A soils and forest areas that have been assigned relatively low CNs in Table RO-10 and Table RO-11. Good judgment and experience based on stream gage records are needed to adjust CNs as conditions warrant.

- When the weighted CN is less than 40, use another procedure to determine runoff.

3.5 Computer Modeling

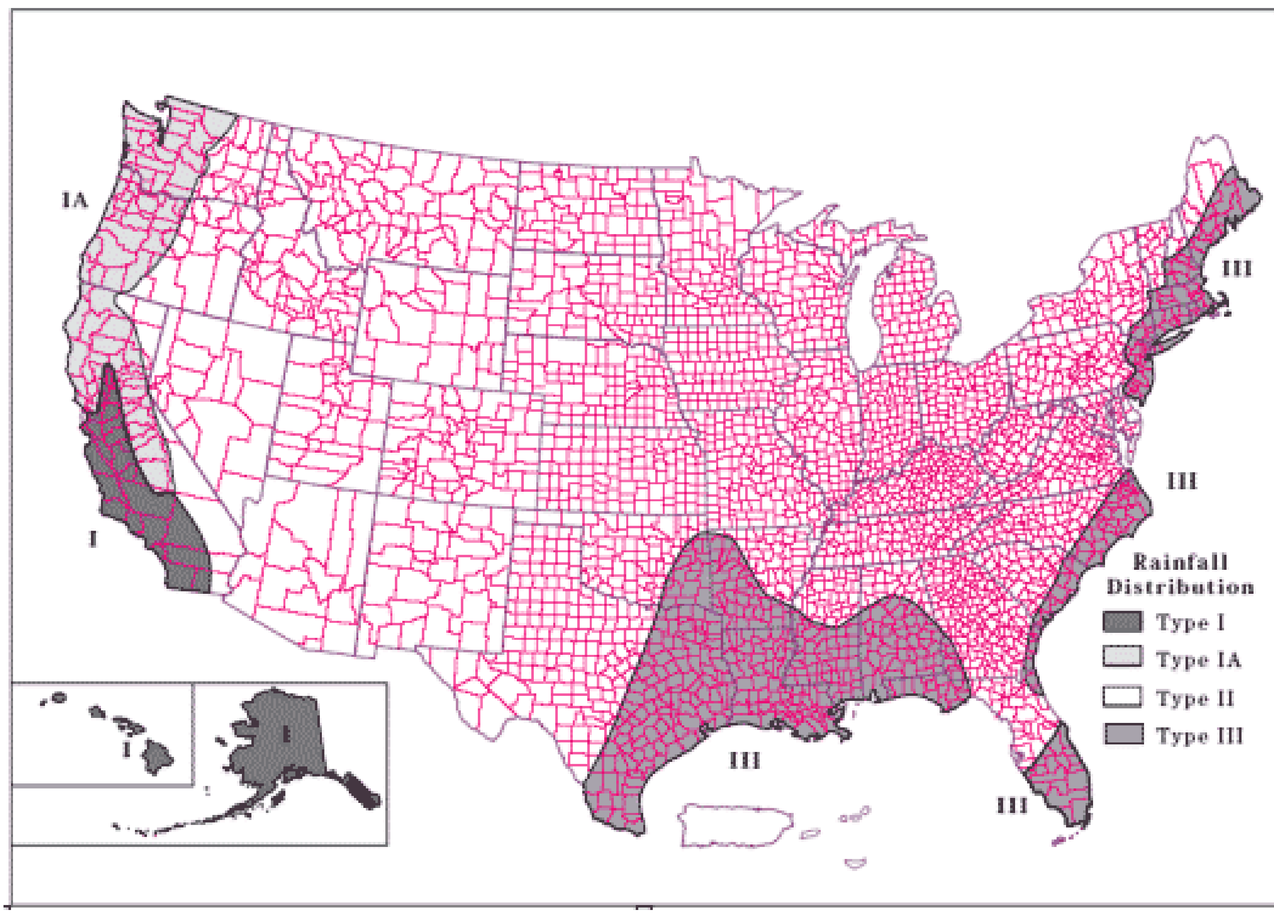
Due to the large number of computations involved in runoff calculations and routing, use of modern computer models by experienced engineers is allowed by the City for the drainage calculations/methods outlined above. The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Hydrologic Engineering Center (HEC) has developed computer programs that can be downloaded online at the USACE hydrologic website (http://www.hec.usace.army.mil/) that can be applied to some of the drainage methods. HEC-HMS is one such program available from USACE. Additionally, versions of TR-20 and TR-55 are available through the NRCS, which allow user input of rainfall distributions and perform acceptable detention and channel routing routines. The Type III rainfall distribution type shall be used within the City of Tontitown planning boundary, refer to Figure RO-4. The HEC-HMS, TR-55, and TR-20 models are available free of charge from the agencies that developed them. Table RO-12 provides additional information on the computer models as well as a link for downloading the available software.

Commercial software, such as StormCAD, Hydraflow, PondPack, etc., is also an acceptable method for evaluating the drainage methods mentioned in this chapter. It is the responsibility of the design engineer to understand the methods employed within the commercial software used and ensure that the software's results will match and correspond with the methodology outlined in this chapter of the *Manual*.

Table RO-12 — Computer Modeling Software

Available Computer Models	Computer model is useful in calculating …	Link to Download Computer Program
HEC-HMS	SCS method	http://www.hec.usace.army.mil/
TR-55	SCS method, T_c	http://www.wsi.nrcs.usda.gov/products/W2Q/H&H/Tools_Models/WinTR55.html
TR-20	SCS method, T_c	http://www.wsi.nrcs.usda.gov/products/W2Q/H&H/Tools_Models/WinTR20.html

Figure RO-4 – SCS Geographic Boundaries for Rainfall Distribution (USDA NRCS – TR-55 1986)



REFERENCES

Bedient, Philip B. and Wayne C. Huber. 2002. *Hydrology and Floodplain Analysis*, Third Edition. Upper Saddle River, NJ ; Prentice Hall

Debo, T.N. and A.J. Reese. 2002. *Municipal Storm water Management*, Second Edition. Washington, D.C.; Lewis Publishers.

Engman, E.T. 1986. Roughness coefficients for routing surface runoff. Journal of Irrigation and Drainage Engineering 112 (1): 39-53.

Federal Aviation Administration, Department of Transportation. 1970. *Airport Drainage.* AC No. 150/5320-5B.

Hodge, Scott A. and Gary D. Tasker. 1995. *Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Arkansas. USGS – Water-Resource Investigations Report 95-4224*. Little Rock, AR: U.S. Geological Survey (in cooperation with Arkansas State Highway and Transportation Department).

Overton, D.E. and M.E. Meadows. 1976. Storm water modeling. Academic Press. New York, NY. p. 58-88.

United States Army Corps of Engineers (USACE). 2000. *Hydrologic Modeling System, HEC-HMS, Technical Reference Manual*. Davis, CA: USACE Hydrologic Engineering Center.

United States Department of Agriculture Natural Resource Conservation Service (USDA NRCS). 1961. *Rainfall Frequency Atlas of the United States for Duration from 30 Minutes to 24 Hours and Return Periods from 1 to 100 Years*. Technical Paper No. 40, Washington, D.C.: USDA.

United States Department of Agriculture Natural Resource Conservation Service (USDA NRCS). 1986. *Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds*. Technical Release No. 55, Washington, D.C.: USDA.

United States Department of Agriculture Soil Conservation Service (USDA SCS). 1966. *Section 4, Hydrology, National Engineering Handbook*. Washington, D.C.: USDA.

United States Department of Agriculture Soil Conservation Service (USDA SCS). 1986. *TR-20 Computer Program for Project Formulation Hydrology*. Technical Release No. 20, revised by the Hydrology Unit and Technology Development Support Staff, SCS, February 1992 (originally developed 1964). Washington, D.C.: USDA.

Urban Drainage and Flood Control District. 2001 (Revised 2006). *Urban Storm Drainage – Criteria Manual (Volume 1).* Denver, CO: UDFCD

CHAPTER 4. CULVERT HYDRAULICS

CONTENTS

Section Page

TABLES

FIGURES

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Purpose of the Chapter

The purpose of this chapter is to provide guidance for culvert and bridge hydraulic design. The primary objective of a culvert or bridge is to convey stormwater flows, based on a design flow rate, through embankments or under roadways without causing damage to adjacent properties and developments, the roadway, or to the drainage structure. Specifically, this chapter provides information on the criteria and methodology necessary to design culverts and bridges according to City requirements.

Chapter Summary

The function of culverts and bridges is to convey surface water under a highway, city street, railroad, recreation trail, or other embankment. In addition to the hydraulic function, the culverts and bridges must carry construction, highway, railroad, or other traffic and earth loads. Therefore, culvert and bridge design involves both hydraulic and structural design considerations. The hydraulic aspects and design loading criteria of culvert and bridge design are set forth in this chapter.

Culverts

Culverts are available in a variety of sizes, shapes, and materials. These factors, along with several others, affect their capacity and overall performance. Sizes and shapes may vary from small circular pipes to extremely large arch sections that are sometimes used in lieu of bridges.

The most commonly used culvert shape is circular, but arches, boxes, and elliptical shapes are used as well. Pipe arch, elliptical, and rectangular shapes are generally used in lieu of circular pipe where there is limited cover. Arch culverts have application in locations where less obstruction to a waterway is a desirable feature and where foundations are adequate for structural support. Box culverts can be designed to pass large flows and to fit nearly any site condition. A box or rectangular culvert lends itself more readily than other shapes to reduced allowable headwater situations since the height may be decreased and the span increased to satisfy the location requirements.

The material selected for a culvert is dependent upon various factors, such as durability, structural strength, roughness, bedding condition, abrasion and corrosion resistance, and water tightness. The more common culvert materials used are concrete and steel (smooth and corrugated).

Another factor that significantly affects the performance of a culvert is its inlet configuration. The culvert inlet may consist of a culvert barrel projecting from the roadway fill or mitered to the embankment slope. Other inlets have headwalls, wingwalls, and apron slabs or standard end-sections of concrete or metal.

A careful approach to culvert design is essential, both in new land development and retrofit situations, because culverts often significantly influence upstream and downstream flood risks, floodplain management, and public safety. Culverts can be designed to provide beneficial upstream conditions and to avoid negative visual impact.

Bridges

Bridge openings shall be designed to have as little effect on the flow characteristics as reasonable, consistent with good bridge design and economics. The method of planning for bridge openings must include water surface profiles and hydraulic gradient analyses of the channel for the major storm runoff. The design of a bridge opening generally determines the overall length of the bridge. The hydraulic engineering in the design of bridges has more impact on the bridge cost than does the structural design. **All structural calculations shall be in compliance with the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications (current edition) and stamped by a structural engineer licensed in the State of Arkansas. Trail bridges shall be designed according to the LRFD Guide Specifications for Design of Pedestrian Bridges (current edition) and stamped by a structural engineer licensed in the State of Arkansas. The construction specifications shall be the Arkansas Department of Transportation (ARDOT) specifications modified appropriately to reflect Tontitown as the owner rather than ARDOT.**

A majority of bridge failures are the result of scour. The added cost of reducing a bridge's vulnerability to damage from scour is small in comparison to the total cost of a bridge failure. Scour investigation is required by the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications.

Critical Design Criteria

The summary below outlines some of the most critical design criteria essential to design engineers for proper drainage design of streets, inlets, and storm sewers according to City of Tontitown requirements. The information below contains exact numerical criteria as well as general guidelines that must be adhered to during the design process. This section is meant to be a summary of critical design criteria for this section; however, the engineer is responsible for all information in this chapter. It should be noted that any design engineer who is not familiar with Tontitown's Drainage Criteria Manual and its accepted design techniques and methodology should review the entirety of this chapter. If additional specific information is required, it will be necessary to review the appropriate section as needed.

Required Design Information

Information necessary for the design of culverts is summarized below:

- Determine the design flood frequency and the corresponding design flow rate that the culvert must convey.
- Identify the impacts of various culvert sizes and dimensions on upstream and downstream flood risks, including the implications of embankment overtopping.
- Determine how the proposed culvert will fit into the relevant major drainageway master plan, and determine if there are multipurpose objectives that should be satisfied.
- Identify the necessary alignment, grade, and length of culvert.
- Determine the culvert size and type (material and shape).
- Determine the headwater depth, outlet velocity, and end treatment.
- Determine the inlet and outlet design and the need for special considerations.
- Determine the amount and type of cover.
- Identify public safety issues, including the key question of whether or not to include a safety/debris rack; handrails and/or guardrail.
- Identify the need for protective measures against abrasion and corrosion.
- Identify potential structural and geotechnical considerations that need to be addressed (these are beyond the scope of this chapter). The City may require a structural or geotechnical analysis.

Culvert Shapes and Sizes

- Refer to Section 3.3.2 of this chapter for more detailed information/explanation.
- Box
- Circular
- Elliptical
- Arch

Culvert Sizes

- Refer to Section 3.3.2 of this chapter for more detailed information/explanation.
- Minimum Pipe Size = 18 inches
- Minimum Box Size = “W” x 18 inches (width x height)

Culvert Material

- All pipe shall be installed per the manufacturer’s specifications.

- Reinforced Concrete Pipe (RCP)
  - RCP ASTM Class III shall be used in all areas unless otherwise required due to fill heights; use ARDOT standards to determine.
  - Shall be used in all right-of-way areas and under all traffic areas (including parking lots, driveways, etc.)
  - RCP shall conform to:
    - Circular Pipe – AASHTO M170/ASTM C76
    - Arch-shaped Pipe – AASHTO M206/ASTM C506
    - Elliptical Pipe – AASHTO M207/ASTM C507.
  - All storm sewer pipe having a diameter or hydraulically equivalent pipe size diameter of 36-inches or greater must be RCP.
  - Minimum one foot of cover.
- Reinforced Concrete Box (RCB)
  - Box culverts shall be structurally designed to accommodate the earth and live loads to be imposed upon the culvert.
  - Shall comply with ARDOT's Reinforced Concrete Box Culvert Standard Drawings.
  - When installed within public right-of-way, all culverts shall be capable of withstanding a minimum HL-93 loading.
- **Materials other than reinforced concrete shall be approved by the City.**
- Corrugated Metal Pipe (CMP) [including Smooth Lined (SLCMP)]
  - CMP can only be used in areas outside of street right-of-way but shall not be used under traffic areas.
  - CMP shall conform to shall conform to the following:
    - Galvanized Steel - AASHTO M218/ASTM A929; AASHTO M36/ASTM A760 and AASHTO Section 12/ASTM A796
    - Aluminized Steel Type 2 – AASHTO M274/ASTM A929; AASHTO M36/ASTM A760 and AASHTO Section 12/ASTM A796
    - Aluminum – AASHTO M197/ASTM B744; AASHTO M196/ASTM B745 and AASHTO Section 12/ASTM B790.

- CMP shall have a minimum cover of two feet.

▪ Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe (CPP) [including Smooth Lined (SLCPP)]

- CPP may not be used:
    - in City right-of-way and City maintained access easements.
    - under traffic areas owned or maintained by the City
    - in City drainage easements
    - to convey water through a development from properties upstream
    - on properties where drainage structures are maintained by a residential POA
- CPP can only be used in situations where it is not draining off-site properties, after approval by the City.
- CPP up to 30 inches can be used in areas outside of the right-of-way and outside of City drainage easements and under pavement that is not owned or maintained by the City.
- CPP shall conform to AASHTO M 294, Type S specification or ASTM F2648, ASTMD3350 and ASTMF2306.
- CPP shall have a minimum cover of two feet.

Culvert Physical and Operational Constraints

▪ Maximum Allowable Discharge Velocity:

Downstream Condition	Maximum Allowable Discharge Velocity (ft/sec)
Grass	5
Riprap	12
Concrete	18
Turf Reinforcement Mat	Manufacturer's Specs.

▪ Culvert flow velocity (minimum) = 3 ft/sec (when flowing full, per HEC-22)

▪ Three methods of energy dissipation/erosion control (Section 6.2 of this chapter) are Drop Structures, Turf Reinforcement Mats, and Riprap. Riprap must be approved by City prior to use.

- Design Storm Frequency and Freeboard Policy:

Description	Design Storm Frequency	Minimum Freeboard (ft)
Culverts (Local Street)	10	1
Culverts (Collector)	25	1
Culverts (Minor Arterial & Major Arterial)	50	1
Bridges (Local & Collector Roadways)	50**	1*
Bridges (Arterial & Critical Service Access Roadways/Drives)	100	1*

* – from “Low Chord” / “Low Steel”
** – must pass 100 year water surface elevation below “Low Chord”/”Low Steel”

Refer to Chapter 6 – *Storm Sewer System Design* Table ST-1 for allowable pavement encroachment and gutter depths.

1.0 CULVERTS INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW

The function of a culvert is to convey surface water under a roadway, railroad, trail, or other embankment. In addition to the hydraulic function, the culvert must carry construction, highway, railroad, or other traffic and earth loads. Therefore, culvert design involves both hydraulic and structural design considerations. The hydraulic aspects of culvert design are set forth in this chapter.

Culverts are available in a variety of sizes, shapes, and materials. These factors, along with several others, affect their capacity and overall performance. Sizes and shapes may vary from small circular corrugated metal pipes to large concrete box sections that are sometimes used in lieu of bridges.

A careful approach to culvert design is essential, both in new land development and retrofit situations, because culverts often significantly influence upstream and downstream flood risks, floodplain management and public safety. Culverts can be designed to provide beneficial upstream and downstream conditions and to simultaneously avoid creating a negative visual impact.

The information and references necessary to design culverts according to the procedure given in this chapter can be found in FHWA's Hydraulic Design Series, No. 5 (HDS-5), Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts.

1.1 Required Design Information

The hydraulic design of a culvert consists of an analysis of the required performance of the culvert to convey flow from one side of an embankment to the other. The designer must select a design flood frequency, estimate the design discharge for that frequency, and set an allowable headwater elevation based on the selected design flood and headwater considerations. These criteria are dictated by the City of Tontitown. The culvert size and type can be selected after the design discharge, controlling design headwater, slope, tailwater, and allowable outlet velocity have been determined.

The design of a culvert requires that the following be determined:

- Impacts of various culvert sizes and dimensions on upstream and downstream flood risks, including the implications of embankment overtopping.
- How will the proposed culvert/embankment fit into the relevant major drainageway master plan, and are there multipurpose objectives that should be satisfied?
- Alignment, grade, and length of culvert.
- Size, type, end treatment, headwater, and outlet velocity.

- Amount and type of cover.
- Public safety issues, including the key question of whether or not to include a safety/debris rack.
- Pipe material.
- Need for protective measures against abrasion and corrosion.
- Need for specially designed inlets or outlets.
- Structural and geotechnical considerations, which are beyond the scope of this chapter. The City may require a structural or geotechnical analysis.

1.1.1 Discharge

The discharge used in culvert design is usually estimated on the basis of a preselected storm recurrence interval, and the culvert is designed to operate within acceptable limits of risk at that flow rate. The design recurrence interval shall be based on the criteria set forth in Section 3.1.1 of this chapter. Peak discharge rates for the design storm can be calculated using design methods described in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*.

1.1.2 Headwater

Culverts generally constrict the natural stream flow, which causes a rise in the upstream water surface. The elevation of this water surface is termed *headwater elevation*, and the total flow depth in the stream measured from the culvert inlet invert is termed *headwater depth*.

In selecting the design headwater elevation, the designer shall consider the following:

- Roadway elevation above the structure and low point in roadway grade line.
- Elevation at which water will flow to the next cross drainage.
- Anticipated upstream and downstream flood risks, for a range of return frequency events.
- Potential damage to the culvert and the roadway caused by various headwater depths.
- Traffic interruption caused by overtopping a roadway with flood flows.
- Hazard to human life and safety caused by roadway or trail overtopping.
- Headwater/Culvert Depth (HW/D) ratio.
- Relationship to stability of embankment that culvert passes through.

The headwater elevation for the design discharge shall be consistent with the freeboard and overtopping criteria in Section 3.1.1 (Table CH-2) of this chapter and Chapter 6 – *Storm Sewer System Design*. The designer shall verify that the watershed divides are higher than the design headwater elevations. In flat terrain, drainage divides are often undefined or nonexistent, and culverts shall be located and designed for the least disruption of the existing flow distribution.

1.1.3 Tailwater

Tailwater is the flow depth in the downstream channel measured from the invert at the culvert outlet. It can be an important factor in culvert hydraulic design because a submerged outlet may cause the culvert to flow full rather than partially full, which affects the capacity of the culvert.

A field inspection of the downstream channel should be made to determine whether there are obstructions that will influence the tailwater depth. Tailwater depth may be controlled by the stage in a contributing stream, headwater from structures downstream of the culvert, reservoir water surface elevations, or other downstream features.

1.1.4 Outlet Velocity

The outlet velocity of a culvert is the velocity measured at the downstream end of the culvert. The outlet velocity is often higher than the maximum natural stream velocity and can cause streambed scour and bank erosion downstream from the culvert outlet. Permissible velocities at the outlet will depend upon streambed characteristics and the type of energy dissipation (outlet protection) that is provided.

Variations in shape and size of a culvert seldom have a significant effect on the outlet velocity. Slope and roughness of the culvert barrel are the principal factors affecting the outlet velocity.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

2.0 CULVERT HYDRAULICS

This section describes key hydraulic principles that are pertinent to the design of culverts. Application of these principles is presented in Section 3.0 of this chapter.

2.1 Key Hydraulic Principles

For purposes of the following review, it is assumed that the reader has a basic working knowledge of hydraulics and is familiar with the Manning's, continuity and energy equations, which are presented in Chapter 7 – *Open Channel Flow*:

$$Q = \frac{1.49}{n} AR^{2/3} S^{1/2}$$ **(Equation CH-1)**

where:

Q = Flow rate or discharge (ft^3/sec)

n = Manning's Roughness Coefficient

A = Flow Area (ft^2)

R = Hydraulic Radius (ft)

S = Channel Slope (ft/ft)

$$Q = v_1 A_1 = v_2 A_2$$ **(Equation CH-2)**

where:

Q = Flow rate or discharge (ft^3/sec)

v = Velocity (ft/sec)

A = Flow Area (ft^2)

$$\frac{v^2}{2g} + \frac{p}{\gamma} + z + losses = constant$$ **(Equation CH-3)**

where:

v = Velocity (ft/sec)

g = Gravity (32.2 ft/sec^2)

p = Pressure (lb/ft^2)

γ = Specific weight of water (62.4 lb/ft^3)

z = Height above datum (ft)

2.1.1 Energy and Hydraulic Grade Lines

Figures CH-1 and CH-2 illustrate the energy grade line (EGL) and hydraulic grade line (HGL) and related terms.

Energy Grade Line

The energy grade line, also known as the line of total head, is the sum of velocity head $\frac{v^2}{2g}$, the depth of flow or pressure head $\frac{p}{\gamma}$, and the elevation above an arbitrary datum represented by the distance Z (see Figure CH-1). The energy grade line slopes downward in the direction of flow by an amount equal to the energy gradient H_L/L, where H_L equals the total energy loss over the distance L.

Hydraulic Grade Line

The hydraulic grade line is the sum of the elevation Z and the depth of flow or pressure head $\frac{p}{\gamma}$. For open channel flow, the term $\frac{p}{\gamma}$ is equivalent to the depth of flow, and the hydraulic grade line is the same as the water surface (see Figure CH-1). For pressure flow in closed conduits (e.g., culverts), $\frac{p}{\gamma}$ is the pressure head, and the hydraulic grade line falls above the top of the conduit as long as the pressure relative to atmospheric pressure is positive.

Figure CH-1 – Definition of Terms for Closed Conduit Flow (UDFCD USDCM, 2001)

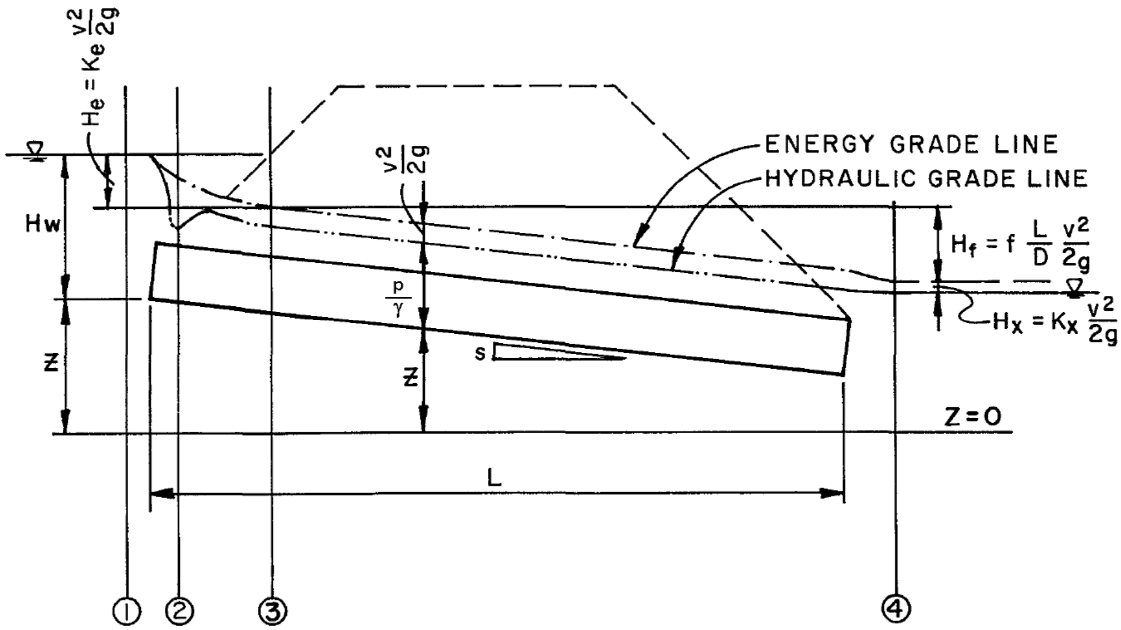
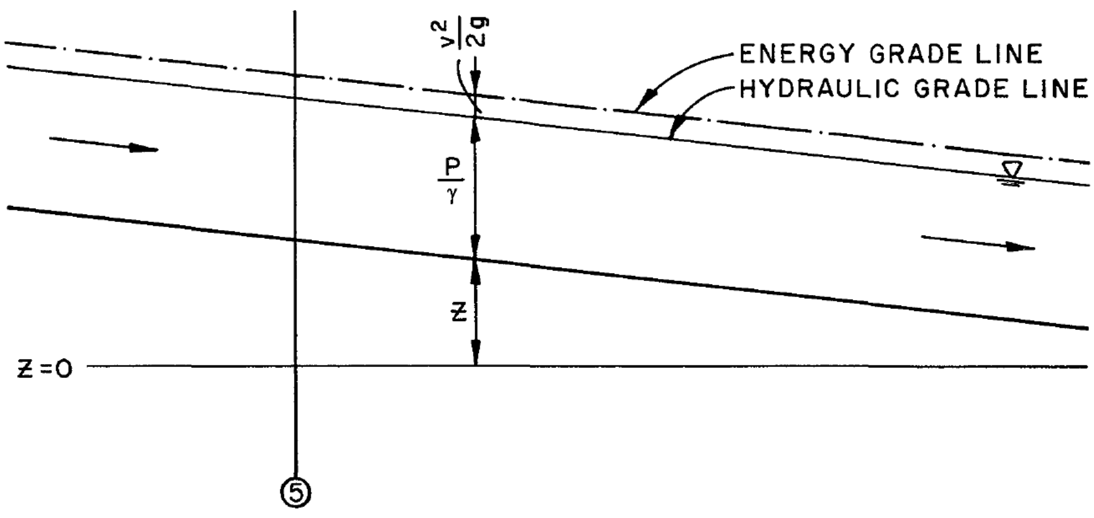


Figure CH-2 – Definition of Terms for Open Channel Flow (UDFCD USDCM, 2001)



Approaching the entrance to a culvert (refer to Point 1 of Figure CH-1) the flow is essentially uniform and the hydraulic grade line and energy grade lines are almost the same. As water enters the culvert at the inlet, the flow is first contracted and then expanded by the inlet geometry, which causes a loss of energy at Point 2. As normal turbulent velocity distribution is reestablished downstream of the entrance at Point 3, a loss of energy is incurred through friction or from resistance. In short culverts, the entrance losses are likely to be high relative to the friction loss. At the exit, Point 4, an additional loss is incurred through turbulence as the flow expands and is retarded by the water in the downstream channel. At Point 5 of Figure CH-2 open channel flow is established and the hydraulic grade line is the same as the water surface.

2.1.2 Culvert Flow Conditions

There are two major types of flow conditions in culverts: (1) inlet control and (2) outlet control. For each type of control, a different combination of factors is used to determine the hydraulic capacity of a culvert. The determination of actual flow conditions can be difficult; therefore, the designer must check for both types of control and design for the most adverse condition. Inlet and outlet control are described in the following sections.

2.1.2.1 Inlet Control

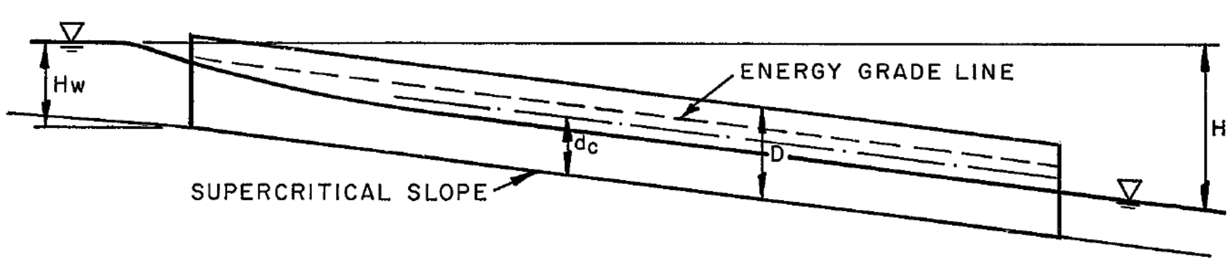
A culvert operates with inlet control when the flow capacity is controlled at the entrance by these factors:

- Depth of headwater
- Culvert cross-sectional area at inlet
- Inlet edge configuration
- Barrel shape

When a culvert operates under inlet control, headwater depth and the inlet edge configuration determine the culvert capacity, with the culvert barrel usually flowing only partially full.

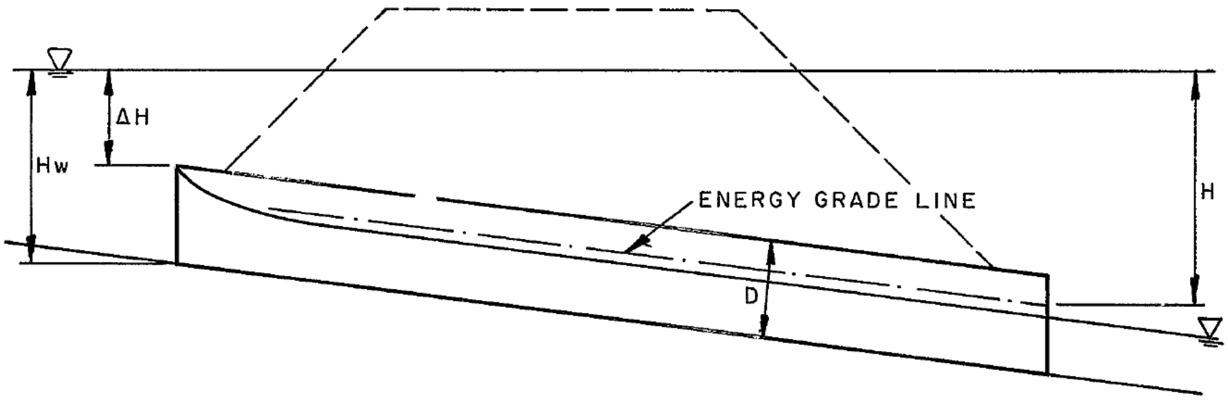
Inlet control for culverts may occur in two ways. The least common occurs when the headwater depth is not sufficient to submerge the top of the culvert and, concurrently, the culvert invert slope is supercritical as shown in Figure CH-3.

Figure CH-3 – Inlet Control—Unsubmerged Inlet (UDFCD USDCM, 2001)



The most common occurrence of inlet control is when the headwater submerges the top of the culvert (Figure CH-4), and the pipe does not flow full. A culvert flowing under inlet control is defined as a hydraulically short culvert.

Figure CH-4 – Inlet Control—Submerged Inlet
(UDFCD USDCM, 2001)



For a culvert operating with inlet control, the roughness, slope, and length of the culvert barrel and outlet conditions (including tailwater) are not factors in determining culvert hydraulic performance.

2.1.2.2 Outlet Control

If the headwater is high enough and the culvert is sufficiently long and flat, the control will shift to the outlet. In outlet control, the discharge is a function of the inlet losses, the headwater depth, the culvert roughness, the culvert length, the barrel diameter, the culvert slope, and sometimes the tailwater elevation.

In outlet control, culvert hydraulic performance is determined by these factors:

- Depth of headwater
- Culvert cross-sectional area
- Inlet edge configuration
- Culvert shape
- Barrel slope
- Barrel length
- Barrel roughness
- Depth of tailwater

Outlet control will exist under two conditions: 1) the most common condition occurs when the culvert is flowing full (Figure CH-6), and 2) the least common condition occurs where the headwater is insufficient to submerge the top of the culvert and, concurrently, the culvert slope is subcritical (Figure CH-5). A culvert flowing under outlet control is defined as a hydraulically long culvert.

Figure CH-5 – Outlet Control—Partially Full Conduit
(UDFCD USDCM, 2001)

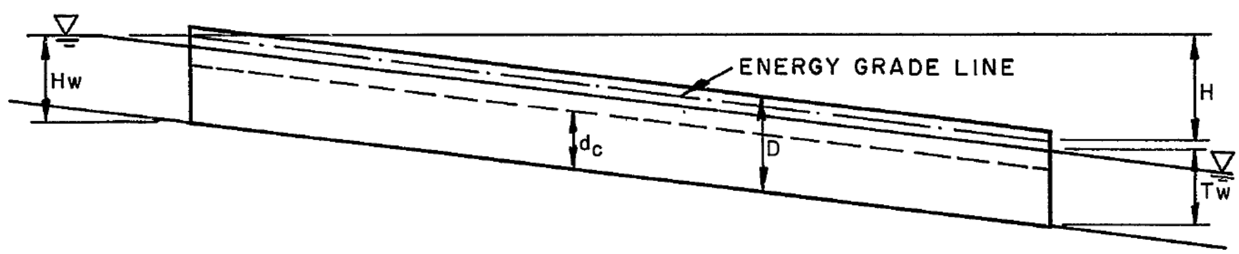
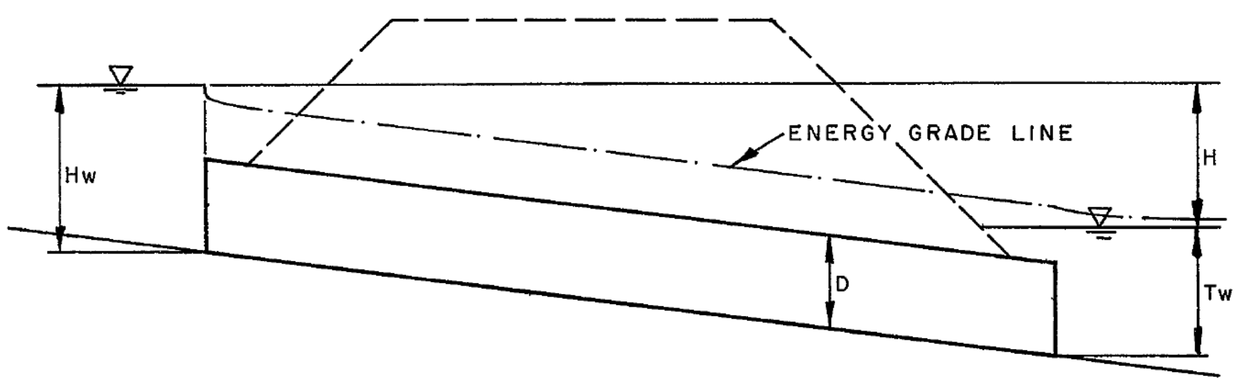


Figure CH-6 – Outlet Control—Full Conduit

(UDFCD USDCM, 2001)



Culverts operating under outlet control may flow full or partly full depending on various combinations of the factors described above. In outlet control, factors that may affect performance appreciably for a given culvert size and headwater are barrel length and roughness, and tailwater depth.

2.2 Energy Losses

In short conduits, such as culverts, the losses caused by the entrance can be as important as the friction losses through the conduit. The losses that must be evaluated to determine the carrying capacity of the culverts consist of inlet (or entrance) losses, friction losses along the length of the culvert and outlet (or exit) losses. These losses are described in Sections 2.2.1 through 2.2.3 of this chapter, respectively.

2.2.1 Inlet Losses

For inlet losses, the governing equations are:

$$Q = CA\sqrt{2gH} \qquad \textbf{(Equation CH-4)}$$

$$H_e = K_e \frac{v^2}{2g} \qquad \textbf{(Equation CH-5)}$$

where:

Q = Flow rate or discharge (ft^3/sec)

C = Contraction coefficient (dimensionless) (see Table CH-1 below)

A = Cross-sectional area (ft^2)

g = Acceleration due to gravity, 32.2 (ft/sec^2)

H = Total head (ft)

H_e = Head loss at entrance (ft)

K_e = Entrance loss coefficient (dimensionless)

v = Average velocity (ft/sec)

Table CH-1 – Contraction Coefficient

Transition Description	Contraction Coefficient, C
No transition loss computed	---
Gradual transitions	0.3
Intermediate transitions	0.5
Abrupt transitions	0.8

2.2.2 Outlet Losses

For outlet losses, the governing equations are related to the difference in velocity head between the pipe flow and that in the downstream channel at the end of the pipe.

2.2.3 Friction Losses

Friction head loss for turbulent flow in pipes flowing full can be determined from the Darcy-Weisbach equation.

$$H_f = f\left(\frac{L}{D}\right)\left(\frac{v^2}{2g}\right) \qquad \textbf{(Equation CH-6)}$$

where:

H_f = Frictional head loss (ft)

f = Friction factor (dimensionless)

L = Length of culvert (ft)

D = Hydraulic diameter of culvert (ft) (internal diameter for circular pipe)

v = Average velocity (ft/sec)

g = Acceleration due to gravity, 32.2 (ft/sec^2)

The friction factor has been determined empirically and is dependent on relative roughness, velocity, and barrel diameter. Moody diagrams can be used to determine the friction factor. The friction losses for culverts are often expressed in terms of Manning's n (see Table ST-9 in Chapter 6 – *Storm Sewer System Design*), which is independent of the size of pipe and depth of flow. Another common formula for pipe flow is the Hazen-Williams formula. Standard hydraulic texts should be consulted for the limitations of these formulas.

3.0 CULVERT SIZING AND DESIGN

HDS-5 (FHWA 2005) provides valuable guidance for the design and selection of drainage culverts. This particular circular explains inlet and outlet control and the procedure for designing culverts. Culvert design is iterative and consists of the following steps:

1. Determine the flow rate of water the culvert must carry.

2. Select a culvert shape, type, and size with a particular inlet end treatment.

3. Determine a headwater depth from the relevant charts for both inlet and outlet control for the design discharge, the grade and length of culvert, and the depth of water at the outlet (tailwater).

4. Compare the largest depth of headwater (as determined from either inlet or outlet control) to the design criteria. If the design criteria are not met, continue trying other culvert configurations until one or more configurations are found to satisfy the design parameters.

5. Estimate the culvert outlet velocity and determine if there is a need for any special features such as energy dissipators or armoring of the downstream channel.

These steps are described in Sections 3.1 through 3.5 of this chapter.

3.1 Determination of Design Flow Rate

The first step to consider in the hydraulic design of a culvert is the determination of the flow rate that the culvert must convey. There is no single method for determining peak discharge that is applicable to all watersheds. The method chosen should be a function of drainage area size, availability of data, and the degree of accuracy desired.

The following methods described in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*, shall be used to generate peak discharge:

Rational Method – used for drainage areas less than 30 acres.

Soil Conservation Method – used for drainage areas between 30 and 2000 acres.

3.1.1 Design Frequency and Freeboard Criteria

The storm frequencies and freeboard used as the basis for culvert design are summarized in Table CH-2:

Table CH-2 – Design Storm Frequencies and Minimum Freeboard

Description	Design Storm Frequency	Minimum Freeboard (ft)
Trails	2	1
Local Street	10	1
Collector	25	1
Minor Arterial & Major Arterial	50	1
Bridges (Local & Collector Roadways)	50	1*
Bridges (Arterial & Critical Service Access Roadways/Drives)	100	1*

* – from “Low Chord” / “Low Steel”

3.2 Computer Applications

Although nomographs can still be used for design, the majority of engineers currently design culverts using computer applications. Among these applications are the FHWA’s HY8 Culvert Hydraulic Analysis (Ginsberg 1987) and numerous proprietary applications such as CulvertMaster. FHWA’s HY8 Culvert Hydraulic Analysis can be downloaded from the FHWA’s webpage (fhwa.dot.gov).

3.3 Design Considerations

The actual design of a culvert installation is more complex than the simple process of sizing culverts because of problems arising from topography and other considerations. Since the problems encountered are too varied and too numerous to be generalized, the information in the design procedure presented below is only a guide to design. Several combinations of entrance types, invert elevations, and pipe diameters should be evaluated to determine the most economic design that will meet the conditions imposed by topography and engineering. Descriptions of different variables that must be evaluated are presented in Sections 3.3.1 through 3.3.2 of this chapter.

3.3.1 Invert Elevations

After determining the allowable headwater elevation, tailwater elevation, and approximate culvert length, the culvert invert elevations must be assumed. To reduce the chance of failure due to scour, invert elevations corresponding to the natural grade shall be used as a first trial.

For natural channels, the flow conditions in the channel upstream from the culvert should be investigated to determine if scour will occur. For more information on scour, see Section 6.1 of this chapter.

3.3.2 Culvert Shape, Size and Material

After the invert elevations have been assumed, the shape of the culvert must be selected. The permissible shapes of culverts under all roadways and embankments are box, circular, elliptical, and arch.

Next, the diameter of pipe that will meet the headwater requirements should be determined. Because small diameter pipes are often plugged by sediment and debris, the minimum size of pipe for all culverts is 18 inches or the equivalent sized elliptical pipe or arch pipe. The minimum size box culvert shall have a minimum height of 18 inches and a width ("W") designed to meet the loading (vehicular/overburden) and hydraulic requirements for the desired application.

Reinforced concrete shall be used for all culverts under roadways, running parallel to the roadway in the street right-of-way, and under all traffic and parking areas that are owned or maintained by the City. Materials other than reinforced concrete must have City approval prior to use.

3.4 Culvert Discharge Velocity

The outlet velocity must be checked to determine if significant scour will occur downstream during the major storm. If scour is indicated (which is normally the case), refer to Section 6.0 of this chapter for guidance on outlet protection. The maximum allowable discharge velocities from culverts for particular downstream conditions are listed in Table CH-3:

Table CH-3 – Maximum Allowable Discharge Velocities

Downstream Condition	Maximum Allowable Discharge Velocity (ft/sec)
Grass	5
Riprap	12
Concrete	18
Turf Reinforcement Mat	Manufacturer's Specs.

3.5 Minimum Slope

To minimize sediment deposition in the culvert, the culvert slope must be equal to or greater than the slope required to maintain a minimum velocity of 3 ft/sec flowing full as recommended in FHWA HEC-22. The slope should be checked for each design, and if the proper minimum velocity is not obtained, the pipe diameter may be decreased, the slope steepened, a smoother pipe used, or a combination of these measures implemented.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

4.0 CULVERT INLETS

The capacity of culverts to convey water is limited by the capacity of the inlet. This is frequently overlooked by designers. Culverts and open channels are often carefully designed with full consideration given to slope, cross section, and hydraulic roughness, but without regard to the inlet limitations. Culvert designs based on uniform flow equations rarely can convey their design capacity due to limitations imposed by the inlet.

The design of a culvert, including the inlet and the outlet, requires a balance between hydraulic efficiency, purpose, and topography at the proposed culvert site. Where there is sufficient allowable headwater depth, the choice of inlets may not be critical, but where headwater depth is limited, erosion is a problem, or sedimentation is likely, a more efficient inlet may be required to obtain the necessary discharge capacity for the culvert.

Although the primary purpose of a culvert is to convey flows, a culvert may also be used to restrict flow, such as in cases where a controlled amount of water is discharged while the area upstream from the culvert is used for detention storage to reduce the peak discharge rate. In this case, an inlet with limited capacity may be the appropriate choice.

The inlet types described in this chapter may be selected to fulfill either of the above requirements depending on the topography or conditions imposed by the designer. The entrance coefficient, K_e, as defined for Equation CH-5, is a measure of the hydraulic efficiency at the inlet, with lower valves indicating greater efficiency. Inlet coefficients are given in Table CH-4.

Table CH-4 – Entrance Loss Coefficients for Outlet Control, Full or Partly Full Flow

(FHWA HDS 5, 2012)

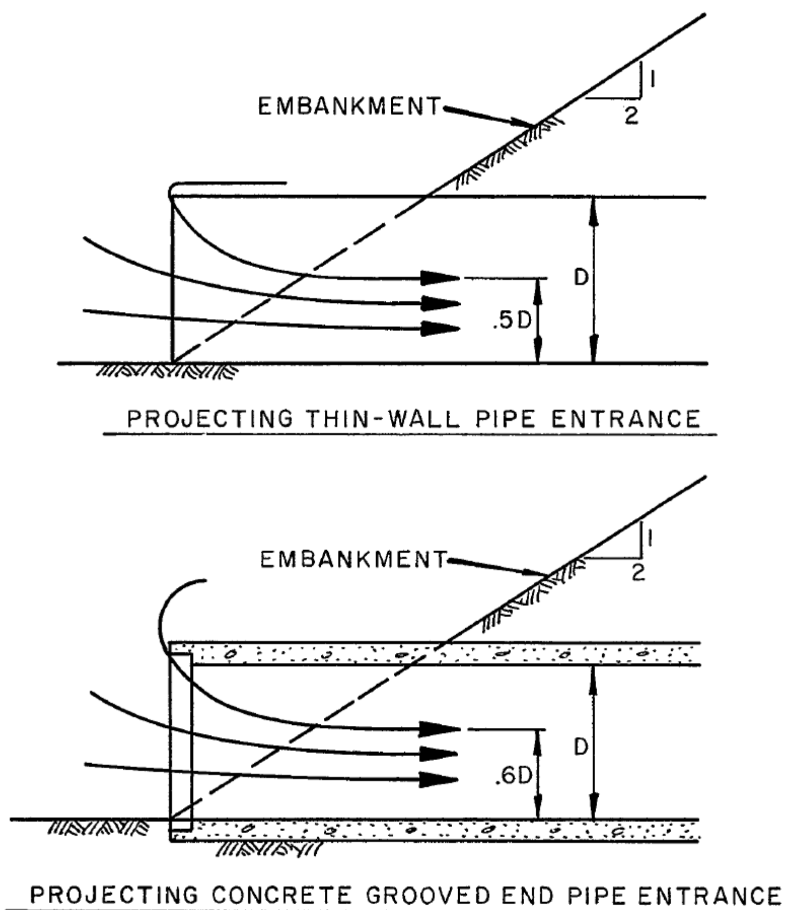
Circular Culvert	**Coefficient, K_e**
Square End Projection	0.5
Square End with Headwall	0.5
Grooved End Projection	0.2
Grooved End with Headwall	0.2
1 : 1 Beveled Edge	0.2
1.5 : 1 Beveled Edge	0.2
Sharp Edge Projection (CMP)	0.9
CMP with Flared End Section	0.5

Box Culvert	**Coefficient, K_e**
Square Edge w/ 90-15 Degree Headwall	0.5
1.5 : 1 Bevel w/ 90 Degree Headwall	0.2
1 : 1 Bevel w/ Headwall	0.2
Square Edge w/ 30-78 Degree Flared Wingwall	0.4
Square Edge w/ 90-15 Degree Flared Wingwall	0.5
Square Edge w/ 0 Degree Flared Wingwall	0.7
1.5 : 1 Bevel w/ 18-34 Degree Flared Wingwall	0.2
1.5 : 1 Bevel w/ 45 Degree Flared Wingwall	0.2

4.1 Projecting Inlets

Projecting inlets vary greatly in hydraulic efficiency and adaptability to requirements with the type of pipe material used. Figure CH-7 illustrates this type of inlet.

Figure CH-7 – Common Projecting Culvert Inlets
(USFCD USDCM, 2001)



Corrugated metal pipe projecting inlets have limitations which include low hydraulic efficiency, damage resulting from maintenance of the channel and the area adjacent to the inlet, and restrictions imposed on maintenance crews to work around the inlet. In contrast, concrete grooved or bell-end pipe has hydraulic efficiency that is superior to corrugated metal pipe and, therefore, the primary restriction placed on the use of concrete pipe for projecting inlets is the requirement for maintenance of the channel and the embankment surrounding the inlet. Where equipment will be used to maintain the embankment around the inlet, it is not recommended that a projecting inlet of any type be used.

4.1.1 Corrugated Metal Pipe

A projecting entrance of corrugated metal pipe is equivalent to a sharp-edged entrance with a thin wall and has an entrance coefficient of 0.9 (see Table CH-4).

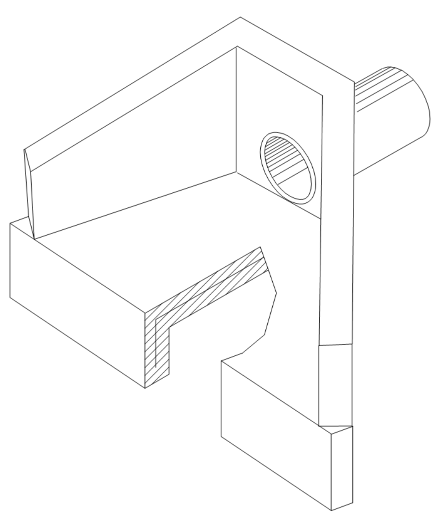
4.1.2 Concrete Pipe

Bell-and-spigot concrete pipe or tongue-and-groove concrete pipe with the bell-end or grooved-end used as the inlet section, are relatively efficient hydraulically with an entrance coefficient of 0.2. For concrete pipe that has been cut, the entrance is square edged, so the entrance coefficient is 0.5 (see Table CH-4).

4.2 Inlets with Headwalls

Headwalls may be used for a variety of reasons, including increasing the efficiency of the inlet, providing embankment stability, and providing embankment protection against erosion. The relative efficiency of the inlet varies with the pipe material used. The range of inlet coefficients for different headwall configurations is summarized in Table CH-4. Different configurations of pipe with headwalls are described in Sections 4.2.1 through 4.2.4 of this chapter. Figure CH-8 illustrates a headwall with wingwalls.

Figure CH-8 – Inlet with Headwall and Wingwalls



4.2.1 Corrugated Metal Pipe

Corrugated metal pipe in a headwall is characterized as a square-edged entrance with an entrance coefficient of 0.5. The entrance losses may be reduced by rounding the entrance. The entrance coefficient may be reduced to 0.15 for a rounded edge with a radius equal to 0.15 times the culvert diameter, and to 0.10 for rounded edge with a radius equal to 0.25 times the diameter of the culvert.

4.2.2 Concrete Pipe

For tongue-and-groove or bell-end concrete pipe, little increase in hydraulic efficiency is realized by adding a headwall. The primary reason for using headwalls is for embankment protection and for ease of maintenance. The entrance coefficient is equal to about 0.2 for a tongue-and-grooved and bell-end pipe, and equal to 0.5 for cut concrete pipe.

4.2.3 Wingwalls

Wingwalls are used where the side slopes of the channel adjacent to the entrance are unstable and where the culvert is skewed to the normal channel flow. Little increase in hydraulic efficiency is realized with the use of wingwalls, regardless of the pipe material used and, therefore, the use should be justified for reasons other than an increase in hydraulic efficiency. Figure CH-9 illustrates several cases where wingwalls are used. For parallel wingwalls, the minimum distance between wingwalls shall be at least 1.25 times the diameter of the culvert pipe.

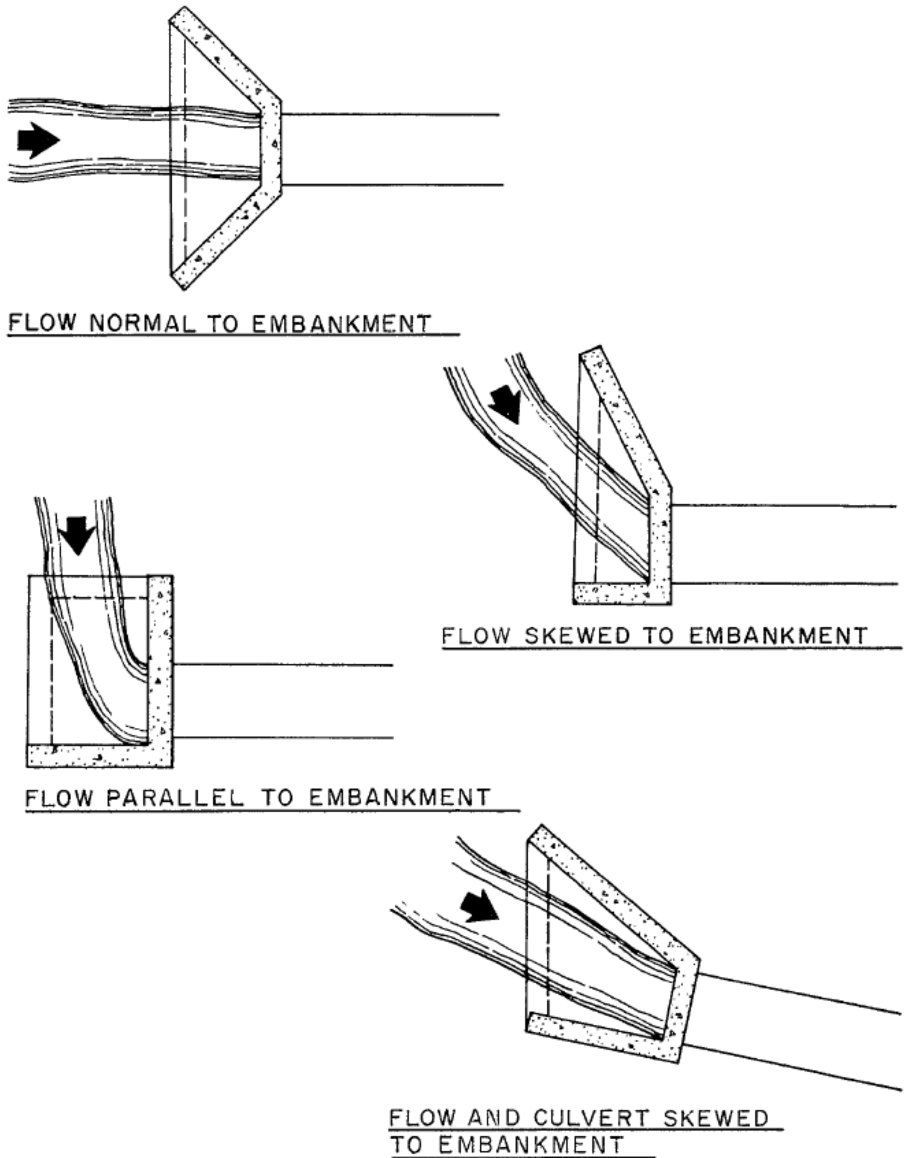
4.2.4 Aprons

If high headwater depths will exist, or if the approach velocity of the channel will cause scour, a short channel apron shall be provided at the toe of the headwall. The apron shall extend at least one pipe diameter upstream from the entrance, and the top of the apron shall not protrude above the normal streambed elevation.

Culverts with wingwalls shall be designed with a concrete apron extending between the walls. Aprons must be reinforced to control cracking. As illustrated in Figure CH-9, the actual configuration of the wingwalls varies according to the direction of flow and will also vary according to the topographical constraints of the site.

For conditions where scour may be a problem because of high approach velocities and/or the soil conditions, a toe wall is required for apron construction.

Figure CH-9 – Typical Headwall-Wingwall Configurations (UDFCD USDCM, 2001)



4.3 Special Inlets

In addition to the common inlets described above, a large variety of other special inlet types exist. Among these are special end-sections, which serve as both outlets and inlets and are available for both corrugated metal pipe and concrete pipe. Because of the difference in requirements due to pipe materials, the special end-sections are addressed according to pipe material. Mitered inlets are discussed in Section 4.3.3 of this chapter.

4.3.1 Corrugated Metal Pipe

Special flared end-sections for corrugated metal pipe add little to the overall cost of the culvert and have the following advantages:

1. Require less maintenance around the inlet.
2. Sustain less damage from maintenance work and from accidents compared to a projecting entrance.
3. Provide increased hydraulic efficiency.

4.3.2 Concrete Pipe

As in the case of corrugated metal pipe, special concrete flared end-sections, similar to flared end-sections for corrugated metal pipe, may increase the embankment stability and retard erosion at the inlet. They should be used where maintenance equipment must be used near the inlet or where, for aesthetic reasons, a projecting entrance is considered too unsightly.

The hydraulic efficiency of a concrete flared end section is dependent on the geometry of the end-section to be used. Where the full contraction to the culvert diameter takes place at the first pipe section, the entrance coefficient, K_e, is equal to 0.5, and where the full contraction to the culvert diameter takes place in the throat of the end-section, the entrance coefficient, K_e, is equal to 0.2.

4.3.3 Mitered Inlets

Mitered inlets are predominantly used with corrugated metal pipe and their hydraulic efficiency is dependent on the construction procedure used. If the embankment is not paved, the entrance, in practice, usually does not conform to the side slopes, resulting in a projecting entrance with K_e = 0.9. If the embankment is paved, a sloping headwall is obtained with K_e = 0.7 and, by beveling the edges, K_e = 0.2.

Uplift is an important factor for mitered inlets. It is not good practice to use unpaved embankment slopes where a mitered entrance may be submerged above the top of the pipe to an elevation one-half the diameter of the culvert.

4.3.4 Long Conduit Inlets

Inlets are important in the design of culverts for road crossings and other short sections of conduit; however, inlets are even more significant in the economical design of long culverts and pipes. Unused capacity in a long conduit will result in wasted investment. Long conduits are costly and require detailed engineering, planning, and design work. The inlets to such conduits are extremely important to the functioning of the conduit and must receive special attention.

Most long conduits require special inlet considerations to meet the particular hydraulic characteristics of the conduit. Generally, on larger conduits, hydraulic model testing will result in better and less costly inlet construction.

4.3.5 Improved Inlets

Inlet edge configuration is one of the prime factors influencing the performance of a culvert operating under inlet control. Inlet edges can cause a severe contraction of the flow, as in the case of a thin edge, projecting inlet. In a flow contraction, the effective cross-sectional area of the barrel may be reduced to approximately one-half of the actual available barrel area. As the inlet configuration is improved, the flow contraction is reduced, thus improving the performance of the culvert.

A tapered inlet is a flared culvert inlet with an enlarged face section and a hydraulically efficient throat section. Tapered inlets improve culvert performance by providing a more efficient control section (or culvert throat). However, tapered inlets are not recommended for use on culverts flowing under outlet control because a simple beveled edge inlet is of equal benefit. The two most common improved inlets are the side-tapered inlet and the slope-tapered inlet. HDS-5 (FHWA 2012) provides guidance on the design of improved inlets.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

5.0 INLET PROTECTION

Inlets on culverts, especially on culverts to be installed in live streams, should be evaluated relative to debris control and buoyancy. The following section discusses this further.

5.1 Debris Control

Accumulation of debris at a culvert inlet can result in the culvert not performing as designed. This can result in damage caused by overtopping of the roadway and/or inundation of the upstream property. Three main options exist to address the debris problem:

1. Retain the debris upstream of the culvert.
2. Attempt to pass the debris through the culvert.
3. Install a bridge.

If the debris is to be retained by an upstream structure or at the culvert inlet, frequent maintenance may be required. The design of a debris control structure shall include a thorough study of the debris problem. Factors to be considered in a debris study include the following:

- Type of debris
- Quantity of debris
- Expected changes in type and quantity of debris due to future land use
- Stream flow velocity in the vicinity of culvert entrance
- Maintenance access requirements
- Availability of storage
- Maintenance plan for debris removal
- Assessment of damage due to debris clogging, if protection is not provided

FHWA's Hydraulic Engineering Circular, No. 9 (HEC-9 2005), Debris Control Structures, shall be referenced when designing debris control structures.

5.2 Buoyancy

When a culvert is functioning with inlet control, an air pocket forms, just inside the inlet, that creates a buoyant effect when the inlet is submerged. The buoyancy forces increase with an increase in headwater depth under inlet control conditions. These forces, along with vortexes and eddy currents, can cause scour, undermine culvert inlets, and erode embankment slopes, thereby making the inlet vulnerable to failure, especially with deep headwater.

The large unequal pressures resulting from inlet constriction, which are accentuated when the capacity of the culvert is impaired by debris or damage, are in effect buoyant forces that can cause entrance failures, particularly on corrugated metal pipe with mitered, skewed, or projecting ends. The failure potential will increase with steepness of the culvert slope, depth of the potential headwater, flatness of the fill slope over the upstream end of the culvert, and the depth of the fill over the pipe.

Anchorage at the culvert entrance helps to protect against these failures by increasing the dead load on the end of the culvert, protecting against bending damage, and by protecting the fill slope from the scouring action of the flow. When inlet control conditions are present a standard concrete headwall or endwall will be provided unless otherwise approved by the City to counteract the hydrostatic uplift and to prevent failure due to buoyancy.

Because of a combination of high head on the outside of the inlet and the large region of low pressure on the inside of the inlet due to separation, a large bending moment is exerted on the end of the culvert, which may result in failure. This problem has been noted in the case of culverts under high fills, on steep slopes, and with projecting inlets. In cases where upstream detention storage requires headwater depth in excess of 20 feet, reducing the culvert size is required to limit the discharge rate rather than using an inefficient projecting inlet.

6.0 OUTLET PROTECTION

Scour at culvert outlets is a common occurrence and must be accounted for. The natural channel flow is usually confined to a lesser width and greater depth as it passes through a culvert barrel. Increased flow velocity typically results with potentially erosive capabilities as it exits the barrel. Turbulence and erosive eddies form as the flow expands to conform to the natural channel. However, the velocity and depth of flow at the culvert outlet and the velocity distribution upon reentering the natural channel are not the only factors that need consideration. Other factors to consider with respect to scour potential include the characteristics of the channel bed and bank material, velocity and depth of flow in the channel at the culvert outlet, and the amount of sediment and other debris conveyed in the flow. Due to the variation in expected flows and the difficulty in evaluating the variables described above, scour prediction is an inexact science.

6.1 Scour

Protection against scour at culvert outlets varies from limited riprap placement to complex and expensive energy dissipation devices. At some locations, use of a rougher culvert material may alleviate the need for a special outlet protection device. Pre-formed scour holes (approximating the configuration of naturally formed holes) dissipate energy while providing a protective lining to the streambed. Methods for predicting scour hole dimensions are provided in FHWA's Hydraulic Engineering Circular, No. 14 (HEC-14 , 2006), Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipators for Culverts and Channels.

6.2 Energy Dissipation/Erosion Control

Riprap-armored channel expansions and concrete aprons protect the channel and redistribute or spread the flow. Barrel outlet expansions operate in a similar manner. Headwalls and cutoff walls protect the integrity of the fill. When outlet velocities are high enough to create excessive downstream problems, consideration should be given to more complex energy dissipation devices. Design information for the general types of energy dissipators can be found in HEC-14 (FHWA 2006).

Four examples of energy dissipators and erosion control are given below: drop structures, turf reinforcement mats, hydraulic jump energy dissipators, and riprap (requires City approval).

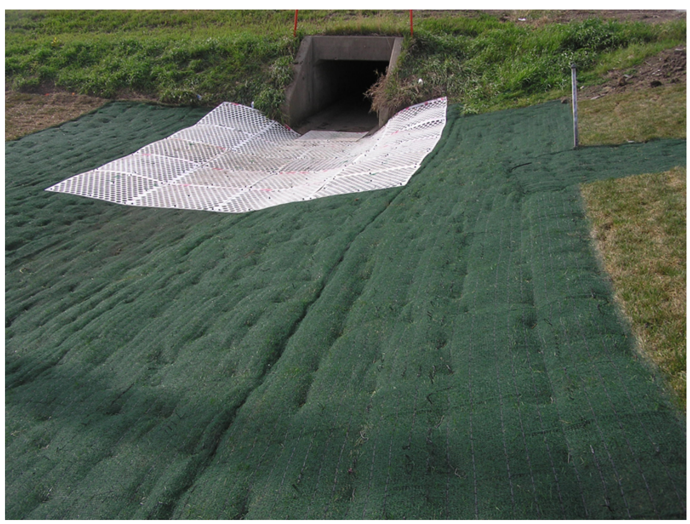
6.2.1 Drop Structures

Drop structures are commonly used for flow control and energy dissipation. Changing the channel slope from steep to mild, by placing drop structures at intervals along the channel reach, changes a continuous steep slope into a series of gentle slopes and vertical drops. Instead of slowing down and transferring high velocities that produce erosion into low non-erosive velocities, drop structures control the slope of the channel in such a way to prevent high, erosive velocities from developing. The kinetic energy or velocity gained by the water as it drops over the crest of each structure is dissipated by a specially designed apron or stilling basin. HEC-14 (FHWA 2006) provides guidance for the design and selection of drop structures.

6.2.2 Turf Reinforcement Mat

Turf reinforcement mat (TRM) is a long-term, non-biodegradable biotechnical alternative to hard armor such as riprap. It is mechanically-anchored polymer matting designed with voids throughout the structure which enables vegetative growth to cover the material while still providing mechanical protection in areas where design discharges exert velocities and shear stresses that exceed the limits of natural vegetation. TRMs are used to extend the performance limits of natural vegetation by retaining soil particles and vegetative seeds, promoting conditions for accelerated vegetative growth, and reinforcing the vegetative cover. The EPA has documented TRMs as useful BMPs for stormwater runoff. The EPA's Storm Water Technology Fact Sheet for TRMs can be found at epa.gov/ and provides a useful general discussion on the benefits, specific locations for use, and other general information for TRMs.

Figure CH-10 – Typical Turf Reinforcement Mat Application (Scourstop.com)

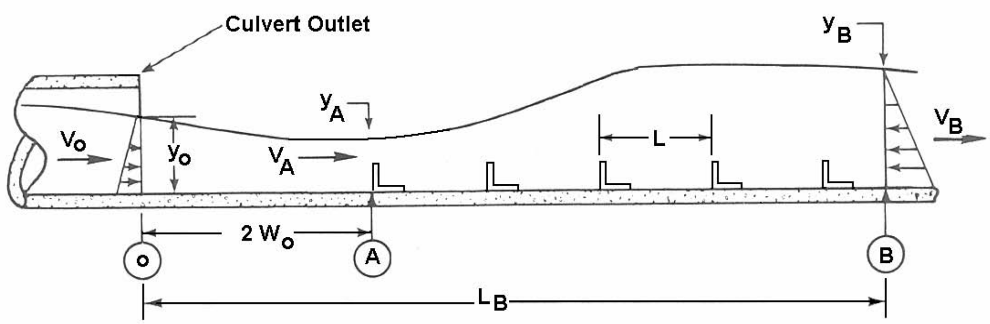


Many different manufacturers produce TRMs, each with its own patented methods and material combinations. Some of the manufacturers/distributors of TRMs include *ScourStop*, *North American Green*, *Propex*, *ShoreMax*, among others. TRMs shall be selected, designed, and installed according to the manufacturer's recommendation. When attempting to implement such reinforcement into the design of energy dissipation/erosion control, it will be the responsibility of the design engineer to provide the City with appropriate material specifications and design information for approval by the City. Enough information needs to be provided to ensure the product selected and specified in a design is adequately suited for the situation in the field.

6.2.3 Hydraulic Jump Energy Dissipators

Hydraulic Jump Energy Dissipators create a hydraulic jump by placing staggered rows of blocks at the culvert outlet. The block height (h) shall be 0.31 to 0.91 of the approach flow's average depth y_A and the ratio of L/h shall be equal to 6 or 12. The design of these dissipators is based on the momentum equation as shown in Equation CH-7. This equation is applicable for slopes up to 10%; see HEC-14 (FHWA 2006) for design methods on slopes greater than 10%.

Figure CH-11 – Hydraulic Jump Energy Dissipators
(FHWA – HEC 14, 2006)



$$\rho V_0 Q + C_p \gamma (y_0{}^2/2) W_0 = C_B A_F N \rho V_A{}^2/2 + \rho V_B Q + \gamma Q^2/(2 V_B{}^2 W_B)$$ (**Equation CH-7**)

where:

y_0 = depth at the culvert outlet (ft)

V_0 = velocity at the culvert outlet (ft/s)

W_0 = culvert width at the culvert outlet (ft)

V_A = approach velocity at two culvert widths downstream of the culvert outlet (ft/s)

V_B = exit velocity, just downstream of the last row of roughness elements (ft/s)

W_B = basin width, just downstream of the last row of roughness elements (ft/s)

N = total number of roughness elements in the basin

A_F = frontal area of one full roughness element (ft^2)

C_B = basin drag coefficient

C_P = momentum correction coefficient for the pressure at the culvert outlet

γ = unit weight of water (62.4 lbs/ft^3)

ρ = density of water (1.94 slugs/ft^3)

Table CH-5 shows empirical drag coefficients C_B for the basin configurations shown in Figure CH-12.

Figure CH-12 – Basin Configurations
(FHWA HEC-14, 2006)

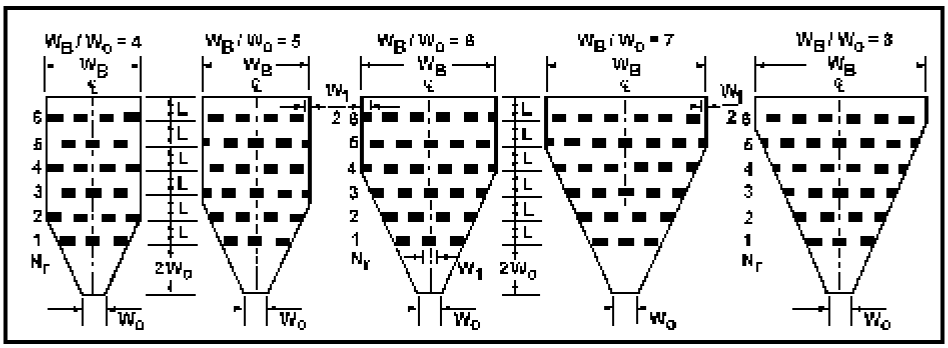


Table CH-5 – Design Values for Roughness Elements
(FHWA HEC-14, 2006)

W_B/W_o			2 to 4			5			6			7		8
W_1/W_o			0.57			0.63			0.6			0.58		0.62
Rows (N_r)			4	5	6	4	5	6	4	5	6	5	6	6
Elements (N)			14	17	21	15	19	23	17	22	27	24	30	30
RECTANGULAR	h/y_A	L/h	Basin Drag Coefficient, C_B											
	0.91	6	0.32	0.28	0.24	0.32	0.28	0.24	0.31	0.27	0.23	0.26	0.22	0.22
	0.71	6	0.44	0.40	0.37	0.42	0.38	0.35	0.40	0.36	0.33	0.34	0.31	0.29
	0.48	12	0.60	0.55	0.51	0.56	0.51	0.47	0.53	0.48	0.43	0.46	0.39	0.35
	0.37	12	0.68	0.66	0.65	0.65	0.62	0.60	0.62	0.58	0.55	0.54	0.50	0.45
CIRCULAR	0.91	6	0.21	0.20	0.48	0.21	0.19	0.17	0.21	0.19	0.17	0.18	0.16	
	0.71	6	0.29	0.27	0.40	0.27	0.25	0.23	0.25	0.23	0.22	0.22	0.20	
	0.31	6	0.38	0.36	0.34	0.36	0.34	0.32	0.34	0.32	0.30	0.30	0.28	
	0.48	12	0.45	0.42	0.25	0.40	0.38	0.36	0.36	0.34	0.32	0.30	0.28	
	0.37	12	0.52	0.50	0.18	0.48	0.46	0.44	0.44	0.42	0.40	0.38	0.36	

6.2.4 Riprap as Outlet Protection

Riprap can be an effective measure for erosion and scour protection, but it is a nuisance to maintain and an eyesore to the public. Information regarding the sizing of riprap is provided in Chapter 7 – *Open Channel Flow*. Riprap can only be used with City approval and must be grouted in place. Riprap shall not be the first choice for energy dissipation/erosion control. City approval will be dependent upon the design engineer showing the ineffectiveness of other types of energy dissipation devices for the specific situation under consideration. Should riprap as outlet protection need to be designed for a culvert, the following sections shall be used in the design of riprap as outlet protection. In all cases the thickness/structural layer of riprap as outlet protection shall be constructed as shown in Figure CH-14.

6.2.4.1 Length of Protection

Riprap, when used as an outlet velocity control measure, shall be applied to the channel area immediately downstream of the culvert outlet for a length, L_p, determined using one of the following formulas:

$$L_p = \left(\frac{1.7 * Q}{{D_O}^{3/2}} \right) + 8 * D_O$$ if culvert is flowing < half full **(Equation CH-8)**

$$L_p = \left(\frac{3.0 * Q}{{D_O}^{3/2}} \right)$$ if culvert is flowing ≥ half full **(Equation CH-9)**

where:

L_p = Length of protection (length of riprap apron) (ft)

Q = Design discharge (ft^3/sec)

D_O = Maximum inside culvert width (ft) (use diameter for circular culverts)

In no instance shall L_p be less than 3*D_O nor does L_p need to be greater than 20*D_O.

6.2.4.2 Width of Protection

Where there is a well-defined channel downstream of the apron, the bottom width of the apron should be at least equal to the bottom width of the channel. Where no well-defined channel exists immediately downstream of the outlet area, the outlet protection width, W, shall be determined using the following formula(s):

$$W = 3 * D_O + 0.4 * L_p$$ if TW ≥ elevation of center of culvert **(Equation CH-10)**

$$W = 3 * D_O + L_p$$ if TW < elevation of center of culvert **(Equation CH-11)**

where:

W = Width of outlet protection (width of riprap apron) (ft)

L_p = Length of protection (length of riprap apron) (ft)

D_O = Maximum inside culvert width (ft) (use diameter for circular culverts)

In no instance shall W be less than $3*D_O$. See Figure CH-13 for additional details on outlets that don't have a well-defined channel downstream.

6.2.4.3 Thickness and Stone Size/Gradation

The riprap blanket thickness shall be at a minimum two-times (2x) d_{50} for the initial half of L_p immediately after the culvert discharge and at least one-and-a-half-times (1.5x) d_{50} for the final half of L_p. Furthermore, the riprap blanket shall extend up the side slopes at least 1-foot above the design tailwater elevation, but no lower than two-thirds of the vertical culvert dimension above the culvert invert. The riprap thickness on the side slopes shall be at least one-and-a-half-times (1.5x) d_{50}. A geotextile fabric or stone filter (as outlined in *Section 3.4 – Riprap-Lined Channels* in Chapter 7 – *Open Channel Flow*) must be placed under the riprap to prevent undermining of the soil beneath the riprap layer. See Figure CH-14 for additional details on riprap extents.

The median stone diameter, d_{50}, shall be based on the following equation:

$$d_{50} = \left(\frac{0.02}{TW}\right) * \left(\frac{Q}{D_O}\right)^{4/3}$$ **(Equation CH-12)**

where:

d_{50} = Median stone size (ft)

TW = Tailwater depth above culvert invert (ft), in areas where TW cannot be computed, use $TW=0.20*D_O$

Q = Design discharge (ft^3/sec)

D_O = Maximum inside culvert width (ft) (use diameter for circular culverts)

Where required riprap size calculated from Equation CH-12 exceeds those as defined in Table OC-10 of Chapter 7 of this *Manual*, alternate energy dissipation / erosion control devices shall be used such as stilling basins, baffle chutes, streambed level dissipators, drop structures, etc. (see HEC-14).

Figure CH-13 – Configuration of Conduit Outlet Protection for Undefined Channel Downstream

(NJDOT SESCS, 2008)

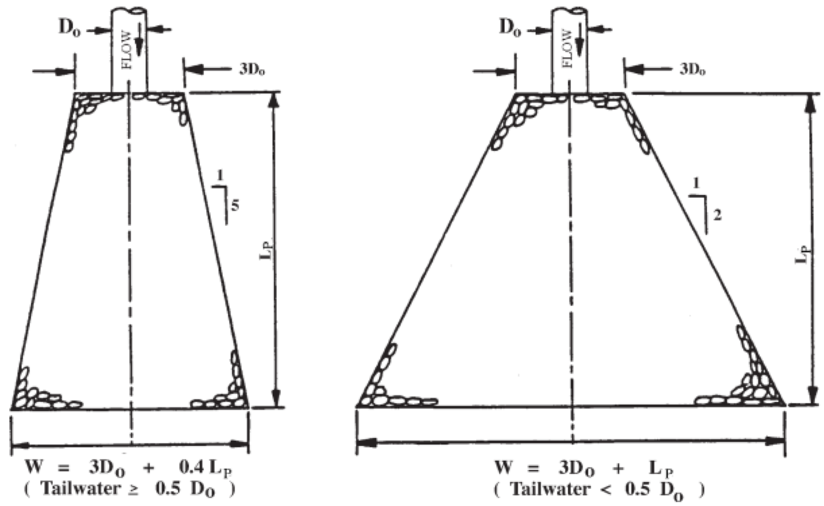
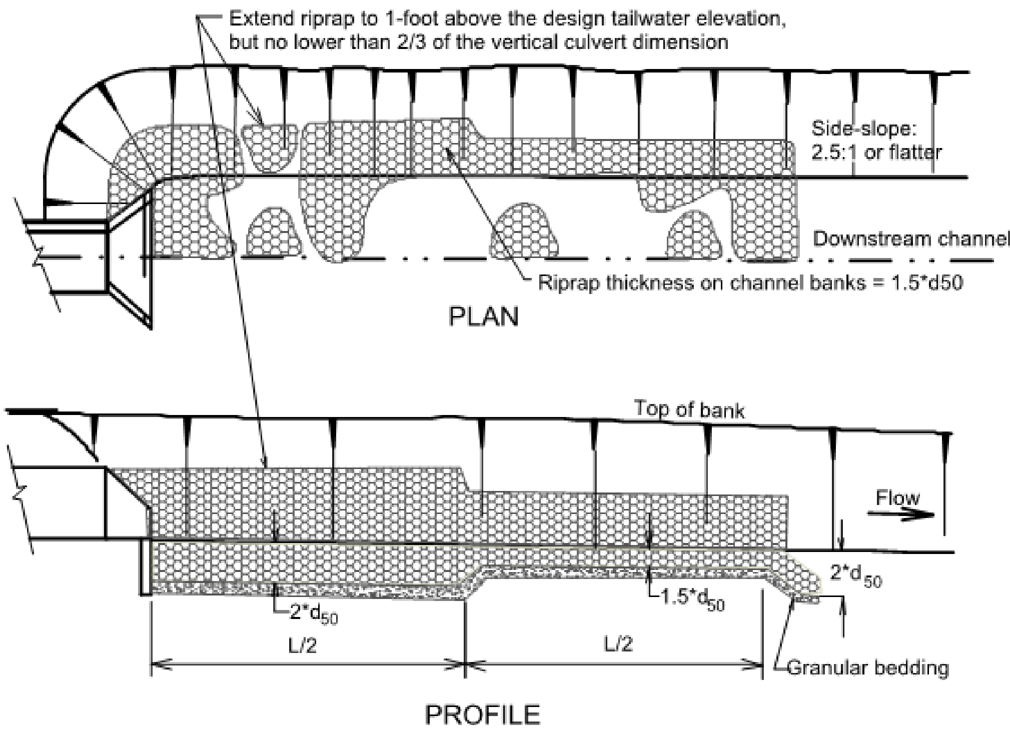


Figure CH-14 – Culvert and Pipe Outlet Erosion Protection (UDFCD USDCM 2002)



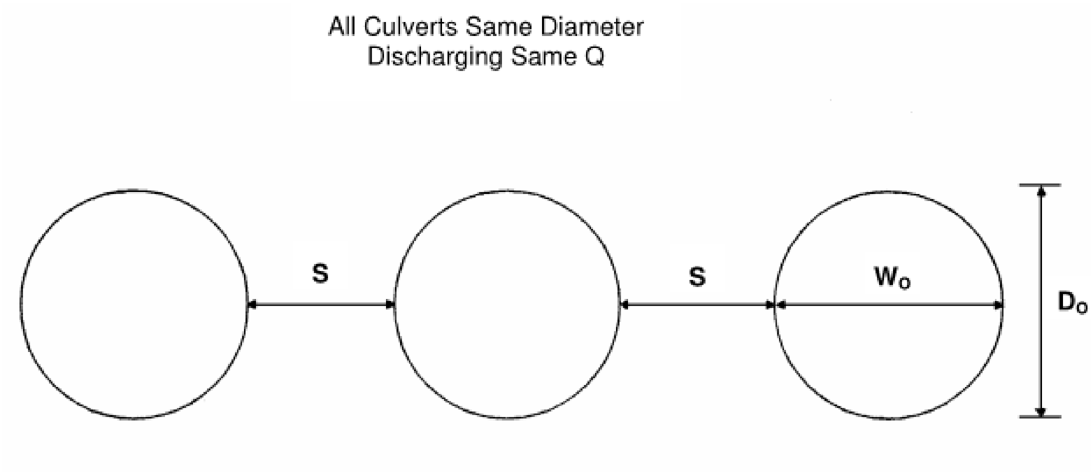
NOTES: 1. Headwall with wingwalls or flared end section required at all culvert outlets.
2. Cutoff wall required at end of wingwall aprons and end section. Minimum depth of cutoff wall = 2*d50 or 3-feet, whichever is deeper.
3. Provide joint fasteners for flared end sections.

6.2.4.4 Multiple Culverts Outlets

When more than one culvert outlet exists at the same location, use the guidelines below to size the riprap protection apron. See Figure CH-15 for additional information.

- When the spacing between the culverts is less than of the width of one culvert, the riprap size and apron dimensions for one culvert shall accommodate all culverts.
- When the spacing between the culverts is greater than the width of one culvert, the riprap size and apron dimensions shall be 25% larger than the dimensions for one culvert.

Figure CH-15 – Guidance for Outlet Protection for Multiple Culverts (NJDOT, SESCS 2008)



For $S < \frac{1}{4} W_O$	Size riprap & length for 1 pipe. Width shall accommodate all culverts.
For $S \geq \frac{1}{4} W_O$	Size riprap & length for 1 pipe and increase values by 25%.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

7.0 GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

7.1 Culvert Location

Culvert location is an integral part of the total design. The main purpose of a culvert is to convey storm water drainage across the roadway section expeditiously and effectively. The designer should identify all live stream crossings, springs, low areas, gullies, and impoundment areas created by the new roadway embankment for possible culvert locations. Note that environmental permitting constraints will often apply for new culverts or retrofits, such as a Section 404 permit that regulates construction activities in jurisdictional wetlands and “Waters of the United States.”

Culverts shall be located on existing stream alignments and aligned to give the stream a direct entrance and a direct exit. Abrupt changes in direction at either end may slow down the flow and make a larger structure necessary. If necessary, a direct inlet and outlet may be obtained by means of a channel change, skewing the culvert, or a combination of these. The choice of alignment should be based on environmental concerns, hydraulic performance, and/or maintenance considerations.

If possible, a culvert shall have the same alignment as its channel. Often this is not practical and where the water must be turned into the culvert, headwalls, wingwalls, and aprons with configurations similar to those in Figure CH-9 shall be used as protection against scour and to provide an efficient inlet.

7.2 Sedimentation

Deposits usually occur within the culvert barrels at flow rates smaller than the design flow. The deposits may be removed during larger floods depending upon the relative transport capacity of flow in the stream and in the culvert, compaction and composition of the deposits, flow duration, ponding depth above the culvert, and other factors.

Culvert location in both plan and profile is of particular importance to the maintenance of sediment-free culvert barrels. Deposits occur in culverts because the sediment transport capacity of flow within the culvert is often less than in the stream.

Deposits in culverts may also occur because of the following conditions:

- At moderate flow rates the culvert cross section is larger than that of the stream, so the flow depth and sediment transport capacity is reduced within the culvert compared to the stream.

- Point bars form on the inside of stream bends. Culvert inlets placed at bends in the stream will be subject to deposition in the same manner. This effect is most pronounced in multiple-barrel culverts with the barrel on the inside of the curve often becoming almost totally plugged with sediment deposits.

- Abrupt changes to a flatter grade in the culvert or in the channel adjacent to the culvert will induce sedimentation. Gravel and cobble deposits are common downstream from the break in grade because of the reduced transport capacity in the flatter section.

7.3 Open Channel Inlets

Entrances to open channels often require the same careful planning and design as is needed for culverts and long conduits if the necessary hydraulic balance is to be achieved. The energy grade line shall be analyzed by the designer to provide proper balanced energy conversion, velocity control, energy loss, and other factors that control the downstream flow. Channel confluences, in particular, require careful hydraulic design to eliminate scour, reduce oscillating waves, and minimize upstream backwater effects.

7.4 Transitions

Transitions from pipe flow to open channels, between different rigid channels, and from slow flow to supercritical flow must be designed using the concepts of conservation of energy and open channel hydraulics. Primarily, a transition is necessary to change the shape or cross section of flowing water.

Normally, the designer will have as an objective the avoidance of excessive energy losses, cross waves, and turbulence. It is also necessary to provide against scour and overtopping.

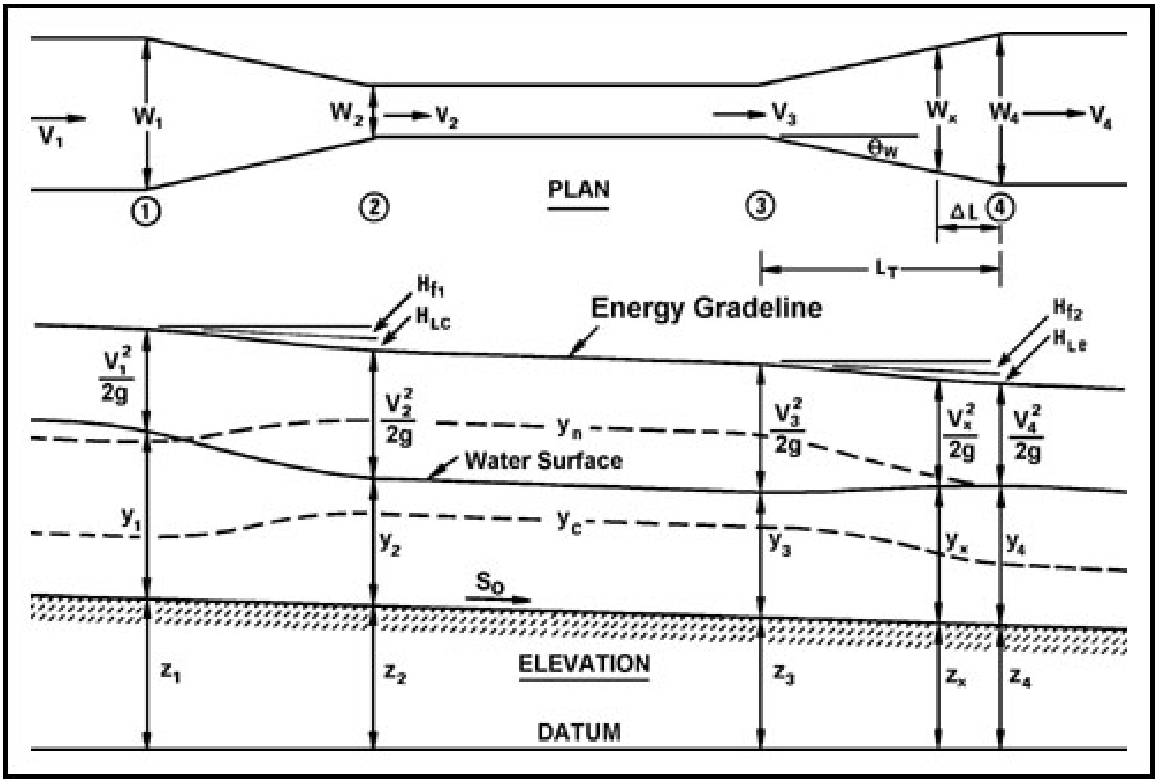
Supercritical flow transitions must receive more attention than is generally provided to subcritical flow transitions. Care must be taken to prevent unwanted hydraulic jumps or velocities that cause critical depth. Froude numbers between 0.8 and 1.2 must be avoided.

In general, the rate at which the flow prism may be changed shall not exceed perhaps 5 to 12½ degrees, depending upon velocity. Sharp angles shall be avoided. The water surface hydraulic grade line shall normally be smooth. More information on transitions is available in HEC-14 (FHWA 2006).

7.5 Culvert Replacements

When installing or replacing a culvert, careful consideration should be taken to ensure that upstream and downstream property owners are not adversely affected by the new hydraulic conditions. The potential upstream flooding impacts associated with the backwater from the calculated headwater depth must be considered and the determination of the available headwater should take into account the area inundated at the projected water surface elevation. If a culvert is replaced by one with more capacity, the downstream effects of the additional flow must be factored into the analysis. Assuring consistency with existing major drainageway master plans and/or outfall studies is important.

Figure CH-16 – Subcritical Flow Transition
(HEC-14, 2006)



7.6 Fencing for Public Safety

Culverts are frequently located at the base of steep slopes. Large box culverts, in particular, can create conditions where there is a significant drop, which poses risk to the public. In such cases, handrail or fencing (or a guardrail configuration) is required for public safety. A handrail or fence shall be placed to provide a barrier between adjacent pedestrian areas and culvert openings when the culvert height/drop is ≥ 30 inches and ≤ 10 feet from the edge of the closest travel way.

Typical culvert inlets consist of concrete headwalls and wingwalls for larger structures and beveled-end sections for smaller pipes. These may be an obstacle to motorists who run off the road. This type of design may result in either a fixed object protruding above an otherwise traversable embankment or an opening into which a vehicle can drop causing an abrupt stop. The options available to a design engineer to minimize these obstacles are: use a traversable design, extend the structures so it is less likely to be hit, shield the structures (guardrail, concrete barrier wall, etc.), or delineate the structure if the other alternatives are not appropriate. Guidance for when to use which option is located in Section 3.4.2 Cross-Drainage Structures of the AASHTO Roadside Design Guide (2002).

7.7 Cover, Fill Heights and Bedding for Culverts

The minimum cover for reinforced concrete pipe shall be one foot and shall meet minimum ASTM Class III specifications. The minimum cover for metal pipe is two feet. Minimum cover less than these values shall be fully justified in writing and approved by the City Engineer prior to proceeding with final plans. Maximum fill heights and bedding descriptions for pipes are shown on Tables CH-6 and CH-7.

Box culverts shall be structurally designed to accommodate earth and live load to be imposed upon the culvert. Refer to the ARDOT Reinforced Concrete Box Culvert Standard Drawings. When installed within public right-of-way, all culverts shall be capable of withstanding minimum HL-93 loading.

When culverts under railroad facilities are necessary, the designer shall obtain approval from the affected railroad.

Table CH-6 – Maximum Heights of Fill Over RCP Culverts
(ARDOT, Standard Drawing PCC-1)

Installation Type	Class of Pipe		
	Class III	Class IV	Class V
	Feet		
Type 1	21	32	50
Type 2	17	27	41
Type 3	13	20	32

Note: If fill height exceeds 50 feet, a special design concrete pipe will be required using Type 1 Installation.

Table CH-7 – Pipe Bedding Installation Types
(ARDOT, Standard Drawing PCC-1)

Installation Type	Material Requirements for Haunch and Structural Bedding
Type 1	Aggregate Base Course (Class 5 or Class 7)
Type 2	Selected Materials (Class SM-1, SM-2 or SM-3) or Type 1 Installation material
Type 3	AASHTO Classification A-1 thru A-6 Soil or Type 1 or 2 Installation material

Note: Material listed in this table corresponds to the ARDOT Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, Latest Edition. Materials shall not include organic materials or stones larger than 3-inches.

8.0 BRIDGES INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW

Bridges are important roadway hydraulic structures that are vulnerable to failure from flood related causes. In order to minimize the risk of failure, the hydraulic requirements of stream crossings must be recognized and considered in all phases of roadway development, construction and maintenance.

There are extensive manuals on bridges that are available and should be used in bridge hydraulic studies and river stability analysis. Some of the best include:

1. *Hydraulics of Bridge Waterways* Hydraulic Design Series No. 1 (FHWA 1978). This is a good basic reference.

2. *Highway in the River Environment* (Richardson 1988 draft with appendices and 1974). This is particularly good for hydraulics, geomorphology, scour, and degradation.

3. *Hydraulic Analysis Location and Design of Bridges* Volume 7 (AASHTO 1987). This is a good overview document.

4. *Technical Advisory on Scour at Bridges* (FHWA 1988). This presents information similar to references 2, 3, and 4 above, but in a workbook format, and perhaps oversimplified.

Bridges are required across nearly all open urban channels sooner or later and, therefore, sizing the bridge openings is of paramount importance. Open channels with improperly designed bridges will either have excessive scour or deposition or not be able to carry the design flow.

All structural calculations shall be in compliance with the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications (current edition) and stamped by a structural engineer licensed in the State of Arkansas. Trail bridges shall be designed according to the LRFD Guide Specifications for Design of Pedestrian Bridges (current edition) and stamped by a structural engineer licensed in the State of Arkansas. The construction specifications shall be ARDOT's specifications modified appropriately to reflect Tontitown as the owner rather than ARDOT.

8.1 Coordination with Other Agencies

Numerous local, State, and Federal agencies have vested interests in surface waters. These agencies represent interests in water rights, flood control, drainage, conservation, navigation, and maintenance of navigation channels, recreation, floodplain management and safety of floodplain occupancy, fish and wildlife, preservation of wetlands, and regulation of construction for the protection of environmental values. Other local, State, and Federal agencies have vested interest in historic bridge structures and archeological resources. Early coordination with other agencies will reveal areas of mutual interest and offer opportunities to conserve public funds by resolving conflicts between roadway plans and water resources plans.

8.2 Basic Criteria

Bridge openings shall be designed to have as little effect on the flow characteristics as reasonable, consistent with good bridge design and economics. However, with respect to supercritical flow with a lined channel, the bridge shall not affect the flow at all - that is, there shall be no projections into the design water prism that could create a hydraulic jump or flow instability in the form of reflecting and standing waves.

8.2.1 Design Approach

The method of planning for bridge openings must include water surface profiles and hydraulic gradient analyses of the channel for the major storm runoff. Once this hydraulic gradient is established without the bridge, the maximum reasonable effect on the channel flow by the bridge should be determined. In urban cases this shall not exceed a backwater effect of more than 12 inches.

Velocities under the bridge and downstream of the bridge must receive consideration when choosing the size of the bridge opening. Velocities exceeding those permissible will necessitate special protection of the bottom and banks.

For supercritical flow, the clear bridge opening shall permit the flow to pass under the bridge unimpeded and unchanged in cross section.

8.2.2 Bridge Opening Freeboard

The distance between the design flow water surface and the bottom of the low steel / low chord of the bridge will vary from case to case. However, the debris that may be expected must receive full consideration in setting the freeboard. The minimum allowable freeboard for an arterial/critical service bridge or local/collector bridge is one foot for a 100-year and 50-year design storm, respectively. In no case shall any local/collector bridge overtop in the 100-year event no matter the allowable freeboard. Any ARDOT requirements for freeboard shall be adhered to on all state and interstate highways. Refer to ARDOT’s freeboard policy in its *Roadway Design Drainage Manual* at arkansashighways.com/.

8.3 Hydraulic Analysis

The hydraulic analysis procedures described below are suitable, although the use of HEC-RAS is preferred.

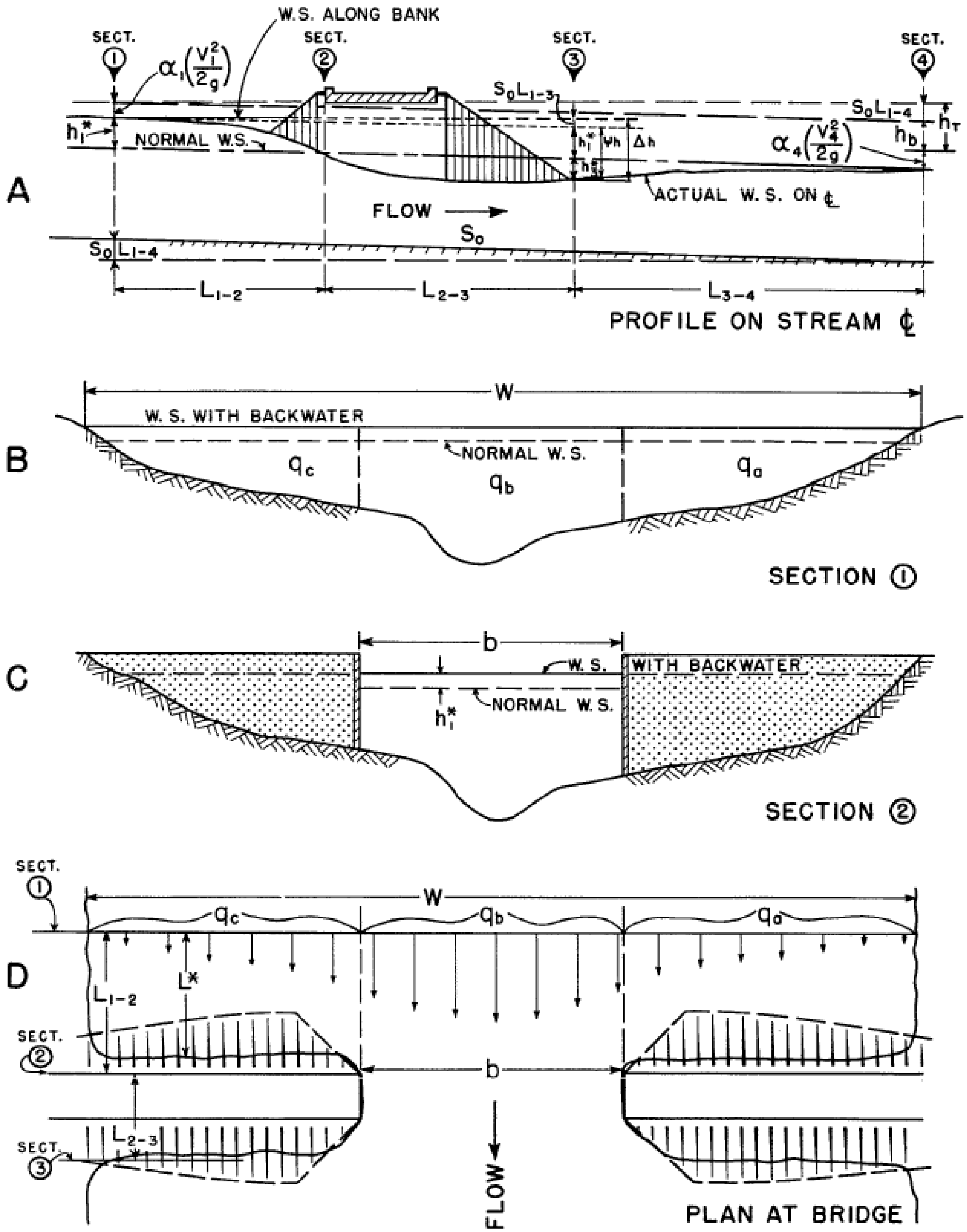
The design of a bridge opening generally determines the overall length of the bridge. The length affects the final cost of the bridge. The hydraulic engineering in the design of bridges has more impact on the bridge cost than does the structural design.

The reader is referred to Hydraulics of Bridge Waterways (U.S. Bureau of Public Roads 1978) for more guidance on the preliminary hydraulic assessment approach described below. In working with bridge openings, the designer may use the designation shown in Figure CH-17.

8.3.1 Backwater

Backwater is the increment of increased flood depth upstream of a roadway crossing over a waterway. Backwater should not be used as the sole criterion for judging the acceptability of an alternative design. It is, instead, an aid that can be used in selecting the waterway opening, the crossing profile, and to assess the risk costs of incremental flooding caused by the crossing facility.

Figure CH-17 – Normal Bridge Crossing Designation (FHWA HDS-1, 1978)



8.3.2 Expression for Backwater

A practical expression for backwater has been formulated by applying the principle of conservation of energy between the point of maximum backwater upstream from the bridge and a point downstream from the bridge at which normal stage has been reestablished, as shown in Sections 1 and 4, respectively, of Figure CH-17. The expression is reasonably valid if the channel in the vicinity of the bridge is reasonably uniform, the gradient of the bottom is approximately constant between Sections 1 and 4, there is no appreciable erosion of the bed in the constriction due to scour, and the flow is subcritical.

The expression for computation of backwater upstream from a bridge constricting the flow is as follows:

$$h_1^* = K^*\left(\frac{V_{n2}^{\ 2}}{2g}\right) + \alpha 1\left[\left(\frac{A_{n2}}{A_4}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{A_{n2}}{A_1}\right)^2\right]\frac{V_{n2}^{\ 2}}{2g} \qquad \textbf{(Equation CH-13)}$$

in which:

h_1^* = Total backwater (ft)

K^* = Total backwater coefficient

$\alpha 1$ = Kinetic energy coefficient

A_{n2} = Gross water area in constriction measured below normal stage (ft^2)

V_{n2} = Average velocity in constriction or Q/A_{n2} (ft/sec). The velocity V_{n2} is not an actual measurable velocity but represents a reference velocity readily computed for both model and field structures.

A_4 = Water area at Section 4 where normal stage is reestablished (ft^2)

A_1 = Total water area at Section 1 including that produced by the backwater (ft^2)

g = Acceleration of gravity (32.2 ft/sec^2)

To compute backwater by Equation CH-13, it is necessary to obtain the approximate value of h_1^* by using the first part of the equation:

$$h_1^* = K^*\left(\frac{V_{n2}^{\ 2}}{2g}\right) \qquad \textbf{(Equation CH-14)}$$

The value of A_1 in the second part of Equation CH-13, which depends on h_1^* can then be determined. This part of the expression represents the difference in kinetic energy between Sections 1 and 4, expressed in terms of the velocity head $V_{n2}^2/2g$. Equation CH-14 may appear cumbersome, but it was set up as shown to permit omission of the second part when the difference in kinetic energy between Sections 1 and 4 is small enough to be insignificant in the final result.

To permit the designer to readily recognize cases in which the kinetic energy term may be ignored, the following guides are provided:

$M > 0.7$, where M = bridge opening ratio = b/W (Figure CH-17)

$V_{n2} < 7$ ft/sec

$$K^*\left(\frac{V_{n2}^{\;2}}{2g}\right) < 0.5 \text{ ft}$$

If values meet all three conditions, the backwater obtained from Equation CH-14 can be considered sufficiently accurate. Should one or more of the values not meet the conditions set forth, it is advisable to use Equation CH-13 in its entirety. The use of the guides is further demonstrated in the examples given in Hydraulics of Bridge Waterways (FHWA, HDS-1 1978) that should be used in all bridge design work.

8.3.3 Backwater Coefficient

The value of the overall backwater coefficient K^*, which was determined experimentally, varies with:

1. Stream constriction as measured by bridge opening ratio, M.
2. Type of bridge abutment: wingwall, spill through, etc.
3. Number, size, shape, and orientation of piers in the constriction.
4. Eccentricity or asymmetric position of bridge with the floodplains.
5. Skew (bridge crosses floodplain at other than 90-degree angle).

The overall backwater coefficient K^* consists of a base curve coefficient, K_b, to which are added incremental coefficients to account for the effect of piers, eccentricity, and skew. The value of K^* is primarily dependent on the degree of constriction of the flow but also changes to a limited degree with the other factors.

8.3.4 Effect of M and Abutment Shape (Base Curves)

Figure CH-18 shows the base curve for backwater coefficient, K_b, plotted with respect to the opening ratio, M, for several wingwall abutments and a vertical wall type. Note how the coefficient K_b increases with channel constriction. The several curves represent different angles of wingwalls as can be identified by the accompanying sketches; the lower curves represent the better hydraulic shapes.

Figure CH-18 shows the relation between the backwater coefficient, K_b, and *M* for spill-through abutments for three embankment slopes. A comparison of the three curves indicates that the coefficient is little affected by embankment slope. Figures CH-18 and CH-19 are "base curves" and K_b is referred to as the "base curve coefficient." The base curve coefficients apply to normal crossings for specific abutment shapes but do not include the effect of piers, eccentricity, or skew.

Figure CH-18 – Base Curves for Wingwall Abutments (UDFCD USDCM, 2001)

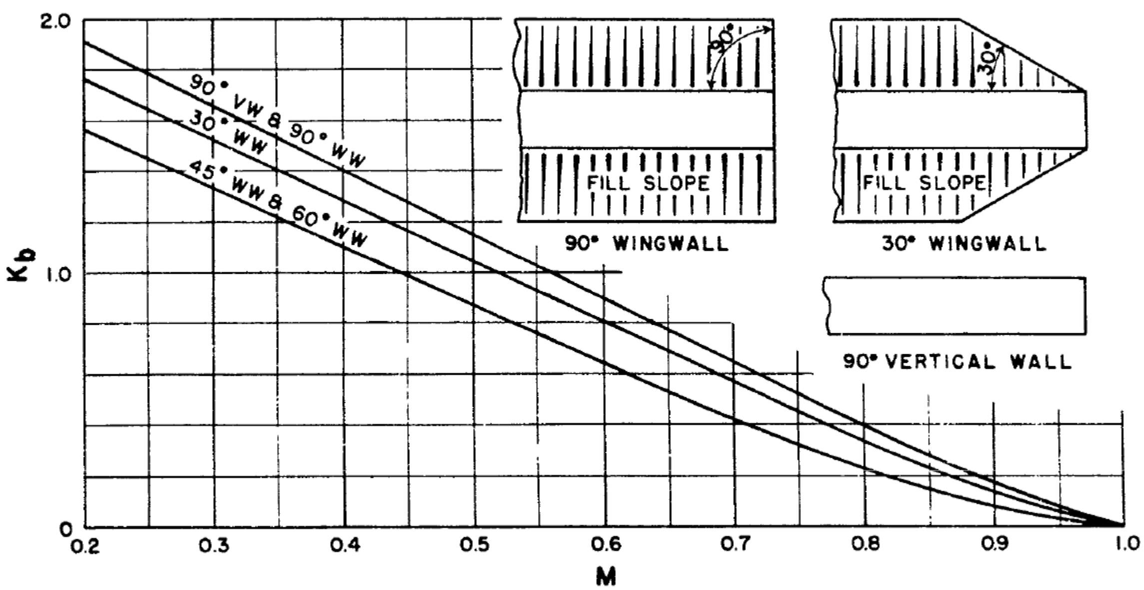
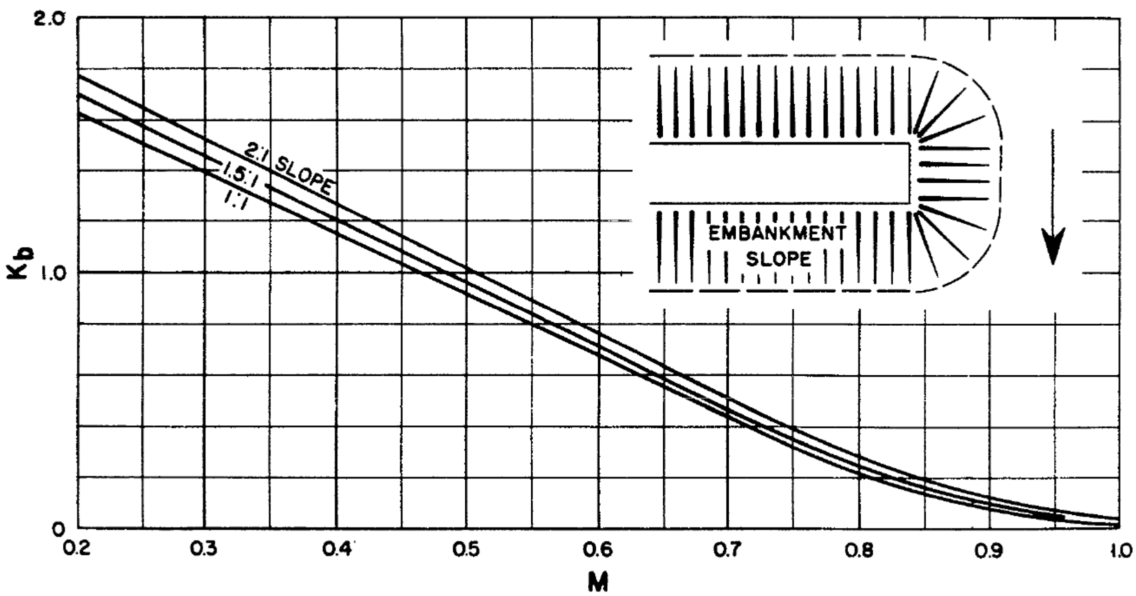


Figure CH-19 – Base Curves for Spillthrough Abutments (UDFCD USDCM, 2001)



8.3.5 Effect of Piers (Normal Crossings)

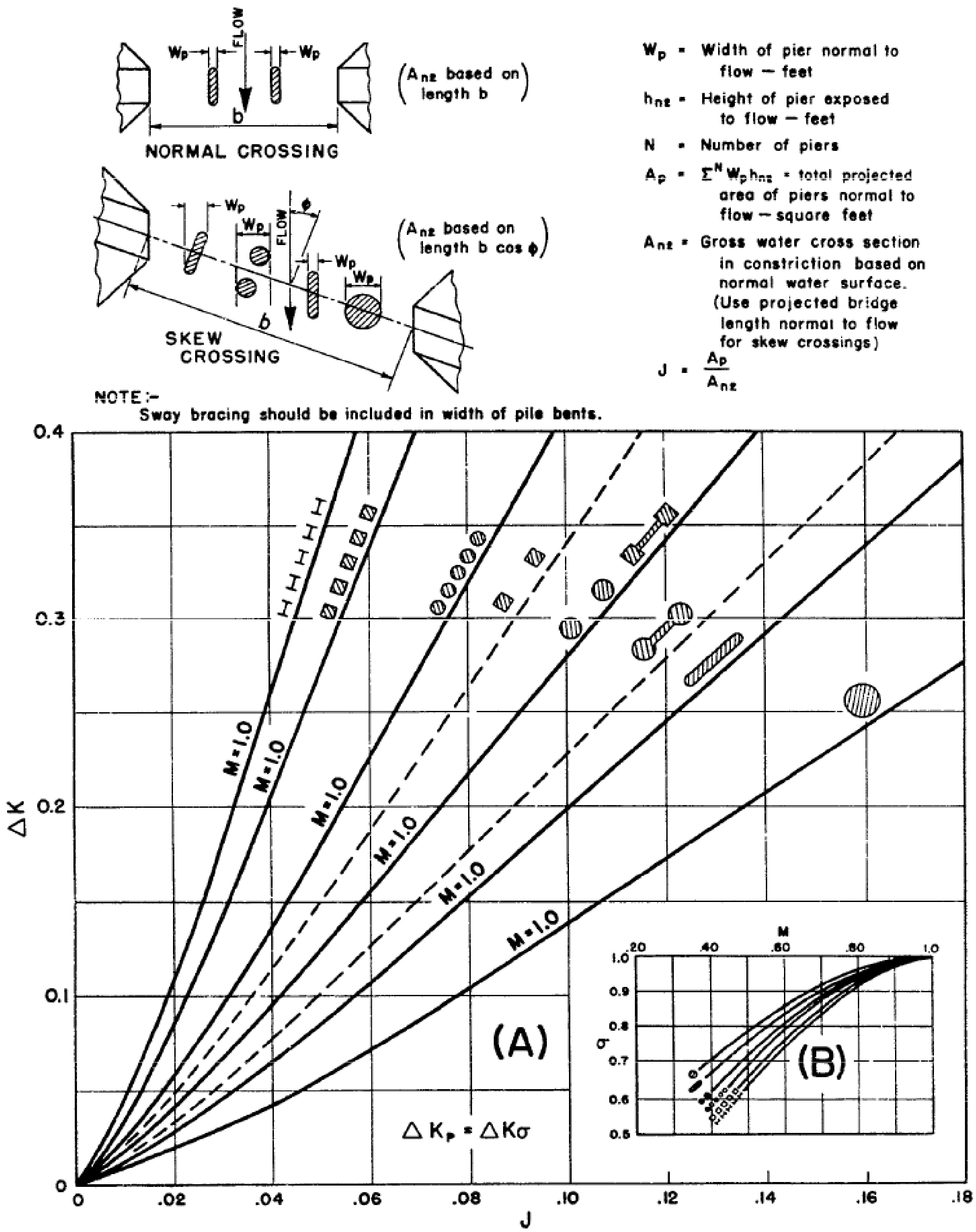
The effect on the backwater from introduction of piers in a bridge constriction has been treated as an incremental backwater coefficient designated ΔK_p, which is added to the base curve coefficient when piers are a factor. The value of the incremental backwater coefficient, ΔK_p, is dependent on the ratio that the area of the piers bears to the gross area of the bridge opening, the type of piers (or piling in the case of pile bents), the value of the bridge opening ratio, M, and the angularity of the piers with the direction of flood flow. The ratio of the water area occupied by piers, A_p, to the gross water area of the constriction, A_{n2}, both based on the normal water surface, has been assigned the letter J. In computing the gross water area, A_{n2}, the presence of piers in the constriction is ignored. The incremental backwater coefficient for the more common types of piers and pile bents can be obtained from Figure CH-20. The procedure is to enter Chart A, Figure CH-20, with the proper value of J and read ΔK and obtain the correction factor σ from Chart B, Figure CH-20, for opening ratios other than one (1.0). The incremental backwater coefficient is then

$$\Delta K_p = \Delta K \sigma \quad \textbf{(Equation CH-14)}$$

The incremental backwater coefficients for piers can, for all practical purposes, be considered independent of diameter, width, or spacing but should be increased if there are more than 5 piers in a bent. A bent with 10 piers should be given a value of ΔK_p about 20% higher than those shown for bents with 5 piles. If there is a good possibility of trash collecting on the piers, it is advisable to use a value greater than the pier width to include the trash. For a normal crossing with piers, the total backwater coefficient becomes:

$K^* = K_b$ (Figures CH-18 or CH-19) $+ \Delta K_p$ (Figure CH-20) **(Equation CH-15)**

Figure CH-20 – Incremental Backwater Coefficient for Pier (FHWA HDS-1, 1978)



8.3.6 Scour

Most bridge failures are the result of scour. The added cost of reducing a bridge's vulnerability to damage from scour is small in comparison to the total cost of a bridge failure. As required by the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications Article 3.7.5, scour at bridge foundations is investigated for two conditions.

The first condition is for the design flood for scour, the streambed material in the scour prism above the total scour line shall be assumed to have been removed for design conditions. The design flood storm surge, tide, or mixed population flood shall be the more severe of the 100-year events or from an overtopping flood of lesser recurrence interval.

The second condition is for the check flood for scour, the stability of bridge foundation shall be investigated for scour conditions resulting from a designated flood storm surge, tide, or mixed population flood not to exceed the 500-year event or from an overtopping flood of lesser recurrence interval. Excess reserve beyond that required for stability under this condition is not necessary. The extreme event limit state shall apply.

If the site conditions and low tailwater conditions near stream confluences dictate the use of a more severe flood event for either the design or the check flood for scour, the engineer may use such flood event.

For additional guidance and requirements, refer to the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Specifications.

8.4 Design Procedure

The following is a brief step-by-step outline for determination of backwater produced by a bridge constriction:

1. Determine the magnitude and frequency of the discharge for which the bridge is to be designed.

2. Determine the stage of the stream at the bridge site for the design discharge.

3. Plot a representative cross section of the stream for design discharge at Section 1, if not already done under Step 2. If the stream channel is essentially straight and the cross section substantially uniform in the vicinity of the bridge, the natural cross section of the stream at the bridge site may be used for this purpose.

4. Subdivide the above cross section according to marked changes in depth of flow and roughness. Assign values of Manning's roughness coefficient, n, to each subsection. Careful judgment is necessary in selecting these values. Refer to Table OC-7 in Chapter 7 – *Open Channel Flow*.

5. Compute conveyance and then discharge in each subsection.

6. Determine the value of the kinetic energy coefficient.

7. Plot the natural cross section under the proposed bridge based on normal water surface for design discharge and compute the gross water area (including area occupied by piers).

8. Compute the bridge opening ratio, M, observing modified procedure for skewed crossings.

9. Obtain the value of K_b from the appropriate base curve.

10. If piers are involved, compute the value of J and obtain the incremental coefficient, ΔK_p.

11. If eccentricity is severe, compute the value of eccentricity and obtain the incremental coefficient, ΔK_e (FHWA, HDS-1 1978).

12. If a skewed crossing is involved, observe proper procedure in previous steps, and then obtain the incremental coefficient, ΔK_s, for proper abutment type.

13. Determine the total backwater coefficient, K^*, by adding incremental coefficients to the base curve coefficient, K_b.

14. Compute the backwater by Equation CH-14.

15. Determine the distance upstream to where the backwater effect is negligible.

Detailed steps illustrated by examples are presented in Hydraulics of Bridge Waterways (FHWA, HDS-1 1978).

8.5 Inadequate Openings

The engineer will often encounter existing bridges and culverts that have been designed for storms having return periods less than 100 years. In addition, bridges will be encountered which have been improperly designed. Often the use of the orifice formula will provide a quick determination of the adequacy or inadequacy of a bridge opening:

$$Q_m = C_b A_b \sqrt{2gH_{br}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation CH-17)}$$

or

$$H_{br} = 0.04\left(\frac{Q_m}{A_b}\right)^2$$ **(Equation CH-18)**

in which:

Q_m = The major storm discharge (ft^3/s)

C_b = The bridge opening coefficient (0.6 assumed in Equation CH-17)

A_b = The area of the bridge opening (ft^2)

g = Acceleration of gravity (32.2 ft/s^2)

H_{br} = The head, that is the vertical distance from the bridge opening center point to the upstream water surface about 10H upstream from the bridge, where H is the height of the bridge, in feet. It is approximately the difference between the upstream and downstream water surfaces where the lower end of the bridge is submerged.

These expressions are valid when the water surface is above the top of the bridge opening.

REFERENCES

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), Highway Subcommittee on Bridges and Structures. 2007. LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, 4th Ed. Washington, DC: AASHTO

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) Task Force for Roadside Safety, Highway Subcommittee on Design. 1996. *Roadside Design Guide*. Washington, DC: AASHTO.

———. 1987. *Hydraulic Analysis. Location and Design of Bridges*. Washington, DC: AASHTO.

American Concrete Pipe Association. 2000. Concrete Pipe Design Manual. Irving, TX: American Concrete Pipe Association.

Arkansas State Highway and Transportation Department (AHTD). 1982. Drainage Manual. Little Rock, AR: AHTD

———. 2000. Standard Drawing PCC-1, *Concrete Pipe Culvert Fill Heights and Bedding*. Little Rock, AR: Arkansas State Highway and Transportation Department.

Chow, V.T. 1959. Open Channel Hydraulics. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc.

Ginsberg, A. 1987. HY8 Culvert Analysis Microcomputer Program Applications Guide. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

King, H.W. and E.F. Brater 1976. Handbook of Hydraulics. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company.

New Jersey Department of Transportation (NJDOT). 2008. *Soil Erosion and Sediment Control Standards*. Trenton, New Jersey: NJDOT

Rhode Island Department of Environmental Management. 1989. *Soil Erosion and Sediment Control Handbook*. Providence, RI: RI DEM

Richardson, E.V. 1974. *Highways in the River Environment*. Washington, DC: U. S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

Scourstop.com. 2008. ScourStop. 1 Sep. 2009 <http://scourstop.com/index.php>.

Urban Drainage and Flood Control District. 2001. Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual. Denver, CO: Urban Drainage and Flood Control District.

U.S. Army Corp of Engineers (USACE). 1952. *Hydrologic and Hydraulic Analysis, Computation of Backwater Curves in River Channels*. Engineering Manual. Washington, DC: Department of the Army.

U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. 1960. Design of Small Dams. Denver, CO: Bureau of Reclamation.

U.S. Federal Highway Administration (FHWA). 1960. *Hydraulics of Bridge Waterways*. Hydraulic Design Series No.1. Washington, DC: FHWA.

———. 1965. *Hydraulic Charts for the Selection of Highway Culverts*. Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 5. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

———. 1971. Debris Control Structures. Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 9. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

———. 1972b. Hydraulic Design of Improved Inlets for Culverts. Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 13. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

———. 1978. *Hydraulics of Bridge Waterways*. Hydraulic Design Series No. 1. Washington, DC: Department of Transportation.

———. 1983. Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipators for Culverts and Channels. Hydraulic Engineering Circular No.14. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

———. 1985. Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts. Hydraulic Design Series No. 5. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

———. 1988. *Highways in the River Environment*. Washington, DC: U. S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

———. 1996. Federal Lands Highway Project Development and Design Manual. 1996 Metric Revision. FHWA-DF-88-003. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

———. 2000. Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipators for Culverts and Channels. Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 14M. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

Virginia Department of Transportation (VDOT). 2002. Drainage Manual. Richmond, Virginia: VDOT

CHAPTER 5. STORMWATER DETENTION

CONTENTS

Section Page DET-

TABLES

FIGURES

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Purpose of the Chapter

The purpose of this chapter is to provide guidance for designing facilities to detain stormwater runoff from new developments and redevelopments. The intent of the detention facilities is to protect downstream channels and property from adverse impacts caused by increased peak flow rates and runoff volumes that can result if stormwater control measures are not implemented when areas are developed.

Chapter Summary

Urbanization results in increased levels of imperviousness which frequently causes increased peak flow rates and increased runoff volumes from developed sites. Hence, development can result in adverse impacts such as flooding of downstream properties, widening and instability of downstream channels and ecosystem disruption unless measures are taken to detain the runoff and control the rate of discharge from newly developed sites.

The City requirements for stormwater detention described in this chapter apply to all new developments and redevelopments.

For sites that are one acre in size or smaller, for sites that are being redeveloped, or for sites of any size that are adjacent to a primary channel, the City may allow the property owner to pay a fee in lieu of implementing the stormwater detention measures described in this section.

There are two basic approaches to designing storage facilities: 1) *On-site or private facilities* – facilities that are planned on an individual site basis and 2) *Common or regional facilities* - facilities that are planned to serve multiple lots, a subdivision, or larger area. These facilities can be constructed either on-line (in the drainageway) or off-channel, though off-channel facilities are preferred by the City and on-line facilities must be approved during the concept phase of the development.

The specific type of detention basin used falls into one of three design categories: 1) *Dry detention basin* – drains within one to two days, for flood control only, 2) *Extended detention basin* – drains over one to three days, for pollutant removal and flood control, and 3) Wet basin - contains a permanent pool of water and is designed for pollutant removal, flood control, and often aesthetics.

Two methods are described for detention basin sizing: 1) *The Rational formula-based Modified FAA Method* – for additional impervious area of two acres or less, and 2) *Hydrograph Methods* – for any size of additional impervious area (these include the Hydrograph Volumetric Method for estimating the required detention volume and the Modified Puls routing method for designing detention facilities).

For the basin outlet works, design guidance is provided for orifices and weirs (including rectangular sharp-crested weirs, broad-crested weirs, and broad-crested slot and v-notch weirs). Design guidance for pipe outlet control is addressed in the culvert section of this Manual. Other design considerations for detention basins are also described, including factors such as public safety, layout, grading, lining materials, vegetation, access, and maintenance.

Design examples are provided for: 1) the Modified FAA method for sizing smaller basins, 2) the Hydrograph Volumetric Method for initial sizing of larger basins, and 3) the Modified Puls routing method for the design of larger basins.

Summary of Critical Design Criteria

To comply with the City requirements for detention of stormwater, new developments and redevelopments must satisfy the applicable criteria in this chapter.

3.0 STORMWATER DETENTION DESIGN OBJECTIVES

Post-project peak flow rates

- On-site detention facilities must be designed so that peak flow rates for post-project conditions are limited to a maximum of pre-project levels for the 1-year, 2-year, 5-year, 10-year, 25-year, 50-year and 100-year events. A multi-frequency outlet design approach is required.

Low-flow orifice – Designed to discharge at the 1-year peak flow rate; it shall be a minimum of two inches in diameter.

Spillways must be designed to convey 100-year runoff - Overflow spillways for detention facilities must permit the passage of the runoff from the 100-year event, based on fully urbanized conditions for the entire tributary watershed with no upstream detention. A freeboard of one foot must be provided for the 100-year event design flows. If downstream safety considerations warrant, it may be necessary to size a spillway for greater than a 100-year event.

Public Safety – Wet detention facilities, also known as retention basins, shall have a 15-foot-wide safety bench with a 10:1 slope just below the normal water surface elevation (WSE) or provide a 48-inch tall wrought-iron style fence or approved equal.

Other design considerations – Section 6.0 of this chapter addresses multiple other aspects of detention basin design, including, but not limited to: basin linings, outlet works, vegetation, operations and maintenance, and environmental permitting.

Easements

- Easements are required for all detention facilities (public and private), drainage structures (including swales) and for flows leaving the site. A determination of the need for off-site drainage easements will be made by the City using the recommendations of the design engineer as stated in the drainage study which shall consider site specific conditions and the history of the site.
- If it is not possible to access a facility (such as a detention basin) through the drainage easement, an access easement shall be provided.
- Any drainage structure which carries water from one lot only is not required to be in an easement.
- The standard width for a drainage easement shall be 30 feet or five feet each side of the maintenance road and top of bank, whichever is greater.
- All drainage easements shall be dedicated as Drainage and Recreation Easements.

4.0 TYPES OF DETENTION FACILITIES

Type of Detention Facilities

- Dry Detention Basin – These facilities are for flood control only and drain within 24 to 48 hours.
- Extended Detention Basin – These facilities are for pollutant removal, potentially flood control and drain within 24 to 72 hours.
- Wet Detention Basin (Retention Basin) – These facilities are for pollutant removal, flood control and often aesthetics.
- Off-line storage is the preferred method in the City of Tontitown. In-line storage is allowed at the City's discretion if it can be demonstrated that off-line storage is not practicable.

5.0 HYDROLOGIC AND HYDRAULIC DESIGN

Detention Volume Design

- Simplified (Modified FAA) Method – May be used if detention volume is less than 20,000 cubic feet (ft^3).
- Hydrograph Methods – May be used for any detention volume. The Modified Puls method is the recommended procedure.

6.0 OTHER DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

Detention Basin Geometry and Discharge

- Provide a detention basin profile in the plan set. The profile shall show the basin floor, top of embankment, spillway elevation, 100-year WSE, and normal WSE (if applicable).
- Maximum side slopes of 3:1 (H:V); side slopes of 5:1 are preferred.
- The basin bottom shall have a minimum half percent (0.5%) slope for dry detention basins.
- Provide a five-foot-wide concrete low-flow channel when the slope of the basin bottom is between 0.5% and 1.0% slope. Slopes steeper than 1.0% shall be evaluated for a concrete low-flow channel on a case by case basis based on open channel requirements set forth in this manual and as determined by the city engineer.
- Culverts and channels shall discharge into the basin at least 50 feet from the basin outlet structure in order to provide effective detention of stormwater.
- Provide an emergency spillway.
- Embankment design height shall be increased by five percent (5%) to account for settling.
- Optional forebays should be considered when design volume exceeds 20,000 ft^3.
- Dry detention basins are required to be solid sodded up to the top of bank. Wet retention basins shall be sodded from the top of bank to the normal WSE.
- Retention basins shall have a safety bench and/or a safety fence.
- An all-weather, driving surface is required for access.
- Retention basins shall have a permanent pool minimum depth of at least six feet.
- A geotechnical report is required on all embankments over ten feet and may be required by the City for embankments between five feet and ten feet.

1.0 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Impact of Urbanization on the Quantity of Stormwater Runoff

Urbanization results in increased levels of imperviousness which frequently causes increased peak flow rates and increased runoff volumes from developed sites. Historically, the traditional approach for stormwater management was to move runoff away from structures and transportation systems as quickly and efficiently as possible. However, this approach resulted in impacts such as:

- Flooding of downstream properties.
- Widening and instability of downstream channels.
- Habitat damage and ecosystem disruption, resulting in streambed and bank erosion and associated sediment and pollutant transport.

These types of adverse impacts will occur unless measures are taken to detain the runoff and control the rate of discharge from newly developed sites.

2.0 APPLICABILITY

The stormwater detention requirements outlined in this chapter apply to all new developments and redevelopments.

For sites that are smaller than one acre, or for sites that are being redeveloped, the City may allow the property owner to pay a fee in lieu of implementing the detention measures described in this chapter. The fee in lieu option is discussed further in Section 1.1.

3.0 STORMWATER DETENTION DESIGN OBJECTIVES

The primary objectives of the City's stormwater detention requirements are described below:

- **Post-project peak flow rates must not exceed pre-project conditions** - On-site detention facilities must be designed so that peak flow rates for post-project conditions are limited to pre-project levels. To maintain peak flow rates at pre-development levels, a multi-frequency outlet design approach is required. The designer must demonstrate that the 1-, 2-, 5- 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year post-development peak flow rates are limited to the corresponding pre-development flow rates.

- **Low-flow orifice** - Detention basin designs must include a low-flow orifice designed to discharge at the 1-year peak flow rate. The low-flow orifice must be a minimum of two inches in diameter to reduce the potential for plugging.

- **Spillways must be designed to convey 100-year runoff** - Overflow spillways for detention facilities must permit the passage of the runoff from the 100-year event, based on fully urbanized conditions for the entire tributary watershed with no upstream detention. A freeboard of one foot must be provided for the 100-year event design flows. If downstream safety considerations warrant, it may be necessary to size a spillway for greater than a 100-year event.

These criteria for peak flow attenuation apply for on-site facilities unless other rates are recommended in a City-approved master plan. As a result of these requirements, three conditions must be examined for determination of attenuation requirements for on-site facilities:

- Pre-project conditions
- Post-project conditions
- Fully urbanized conditions for the entire tributary watershed with no upstream detention.

3.1 Other Important Considerations for Detention Facility Selection and Design

In addition to the design considerations above, the following factors shall be considered when selecting and designing a detention facility for a site:

- ***Public Safety*** – Detention facilities shall be evaluated in terms of public safety and the risks or liabilities that occur during implementation. Public safety is always one of the most important design considerations. Wet detention basins must have side-slopes that are no steeper than 3:1 (H:V) and must incorporate either a safety bench or fencing into the design (see Section 6.11).

- ***Public Acceptability*** - The detention facility shall consider the expected response from the public, particularly neighboring residential properties, if any.

- ***Agency Acceptability*** – Selection of a detention facility for a site shall consider the expected response of agencies that will oversee the facility and their relationship to regulatory requirements.

- ***Mosquito Control*** – A specific component of public health and safety related to the design of detention facilities is the issue of mosquito control. The potential for mosquito breeding and the spread of mosquito-borne illnesses in detention facilities must be addressed. In general, the biggest concern is the creation of areas with shallow stagnant water and low dissolved oxygen that creates prime mosquito habitat. Studies indicate that pools of deep water (≥ 5 feet) and pools with residence times less than 72 hours are less likely to breed mosquitoes. Therefore, dry detention basins must have outlets designed to drain in 24 to 48 hours. Careful design and proper management and maintenance of systems can effectively control mosquito breeding.

- ***Reliability/Maintenance/Sustainability*** – The detention facility shall be effective over an extended time and be able to be properly operated and maintained over time. This may involve requiring subdivision covenants and designating individuals responsible for the operation and maintenance of detention facilities.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

4.0 TYPES OF DETENTION FACILITIES

4.1 Private versus Common Detention Facilities

There are two basic approaches to designing storage facilities, which vary depending on the type of development:

- **On-site or private facilities** – Detention facilities that are planned on an individual site basis.
- **Common or regional facilities** – Detention facilities that are planned to serve multiple lots, a subdivision, or larger area.

Depending on the type of development, requirements for detention basins may vary, as described below:

- **Residential or Commercial Subdivision -** These are developments that involve the subdivision of property. One or more detention basins may be required depending on the natural drainage patterns of the development. Detention basins are not required on individual residential lots within a subdivision.
- **Single Lot Commercial -** Generally, these are developments on lots that are not part of a subdivision. Basins shall be designed for full development of the lot based on zoning unless land use restrictions dictate less land is available for development.
- **Multiple Properties -** Multiple properties or developments may be served by a regional basin that is not within the boundary of the development.

4.2 Type of Detention Facilities

Generally, the type of detention is determined by the required design objectives and the appearance and function desired by the developer. Detention basins fall into one of the following three design categories:

- **Dry detention basin -** Designed for several different frequency rainfalls for flood control only. Dry basins drain over one to two days. The outlet is typically composed of orifices and/or weirs.
- **Extended detention basin -** Designed for pollutant removal and potentially for flood control. Extended detention basins drain over an extended period of time, typically one to three days. The outlet is typically composed of a filtered control as well as orifices and/or weirs.

- **Wet basin –** A wet basin, also referred to as a retention basin, contains a permanent pool of water and is designed for pollutant removal, flood control, and often aesthetics. Wet basins may be designed to drain down to the permanent pool level over a short or long period of time.

Unplanned (or non-engineered) storage may also be present in features such as sinkholes and the upstream side of railroad and highway embankments. When planning a development along a major waterway, such non-engineered storage should be accounted for when calculating existing flow rates but generally should not be accounted for when calculating ultimate future peak flow rates.

4.3 In-line versus Off-Line Storage

In developments where an off-site area drains across the property, the developer must consider whether to: 1) construct an off-line detention basin to capture only the local site runoff and bypass the off-site runoff around the basin, or 2) construct an in-line basin with off-site runoff directed through the basin. In-line and off-line storage are defined below:

- **Off-Line Storage**: A facility located off-line from the drainageway that receives runoff from a smaller drainage area or from a particular site. These facilities often are smaller and may store water less frequently than in-line facilities. This is the approach preferred by the City for cases where an off-site area drains across a property.

- **In-Line Storage**: A facility located in-line with the drainageway that captures and routes the entire flood volume. A disadvantage with in-line storage is that it must be large enough to store and convey the total flood volume of the entire tributary catchment, including off-site runoff, if it exists. A U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Section 404 permit for dredge and fill activities within the waters of the United States and a Section 401 Water Quality Certification from the Arkansas Department of Environmental Quality (ADEQ) are typically required for in-line storage. In-line storage is only allowed by the City if it can be demonstrated that off-line storage is not practicable.

For all types of basins, the designer should consider safety, aesthetics, and multipurpose uses during both wet and dry conditions. The use of other specialists such as landscape architects, biologists, and planners is encouraged to achieve these objectives.

5.0 HYDROLOGIC AND HYDRAULIC DESIGN

5.1 Detention Volume Design Methods

Two design methods that are acceptable for use in detention design are summarized in Table DET-1. The appropriate method is dependent on the detention volume required and the impervious area added by the development. When determining which method is acceptable, the calculated volume takes precedence over the impervious area added.

Table DET-1
Acceptable Detention Design Methods

Detention Design Method	**Acceptable Volume** (cubic feet [ft^3])	Acceptable Watershed Area
Simplified (Modified FAA) Method (Section 5.1.1)	<20,000 ft^3	< 30 acres
Hydrograph Methods (Section 5.1.2)	Any size	≥ 30 acres

5.1.1 Modified FAA Rational-Based Method - For Detention Volume Less than 20,000 ft^3

For on-site detention volumes of less than approximately 20,000 ft^3 (this typically corresponds to developments with less than approximately five acres of residential development or less than 2.5 acres of commercial development), an acceptable simplified method of detention design is the Rational Method-based FAA Method (1966), as modified by Guo (1999a). This method can be used for: 1) multiple design events for a site to determine storage requirements for various return intervals, or 2) initial sizing of detention storage volumes whenever a detailed hydrograph routing design method is used.

The inputs required for the Modified FAA volume calculation procedure include:

A = Area of the catchment tributary to the storage facility (acres)

C = Runoff coefficient (unitless)

Q_{po} = Allowable maximum peak outflow rate from the detention facility based on pre-project conditions or City-approved master plan release rates (cubic feet per second, cfs)

t_c = Time of concentration for the tributary catchment (see Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*) (minutes)

i = Rainfall intensity corresponding to t_c for relevant return frequency storms (as determined from the intensity-duration-frequency table in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*) (inches per hour, in/hr)

As shown by example in Section 7.1, the calculations are best set up in a tabular (spreadsheet) form (see Table DET-3). Each time increment (typically five minutes) is entered in rows, and the following variables are entered or calculated in each column:

1. **Storm Duration Time -** (t) (minutes), up to 180 minutes. For longer durations, a hydrograph-based method is required.

2. **Rainfall Intensity** – (i) (in/hr), based on the intensity-duration-frequency table (Table RO-5) in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*.

3. **Inflow volume** – (V_i) (ft^3), calculated as the cumulative volume at the given storm duration using the equation:

$$V_i = CiA\left(60\,t\right)$$ **(Equation DET-1)**

4. **Outflow adjustment factor** – (m) (Guo 1999a):

$$m = \frac{1}{2}\left(1 + \frac{t_c}{t}\right) \qquad 0.5 \le m \le 1 \text{ and } t \ge t_c$$ **(Equation DET-2)**

2. **Calculated average outflow rate** – (Q_{av}) (cfs), over the duration t:

$$Q_{av} = mQ_{po}$$ **(Equation DET-3)**

3. **Calculated outflow volume** – (V_o) (ft^3), during the given duration and the adjustment factor at that duration calculated using the equation:

$$V_o = Q_{av}\left(60t\right)$$ **(Equation DET-4)**

4. **Required storage volume** – (V_s) (ft^3), calculated using the equation:

$$V_s = V_i - V_o$$ **(Equation DET-5)**

The value of V_s increases with time, reaches a maximum value, and then starts to decrease. The maximum value of V_s is the required storage volume for the detention facility.

Notes regarding the Rational Formula-Based Modified FAA Method

1. The Rational Formula Based Modified FAA Method may be used to find an *initial* storage volume for any size watershed. This technique for initial detention sizing yields best results when the tributary watershed area is less than 300 acres, but can be applied to larger watersheds, although the final design volumes may need to be adjusted significantly.

2. If the Modified FAA Method is used and it is determined that the required storage volume is greater than 20,000 ft^3, then a hydrograph method shall be used to determine the basin storage requirements (see Section 5.1.2 for hydrograph methods).

3. Because the FAA Method calculates the required detention volume only, methods described in Section 5.2 must be used to design the outlet works.

5.1.2 Hydrograph Methods - For Detention Volume Greater than 20,000 ft^3

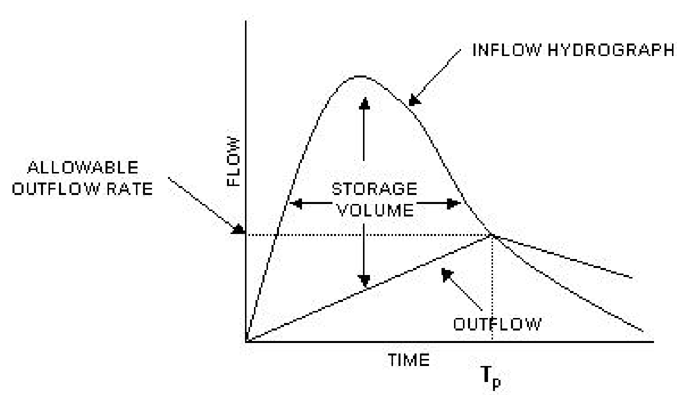
For detention volumes greater than 20,000 ft^3 (typically five acres or more of residential development or 2.5 acres or more of commercial development) the designer must use the hydrograph sizing procedures described in this section.

5.1.2.1 Hydrograph Volumetric Method – for Estimating Detention Volume

To make an initial estimate of the required storage volume for a detention facility of more than 20,000 ft^3, the Hydrograph Volumetric Method can be used to measure the difference between the inflow hydrograph and the proposed outflow hydrograph (i.e., the desired maximum release rates for the facility). This technique assumes that the required detention volume is equal to the difference in volume between the inflow hydrograph and the simplified outflow hydrograph. This is represented by the area between those two hydrographs from the beginning of a runoff event until the time that the allowable release occurs on the recession limb of the inflow hydrograph (Guo 1999b) (see Figure DET-1).

Generally, the inflow hydrograph is obtained from a hydrograph method using the Huff distribution presented in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*. The outflow hydrograph can be approximated using a straight line between zero at the start of the runoff to a point where the allowable discharge is on the descending limb of the inflow hydrograph, T_p.

Figure DET-1
Hydrograph Volumetric Method of Detention Volume Sizing



The volume can be calculated by setting up tabular calculations, as shown by example in Table DET-4 (see Section 7.2). Descriptions of the variables in the table columns include:

1. **Time -** (T) (minutes), from 0 to T_p in uniform increments. Time increments (Δt) of five minutes are typically used. T_p is the time (in minutes) where the descending limb of the inflow hydrograph is equal to the allowable release rate.

2. **Inflow rate** - (Q_i) (cfs), to the detention basin corresponding to the time T. The inflow rate can be obtained using the SCS Unit Hydrograph Method with the Huff distribution presented in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*.

3. **Outflow rate** – (Q_o) (cfs), calculated as:

$$Q_o = \frac{T}{T_p} Q_{po} \qquad \textbf{(Equation DET-6)}$$

In which:

Q_{po} = the peak outflow rate. The allowable peak outflow rate is determined from City criteria or a City-approved master plan.

4. **Incremental Storage Volume** - (V_s) (acre-feet), calculated as:

$$V_s = (Q_i - Q_o) \cdot \Delta t \cdot 60 \text{ seconds} / (43560 \text{ ft}^2/\text{acre}) \qquad \textbf{(Equation DET-7)}$$

5. **Total cumulative storage volume –** (acre-feet), calculated as the sum of the incremental storage volumes:

$$V_s total = \sum V_s \text{ incremental} \qquad \textbf{(Equation DET-8)}$$

5.1.2.2 Modified Puls Method – For Design of Detention Facilities

To design detention facilities larger than 20,000 ft^3, the Modified Puls method is recommended for reservoir routing for detention facility design. This reservoir routing method calculates an outflow hydrograph for a detention facility based on a given inflow hydrograph and the storage-outflow characteristics of a facility. This method is typically implemented using computer programs such as HEC-HMS, TR-20 or proprietary software packages. Model input is typically a storage-outflow relationship for the detention facility. This section provides background on the Modified Puls method. The description is adapted from *Fundamentals of Hydraulic Engineering Systems* (Hwang and Houghtalen 1996). An example of the Modified Puls method is included with the other examples at the end of this Section (see Section 7.3).

The mathematical basis of Modified Puls routing is the continuity equation (conservation of mass with constant density). Simply stated, the change in storage is equal to inflow minus outflow. In differential format, the equation can be expressed as:

$$\frac{dS}{dt} = I - O$$ **(Equation DET-9)**

Where:

dS/dt = rate of change of storage with respect to time

I = instantaneous inflow

O = instantaneous outflow

If average rates of inflow and outflow are used, an acceptable solution can be obtained over a discrete time step (Δt) using:

$$\frac{\Delta S}{\Delta t} = \bar{I} - \overline{O}$$ **(Equation DET-10)**

Where: ΔS is the storage change over the time step. By assuming linearity of flow across the time step, the storage equation may be expressed as:

$$\Delta S = \left[\frac{(I_i + I_j)}{2} - \frac{(O_i + O_j)}{2}\right] \cdot \Delta t$$ **(Equation DET-11)**

Where the subscripts *i* and *j* designate inflow and outflow at the beginning and end of the time step, respectively.

The storage relationship in Equation DET-11 has two unknowns. Because the inflow hydrograph must be defined prior to performing the routing calculations (using the SCS Unit Hydrograph Method with the Huff rainfall distribution), inflow values (I_i and I_j) are known. Likewise, the time increment (Δt) is chosen, and outflow at the beginning of the time step (O_i) was solved in the previous time step calculations (or specified as an initial value). That leaves the storage increment (ΔS) and the outflow at the end of the time step (O_j) as unknowns. Because both storage and outflow (for uncontrolled outlet devices) are related to the depth of water in the detention facility, they are related to one another. This relationship is employed to compute the solution.

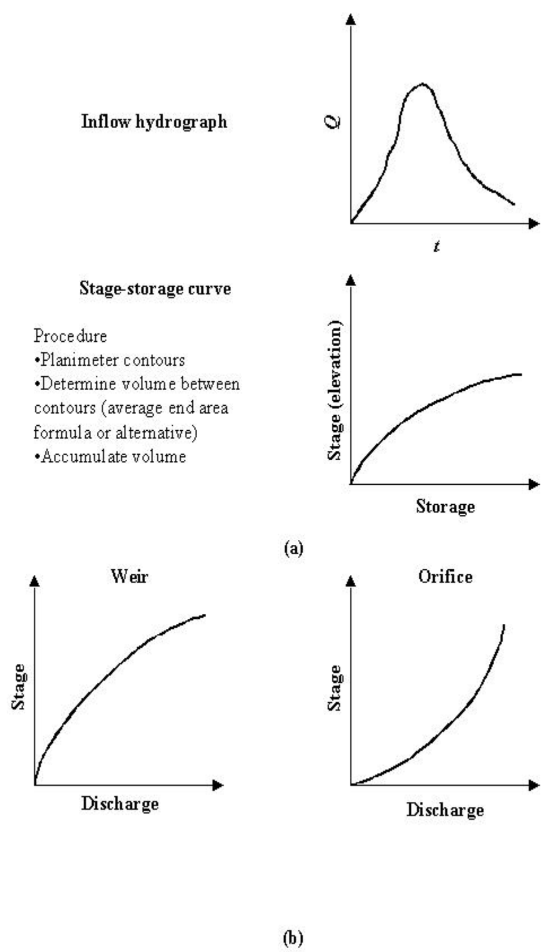
The data requirements to perform Modified Puls reservoir routing include:

1. An inflow hydrograph (determined using the SCS Unit Hydrograph Method as described in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*).

2. A storage versus outflow relationship for the detention facility (see Section 5.2 for outlet works calculations). The stage-storage and stage-outflow relationships may be used to generate the storage-outflow relationship.

Figure DET-2 displays these data requirements graphically. The procedure for obtaining the stage (elevation) versus storage curve is described in the figure. Also, the two basic types of outlet devices (weirs and orifices) are noted with typical stage-discharge relationships.

Figure DET-2
Data Requirements for Storage Routing



(Source: UDFCD USDCM, adapted from Hwang and Houghtalen, 1996)

The Modified Puls routing method reformulates Equation DET-11, as shown by Equation DET-12:

$$(I_i + I_j) + \left[\frac{2S_i}{\Delta t} - O_i\right] = \left[\frac{2S_j}{\Delta t} + O_j\right]$$ **(Equation DET-12)**

Where (S_j-S_i) equals the change in storage (ΔS). The advantage of this expression is that all of the known values are on the left side and all of the unknowns are grouped on the right.

The solution procedure for Modified Puls routing is as follows:

1. Determine the appropriate inflow hydrograph for the detention facility (see Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*).
2. Select a routing interval (Δt). Linearity of inflows and outflows over the time step is assumed.
3. Determine stage-storage relationship for the detention facility.
4. Determine stage-discharge relationship for the outlet device(s) selected (see Section 5.2 for calculations regarding stage-discharge relationship for outlet works).
5. Establish the storage-outflow relationship by setting up a table with the following headings (note that headings b through e correspond with variables in Equation DET-12:
   a. Elevation
   b. Outflow (O)
   c. Storage (S)
   d. $2S/\Delta t$
   e. $2S/\Delta t+O$
4. Plot the ($2S/\Delta t+O$) versus O relationship.
5. Perform routing using a table with the following headings:
   a. Time
   b. Inflow at time step i (I_i)
   c. Inflow at time step j (I_j)
   d. $2S/\Delta t$-O
   e. $2S/\Delta t+O$
   f. Outflow

For an example application of the Modified Puls method, see Section 7.3.

5.2 Outlet Works Design

To maintain peak flow rates at pre-development levels, a multi-frequency outlet design approach is required. The designer must demonstrate that the 1-, 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year post-development peak flow rates are limited to the corresponding pre-development flow rates. The outlet design must be compatible with the calculated volume and volume design for each design event to ensure peak discharges do not exceed pre-development rates for each design event. For example, for the WSE corresponding to the volume calculated for the 10-year event, the outlet should be designed to discharge no greater than the 10-year pre-development peak flow rate.

The hydraulic capacity of the various components of the outlet works (i.e., pipes, orifices, weirs) can be determined using standard hydraulic equations described below. (Note: Because the discharge pipe of an outlet works functions as a culvert, the reader is directed to Chapter 4 – *Culvert Hydraulics*, for guidance regarding the calculation of the hydraulic capacity of outlet pipes).

To create a rating curve for an entire outlet, a composite total outlet rating curve can be developed based on the rating curves developed for each of the components of the outlet and then selecting the most restrictive element that controls the release at a given stage.

5.2.1 Orifices

Single or multiple orifices may be used in a detention facility and are commonly used as a low-flow control. The hydraulics of each can be superimposed to develop the outlet rating curve. The basic orifice equation is:

$$Q = C_o A_o (2gH_o)^{0.5}$$ **(Equation DET-13)**

Where:

Q = orifice discharge flow rate (cfs)

C_o = discharge coefficient (use 0.60 for a square-edged, uniform opening, ranging down to 0.4 for a ragged edge orifice)

A_o = area of orifice (ft^2)

H_o = effective head on the orifice (ft)

g = gravitational acceleration (32.2 ft/s^2)

If the orifice discharges as a free outfall, the effective head is measured from the centroid of the orifice to the upstream WSE. If the orifice discharge is submerged, then the effective head is the difference in elevation of the upstream and downstream water surfaces.

5.2.2 Weirs

Several different types of weirs may be used, including:

- Rectangular sharp-crested weirs
- Broad-crested weirs
- Broad-crested slot and v-notch weirs

The methods for calculating the discharge from these types of weirs are described below:

Rectangular Sharp-Crested Weirs: A sharp-crested weir is defined as a weir with a wall thickness of 6 inches or less. The basic equation for a rectangular sharp-crested weir is:

$$Q = CL_{eff}H^{3/2}$$ **(Equation DET-14)**

Where:

Q = Weir discharge (cfs)

H = head above weir crest (excluding velocity head) (ft)

C = weir coefficient (as calculated in Equation DET-16 or DET-17)

L_{eff} =effective horizontal weir length (ft) (as calculated in Equation DET-15 to account for contractions)

$$L_{eff} = L_{total} - 0.1 \cdot N \cdot H$$ **(Equation DET-15)**

Where (for L_{eff}):

L_{total} = the total weir length (ft)

N = number of contracted sides*

*$N = 0$ corresponds to the case of a suppressed rectangular weir, for which the channel width is equal to the weir opening length, and $N=2$ corresponds to the case of a contracted rectangular weir, where both sides of the weir are some distance inward away from the channel edge, narrowing (contracting) the channel width.

The weir coefficient is a function of the head above the weir crest, H, and the height of the weir crest above the basin or channel bottom, H_c. For ratios of H/H_c up to approximately 10, the following equation should be applied to determine C (Debo and Reese 2003):

$$C = 3.237 + 0.428 \cdot \frac{H}{H_c} + 0.0175 \cdot H$$ **(Equation DET-16)**

For ratios of H/H_c greater than 15, the weir coefficient is found using:

$$C = 5.68(1 + \frac{H_c}{H})^{1.5}$$ **(Equation DET-17)**

For ratios of H/H_c between 10 and 15, the designer should interpolate between Equations DET-16 and DET-17.

Broad-Crested Weirs: The equation for a broad-crested weir is:

$$Q = CLH^{3/2}$$ **(Equation DET-18)**

Where:

Q = Weir discharge (cfs)

C = Broad-crested weir coefficient (from Table DET-2)

L = Broad-crested weir length (ft) (For weirs with tapered sides, it is acceptable to use a length equal to the average of the upper and lower weir lengths.)

H = Head above weir crest (ft)

Broad-Crested Slot and V-Notch Weirs: Capacity of broad-crested slot and V-notch weirs shall be determined by the following equation:

$$Q = 0.86H + (3.65W + 5.82z)H^{1/2}$$ **(Equation DET-19)**

(Source: J. Wilson, University of Missouri-Rolla)

In which:

Q = discharge (cfs)

H = upstream head (ponded depth above the slot invert) (ft) (maximum of 6 ft)

W = slot invert width perpendicular to flow (ft) ($0.333<W<2.0$)

z = slope of slot sides expressed in terms of H: V ($0<z<0.6$)

Table DET-2
Broad-Crested Weir Coefficients

Head Above Weir (ft)	C 6-inch thick wall crest	C 8-inch thick wall crest	C 12-inch thick wall crest	C 10-foot thick wall crest
0.2	2.80	2.75	2.69	2.49
0.4	2.92	2.80	2.72	2.56
0.6	3.08	2.89	2.75	2.70
0.8	3.30	3.04	2.85	2.69
1.0	3.32	3.14	2.98	2.68
1.2	3.32	3.20	3.08	2.69
1.4	3.32	3.26	3.20	2.67
1.6	3.32	3.29	3.28	2.64
1.8	3.32	3.32	3.31	2.64
2.0	3.32	3.31	3.30	2.64
2.2	3.32	3.32	3.31	2.64
2.5	3.32	3.32	3.32	2.64
3.0	3.32	3.32	3.32	2.64
3.5	3.32	3.32	3.32	2.64
4.0	3.32	3.32	3.32	2.64

Source: Brater and King, 1976.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

6.0 OTHER DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

6.1 Potential for Multiple Uses

When designing a detention facility, multi-purpose uses, such as active or passive recreation and wildlife habitat, are encouraged in addition to providing the required storage volume. Facilities used for recreation should be designed to inundate no more frequently than every two years.

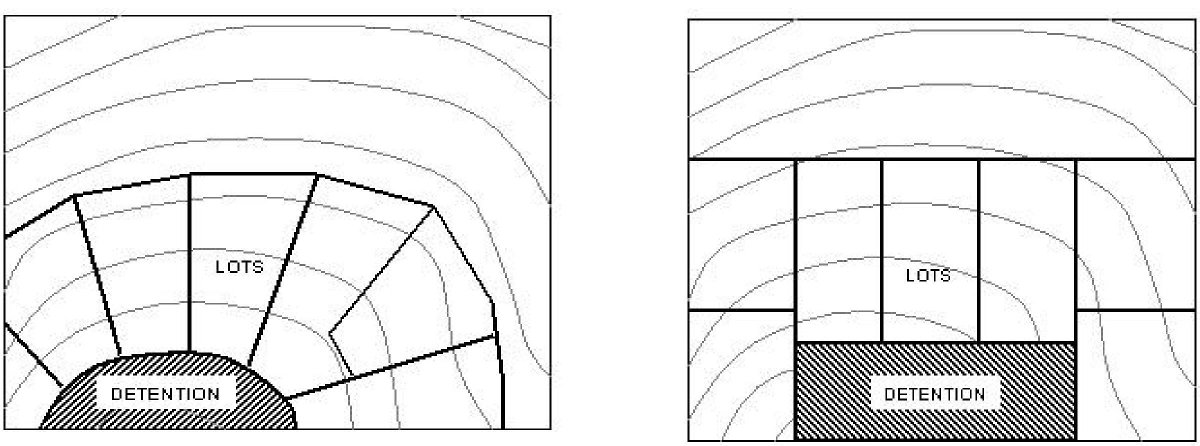
6.2 Detention Basin Location

Detention basins should be located at the natural low point of the site and must discharge to the natural drainage location to minimize downstream impacts.

6.3 Detention Basin Grading

Detention basin grading shall conform to the natural topography of the site to the maximum extent practical. Developments should be laid out around the existing waterways and proposed detention basin (see Figure DET-3). Layouts conforming to existing topography often reduce construction costs, land disturbance and maintenance costs, and increase aesthetic quality. Existing slopes should be used to the maximum extent practical. If slopes are modified, the maximum allowable slope is 3H:1V. Exceptions to these criteria must be justified through engineering studies and are subject to City approval. Significant modifications to existing topography may require geologic impact studies and geotechnical analysis, particularly where shallow bedrock or karst topography is believed to be present.

Figure DET-3
Examples of Good and Bad Location, Grading and Lot Layout for Detention



GOOD GRADING AND LAYOUT

BAD GRADING AND LAYOUT

Source: UDFCD USDCM

6.4 Geometry of Storage Facilities

The geometry of a detention facility depends on specific site conditions such as adjoining land uses, topography, geology, existing natural features, volume requirements, etc. A cross-section of the proposed detention facility shall be provided in the plans showing at a minimum the basin floor profile, top of embankment, spillway elevation, 100-year WSE, normal (WSE) (if applicable), and the outlet works. The following criteria apply to the geometry of detention facilities:

- **Basin side slopes** - Basin side slopes of 3:1 (H:V) are the maximum permissible; slopes between 5H:1V and 10H:1V are encouraged. If slopes steeper than 3H:1V are desired, the engineer must demonstrate why 3H:1V slopes are not feasible and provide an explanation regarding how the steeper slopes will be maintained and how safety concerns will be addressed. Steeper slopes are subject to City approval. For all wet detention facilities, a safety bench sloped at 10:1 and 15 feet wide shall be provided starting at the normal WSE unless a safety fence is provided (see Section 6.11)

- **Basin bottom slopes** – For dry detention basins, the basin bottom slopes must be a minimum of one percent to ensure drainage.

- **Basin shape** - The water quality portion of a facility (if present) should be shaped with a gradual expansion from the inlet and a gradual contraction toward the outlet, thereby minimizing short-circuiting. Culverts and channels shall discharge into the basin at least 50 feet from the basin outlet structure. Storage facility geometry and layout may be developed with input from a land planner/landscape architect.

- **Low-flow channel** - A five-foot-wide concrete low-flow channel shall be provided. However, for water quality basins or wetlands, concrete low-flow channels may not be desirable, in which case alternative materials, as described below, should be discussed with and approved by City staff.

- **Materials** - Hard improvements such as concrete must be used to control the 1-year design flow, except for wetlands or water quality basins where a hard bottom is not desirable. In such cases, a mixture of soil and riprap planted with appropriate vegetation may be used for the low flow channel. Between the 1- and 10-year design flows, hard armor/grass composites may be considered, if velocities are low enough to ensure stability. Above the 10-year water surface, sod, turf reinforcement mat or other composite designs may be used, if they are appropriate for design velocities. Sod is acceptable for velocities less than 4 ft/s. Turf reinforcement mat or other composite materials are acceptable for velocities less than 8 ft/s. For velocities of 8 ft/s or more, a manufactured hard lining, riprap, or other suitable armor material is necessary (see Chapter 7 – *Open Channel Flow*).

6.5 Embankments and Cut Slopes

If the detention storage structure is a jurisdictional facility, meaning it is subject to regulation by the Arkansas Soil and Water Conservation Commission (ASWCC), the embankment shall be designed, constructed, and maintained to meet most current ASWCC criteria for jurisdictional structures. The design for an embankment of a storm water detention or retention storage facility shall be based upon a site-specific engineering evaluation. The embankment shall be designed to prevent catastrophic failure during the 100-year and larger storms. The following criteria frequently apply (ASCE and WEF 1992):

- **Side Slopes**—For ease of maintenance, side slopes of the embankment shall not be steeper than 3:1 (H:V). The embankment's side slopes shall be well vegetated, and riprap protection (or the equivalent) may be necessary to protect it from wave action on the upstream face, especially in retention basins.

- **Emergency Spillway**—An emergency spillway is required to convey the 100-year flow if the primary outlet becomes clogged or for storm events larger than the 100-year event. The spillway shall be designed to accommodate the 100-year flow from the fully developed watershed assuming no upstream detention.

- **Freeboard**—The elevation of the top of the embankment shall be a minimum of one foot above the WSE when the emergency spillway is conveying the maximum design or emergency flow. When relevant, all Arkansas Natural Resources Commission dam safety criteria must be carefully considered when determining the freeboard capacity of an impoundment.

- **Settlement**—The design height of the embankment shall be increased by roughly five percent to account for settlement. All earth fill shall be free from unsuitable materials and organic materials such as grass, turf, brush, roots, and other material subject to decomposition. Fill material in all earth dams and embankments shall be compacted to at least 95 percent of the maximum density obtained from compaction tests performed by the standard Proctor method in ASTM D698.

- **Embankment**—A geotechnical engineer shall provide a stamped report for any embankment over ten feet tall. The City reserves the right to require a report for any embankment between five and ten feet as well. (See Section 6.14)

- **Vegetation**—No trees shall be planted or allowed to grow on a detention facility embankment.

6.6 Linings

Detention facilities may require an impermeable clay or synthetic liner for several reasons. Storm water detention and retention facilities have the potential to raise the groundwater level in the vicinity of the basin. If the basin is close to structures or other facilities that could be damaged by raising the groundwater level, consideration should be given to lining the basin. An impermeable liner may also be warranted in a retention basin where the designer seeks to limit seepage from a permanent basin. Alternatively, there are situations where the designer may seek to encourage seepage of storm water into the ground. In this situation, a layer of permeable material may be warranted.

6.7 Inlets and Forebays

Inlets to the facility should incorporate energy dissipation to limit erosion and should be designed in accordance with drop structure criteria in Chapter 7 – *Open Channel Flow Design*, or by using other approved energy dissipation techniques. In addition, forebays or sediment traps should be incorporated at inflow points to storage facilities to settle sediment being delivered by stormwater to the facility.

A forebay, while optional, should be considered when the design volume exceeds 20,000 ft^3 or a large sediment, trash, or debris load is anticipated due to upstream land use. A forebay provides an opportunity for larger particles to settle out in the inlet area, which has a solid surface bottom to facilitate mechanical sediment removal. The forebay volume for the extended dry detention basin should be between three and five percent of the design volume. Forebays will need regular maintenance to reduce the sediment being transported and deposited on the storage basin's bottom.

6.8 Outlet Works

Outlet works shall be sized and structurally designed to release at the specified flow rates without structural or hydraulic failure.

6.9 Vegetation

The type of vegetation specified for a newly constructed storage facility is a function of several factors, including:

- The frequency and duration of inundation of the area
- Soil types
- The desire for native versus non-native vegetation
- Other potential uses of the area (e.g., park, open space, etc.)

- Dry detention basins shall be sodded up to the top of bank. Wet detention basins shall be sodded from the top of bank to the normal WSE.

A planting plan should be developed by a landscape architect for new facilities to meet their intended use and setting in the urban landscape. Shrubs are not recommended, and trees are not allowed on dams or fill embankments.

6.10 Public Safety Concerns

For retention basins (i.e., a basin that typically has a permanent pool), the basin must either have a safety bench or be surrounded by a minimum 48-inch tall wrought iron fence or equivalent, as approved by City.

For detention basins (i.e., a basin that is generally dry), and especially if children are apt to play in the vicinity of the impoundment, use of relatively flat side slopes along the banks is advisable. In addition, installation of landscaping that will discourage entry (such as thick, thorny shrubs) is suggested for locations along the periphery, near the inlets, and at steeper embankment sections.

The use of thin steel plates as sharp-crested weirs are prohibited because of potential accidents, especially with children.

If the impoundment is situated adjacent to and at the same or a lower grade than a street or highway, installation of a guardrail between the roadway and the basin is required.

Consideration shall be given for safety at outlet structures. The City reserves the right to require safety appurtenances at outlet structures.

6.11 Operations and Maintenance

Maintenance considerations during design include the following (ASCE and WEF 1992):

1. **Maintenance access** - The facility shall be accessible to maintenance equipment for removal of silt and debris and for repair of damages that may occur over time. An access easement and/or right-of-way is required to allow access to the impoundment by the owner or agency responsible for maintenance. The access shall have a maximum grade of ten percent and have a solid driving surface of gravel, asphalt, concrete, or reinforced turf on a stabilized bed designed to support vehicle loads.

2. **Sediment removal considerations** - Permanent basins shall have provisions for complete drainage for sediment removal or other maintenance. The frequency of sediment removal will vary among facilities, depending on the original volume set aside for sediment, the rate of

accumulation, rate of growth of vegetation, drainage area erosion control measures, and the desired aesthetic appearance of the basin. Sediment should be removed when its depth accumulates to six inches. Also, appearance may dictate more frequent cleaning.

3. **Sediment concerns** - Secondary uses that are incompatible with sediment deposits should not be planned unless a high level of maintenance will be provided. French drains or the equivalent are almost impossible to maintain and should be used with discretion where sediment loads are apt to be high.

4. **Dissolved oxygen concentrations in basin** - Adequate dissolved oxygen supply in permanent basins (to minimize odors and other nuisances) shall be maintained by artificial aeration. Use of fertilizer and pesticides adjacent to the permanent pool basin should be carefully controlled.

5. **Underground tank maintenance** - Underground tanks or conduits designed for detention shall be sized and designed to permit pumping. Multiple entrance points shall be provided to remove accumulated sediment and trash.

6. **Permanent pool depth** - Permanent pools shall have a minimum depth of six feet to discourage excessive aquatic vegetation on the bottom of the basin, unless the vegetation is specifically provided for water quality purposes.

7. **Aesthetics and landscaping** - Trash racks and/or fences are often used to minimize hazards. These may become eyesores, trap debris, impede flows, hinder maintenance, and, ironically, fail to prevent access to the outlet. On the other hand, desirable conditions can be achieved through careful design and positioning of the structure, as well as through landscaping that will discourage access. Creative designs, integrated with innovative landscaping, can be safe and can also enhance the appearance of the outlet and basin. In addition, bank slopes, bank protection, and vegetation types are important design considerations for site aesthetics and maintainability.

8. **Avoid moving parts** - To reduce maintenance and avoid operational problems, outlet structures should be designed with no moving parts (i.e., use only pipes, orifices, and weirs). Manually and/or electrically operated gates should be avoided and must be approved by City staff during the design concept stage of development.

9. **Outlet openings** - To reduce maintenance, outlets should be designed with openings as large as possible, be compatible with the depth-outflow relationships desired, and be designed with water quality, safety, and aesthetic objectives in mind.

10. **Resistant to vandalism** - Outlets should be robustly designed to lessen the chances of damage from debris or vandalism.

11. **Maintenance of forebays and sediment traps** - Clean out all forebays and sediment traps on a regular basis or when routine inspection shows them to be three-quarters full.

6.12 Access

All-weather, stable access to the bottom, inflow, forebay, and outlet works areas shall be provided for maintenance vehicles. Maximum grades should be ten percent, and a solid driving surface of gravel, asphalt, concrete, or reinforced turf on a stabilized bed designed to support vehicle loads.

6.13 Geotechnical Considerations

The designer must account for the geotechnical conditions of the site. These considerations may include issues related to embankment stability, geologic hazards, seepage, and other site-specific issues such as karst topography. It may be necessary to confer with a qualified geotechnical engineer during both design and construction, especially for larger detention and retention storage facilities.

A geotechnical engineer shall provide a stamped design for any embankment ten feet or more in height. This design shall include, but may not be limited to, minimum factors of safety for stability (including global stability). The City may require a design for embankments five to ten feet in height. Unless otherwise shown, dam embankments shall be compacted at 95% standard Proctor within ± 2% of optimum moisture content.

6.14 Environmental Permitting and Other Considerations

The designer must account for environmental considerations surrounding the facility and the site during its selection, design and construction. These can include regulatory questions such as: 1) Will the facility be located in a jurisdictional wetland?, or 2) Will the facility be located on a waterway regulated by the USACE as a “Water of the U.S.,” and 3) Are there threatened/endangered species or habitat in the area? See Chapter 1 – *Submittal Requirements* for more information on regulatory and permitting requirements.

Other non-regulatory environmental issues should also be considered. Detention facilities can become breeding grounds for mosquitoes unless they are properly designed, constructed, and maintained. Area residents may object to facilities that impact riparian habitat or wetlands. Considerations of this kind must be carefully accounted for, and early discussions with relevant federal, state, and local regulators are recommended.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

7.0 EXAMPLES

7.1 Rational Formula-Based Modified FAA Procedure Example

Use the Rational Formula-Based Modified FAA Procedure (described in Section 5.1.1) to determine the required detention volume for the 100-year storm event for a 40-acre watershed, based on single-family land use. The watershed has a 100-year runoff coefficient of 0.56 and a time of concentration of 25 minutes. The post-development 100-year, undetained peak flow rate from the watershed is 157 cfs. The pre-project 100-year peak flow rate for the site is 90 cfs.

Given the information above, the following variables are known:

A = 40 acres

C = 0.56

Q_{po} = 90 cfs

t_c = 25 minutes

Following the methodology outlined in Section 5.1.1, Table DET-3 can be created to determine the required detention volume.

The required detention volume is determined from the maximum storage volume (see column 7 in Table DET-3). For this example, the required detention volume is 110,832 ft^3 or 2.5 acre-feet (see shaded cell in Table DET-3). Because this volume exceeds the 20,000-ft^3 threshold for applicability of the FAA method for final detention sizing, this should be treated as an initial estimate, and a hydrograph-based method should be used to determine detention storage requirements.

Table DET-3

Rational Formula-Based Modified FAA Procedure Example

Rainfall Duration (min)	Rainfall Intensity (in/hr)	Inflow Volume (ft^3)	Outflow Adjustment Factor	Calculated Average Outflow (cfs)	Calculated Outflow Volume (ft^3)	Required Storage Volume (ft^3)
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
0	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
5	11.76	79027	1.00	90	27000	52027
10	10.32	138701	1.00	90	54000	84701
15	8.84	178214	1.00	90	81000	97214
20	7.91	212621	1.00	90	108000	104621
25	7.2	241920	1.00	90	135000	106920
30	6.4	258048	0.92	82.5	148500	109548
35	5.8	272832	0.86	77.1	162000	110832
40	5.32	286003	0.81	73.1	175500	110503
45	4.95	299376	0.78	70	189000	110376
50	4.58	307776	0.75	67.5	202500	105276
55	4.26	314899	0.73	65.4	216000	98899
60	4.03	324979	0.71	63.8	229500	95479
65	3.78	330221	0.69	62.3	243000	87221
70	3.6	338688	0.68	61.1	256500	82188
75	3.47	349776	0.67	60	270000	79776
80	3.35	360192	0.66	59.1	283500	76692
85	3.23	368995	0.65	58.2	297000	71995
90	3.11	376186	0.64	57.5	310500	65686
95	2.98	380486	0.63	56.8	324000	56486
100	2.86	384384	0.63	56.2	337500	46884
105	2.74	386669	0.62	55.7	351000	35669
110	2.62	387341	0.61	55.2	364500	22841
115	2.49	384854	0.61	54.8	378000	6854
120	2.37	382234	0.60	54.4	391500	0

Notes:

Column (1) Storm duration (t) in 5-minute increments (typical)

Column (2) Intensity for storm duration (t) from intensity-duration-frequency table in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*. Notes: Values shown are for example only and do not match the table in Chapter 3. Some values in this column will be obtained from linear interpolation of tabular data.

Column (3) =C*Col (2)*A*60*Col (1) = 0.56*Col(2)*40*60*Col (1) [Equation DET-1]

Column (4) = 0.5*(1+[tc/Col (1)]) = 0.5*(1+[25/Col (1)]) [Equation DET-2]

Column (5) = Col (4)*Qpo = Col (4)*90 [Equation DET-3]

Column (6) = Col (5)*60*Col (1) [Equation DET-4]

Column (7) = Col (3) – Col (6) [Equation DET-5]

Shaded cell in Column 7 denotes maximum required detention volume using the Modified FAA Procedure.

7.2 Hydrograph Volumetric Method Example

Use the Hydrograph Volumetric method (described in Section 5.1.2.1) to determine the preliminary detention volume required, given an inflow hydrograph for a 20-acre commercial site (calculated according to guidelines in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*) and a maximum allowable release rate of 30 cfs.

The tabular format for use with the inflow hydrograph method is shown in Table DET-4 below. The time and flow ordinates of the inflow hydrograph are entered in columns 1 and 2. Based on the inflow hydrograph, the allowable release rate of 30 cfs is matched on the falling limb at a time between 102 and 108 minutes, so 108 minutes is used as an estimate for T_p.

Table DET-4
Simplified Detention Volume Calculation Example

Time (min)	Inflow Hydrograph (cfs)	Outflow Hydrograph (cfs)	Incremental Storage Volume (ac-ft)	Cumulative Storage Volume (ac-ft)
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
0	0	0	0.00	0.00
6	0	2	0.00	0.00
12	5	3	0.02	0.02
18	41	5	0.30	0.31
24	97	7	0.75	1.06
30	128	8	0.99	2.05
36	130	10	0.99	3.05
42	122	12	0.91	3.95
48	107	13	0.78	4.73
54	91	15	0.63	5.36
60	77	17	0.50	5.86
66	66	18	0.40	6.26
72	56	20	0.30	6.56
78	45	22	0.19	6.75
84	37	23	0.12	6.87
90	33	25	0.07	6.94
96	31	27	0.04	6.98
102	30	28	0.02	7.00
108	30	30	0.00	7.00
114	28			

Columns (1) & (2) Input from SCS Unit Hydrograph analysis with Huff distribution

Column (3) = (T/Tp)*Qpo = (Col(1)/108)*30 [Equation DET-6]

Column (4) = ((Col (2) – Col (3))*60*6)/43560. (includes unit conversion). <u>Note</u>: if Col (2) – Col (3) < 0, then Col (4) = 0.

Column (5) = (Col (5) Row (i-1)) + (Col (4) Row (i))

7.3 Modified Puls Method - Reservoir Routing Example

Use the Modified Puls Method (described in Section 5.1.2.2) to determine the outflow hydrograph for a proposed detention facility. Given the inflow hydrograph from the example in 7.2 for a 20-acre commercial site, a detention basin with the stage-storage relationship in Table DET-5 is proposed.

Table DET-5
Stage-Storage Relationship for Detention Facility

Stage (elevation [ft] above mean sea level)	Storage (acre feet)
1320	0
1321	0.5
1322	1.5
1323	4.0
1324	7.0
1325	10.0

The stage-outflow relationship for the detention facility outlet structure (determined from hydraulic analysis) is summarized in Table DET-6.

Table DET-6
Stage-Outflow Relationship for Detention Facility

Stage (elevation [ft] above mean sea level)	Outflow (cfs)
1320	0
1321	5
1322	10
1323	20
1324	30
1325	40

The following steps are used to determine the outflow hydrograph for this proposed facility:

1. **Determine the inflow hydrograph -** The inflow hydrograph should be developed following guidance in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*.

2. **Select a routing interval (Δt) -** A rule of thumb for selecting the routing interval is to divide the rising limb of the hydrograph into ten increments. Since it takes about 40 minutes for the hydrograph to peak, use a routing interval of 4 minutes.

3. **Storage-outflow relationship** - Establish the storage-outflow relationship as shown in Table DET-7:

Table DET-7
Storage-Outflow Relationship for Detention Facility

Stage (elevation [ft] above mean sea level)	Outflow (*O*) (cfs)	Storage (*S*) (acre-feet)	*2S/Δt* (cfs)	*2S/Δt + O* (cfs)
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
1320	0	0.0	0	0
1321	5	0.5	182	187
1322	10	1.5	545	555
1323	20	4.0	1452	1472
1324	30	7.0	2541	2571
1325	40	10.0	3630	3670

Columns (1) and (2) from Table DET-5

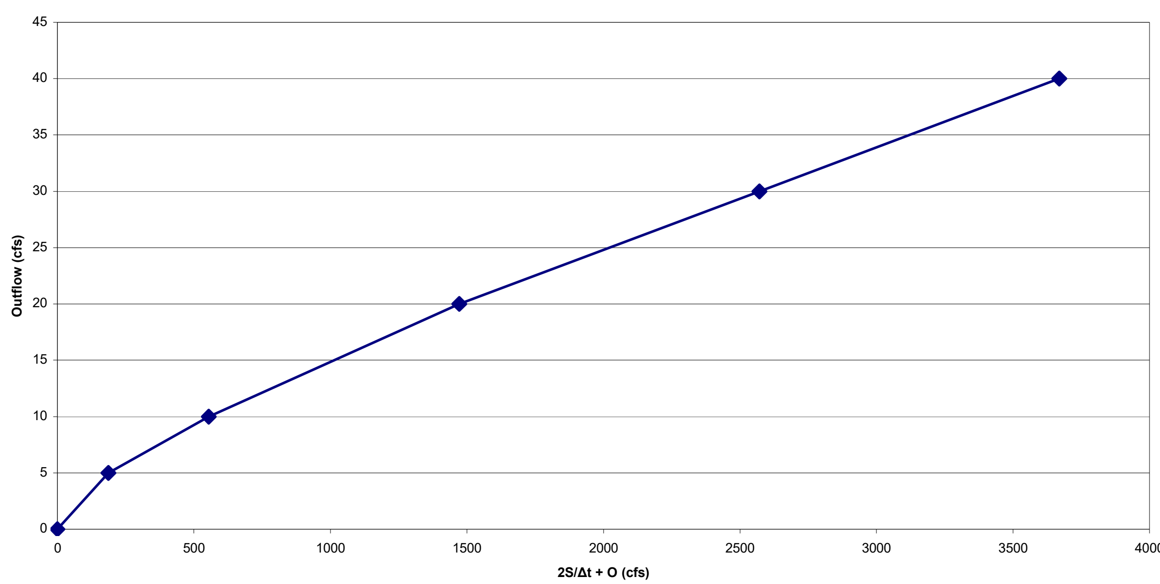
Columns (1) and (3) from Table DET-6

Column (4) = 2S/Δt*(unit conversion) = 2*Col (3)/(4 min * 60 sec/min)* (43560 ft^2/acre)

Column (5) = Col (4) + Col (2)

4. **Plot the (*2S/Δt*) + *O* versus *O* relationship** - Plot values from Table DET-7. This relationship is shown in Figure DET-4.

Figure DET-4
2S/Δt +O versus O for Reservoir Routing Example



5. **Perform the Modified-Puls routing using a table:**

An example of the Modified-Puls routing method is shown in Table DET-8. Table heading descriptions are provided following the table.

Table DET-8
Modified Puls Routing Table

Time (min)	Inflow (I_i) (cfs)	Inflow (I_j) (cfs)	$2S/\Delta t - O$ (cfs)	$2S/\Delta t + O$ (cfs)	Outflow (O) (cfs)
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
0	0.00	0.01	0	--	0
4	0.01	0.59	0.01	0.01	0.0006
8	0.59	5.40	0.59	0.62	0.02
12	5.40	25.61	6.23	6.58	0.18
16	25.61	60.13	35.24	37.23	1.00
20	60.13	97.40	114.48	120.97	3.24
24	97.40	121.10	259.69	272.01	6.16
28	121.10	130.28	460.26	478.19	8.96
32	130.28	130.03	688.22	711.64	11.71
36	130.03	124.85	919.94	948.53	14.29
40	124.85	117.18	1141.29	1174.81	16.76
44	117.18	107.44	1345.25	1383.32	19.03
48	107.44	96.71	1528.09	1569.87	20.89
52	96.71	86.37	1687.50	1732.24	22.37
56	86.37	77.29	1823.33	1870.58	23.63
60	77.29	69.90	1937.62	1986.99	24.69
64	69.90	63.07	2033.65	2084.81	25.58
68	63.07	56.02	2113.98	2166.62	26.32
72	56.02	48.75	2179.22	2233.07	26.93
76	48.75	42.31	2229.21	2283.99	27.39
80	42.31	37.42	2264.82	2320.26	27.72
84	37.42	34.42	2288.67	2344.55	27.94
88	34.42	32.54	2304.35	2360.52	28.08
92	32.54	31.38	2314.95	2371.31	28.18
96	31.38	30.72	2322.37	2378.87	28.25
100	30.72	30.30	2327.86	2384.46	28.30
104	30.30	29.96	2332.19	2388.88	28.34
108	29.96	29.24	2335.70	2392.46	28.38
112	29.24	26.98	2338.11	2394.90	28.40
116	26.98	24.08	2337.55	2394.33	28.39
120	24.08	21.58	2331.93	2388.61	28.34
124	21.58	19.40	2321.11	2377.59	28.24
128	19.40	16.20	2305.90	2362.09	28.10
132	16.20	11.82	2285.67	2341.49	27.91
136	11.82	7.66	2258.37	2313.69	27.66
140	7.66	4.56	2223.20	2277.86	27.33
144	4.56	2.83	…	…	…

For Table DET-8, columns 1-3 are known inputs into the table. The remaining columns are unknown (blank) when the routing process begins. The objective is to complete the last column, which represents the outflow hydrograph. Inputs and calculations for each column include:

- **Column 1** (time) and **Column 2** (inflow) provide the design inflow hydrograph (obtained using methods described in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*).
- **Column 3** is the value from Column 2 moved earlier in time (up the table) one time increment.
- **Column 4**: To initiate the routing process with little or no inflow, assume the initial value is 0. The next value of $2S_j/\Delta t - O_j$ confirms this assumption. Subsequent values of $(2S/\Delta t) - O$ are calculated by doubling the outflow values in column 6 and subtracting them from $(2S/\Delta t) + O$.
- **Column 5**: The values in column 5 are calculated by applying the continuity equation (storage relationship) in Equation DET-20:

$$(I_i + I_j) + \left[\frac{2S_i}{\Delta t} - O_i\right] = \left[\frac{2S_j}{\Delta t} + O_j\right]$$ **(Equation DET-20)**

  for the first time increment (4 minutes), this is: $(0 + 0.01) + [0] = [0.01]$,

- **Column 6**: The first value of outflow is assumed to be equal to inflow. Subsequent values are obtained from the $(2S/\Delta t) + O$ versus O relationship in Figure DET-4 and Table DET-8. Linear interpolation can be used to determine O values for a given $(2S/\Delta t) + O$ using Table DET-8 for values that cannot be easily read from Figure DET-4 (for the first row of Column 6, see Step 2 above)

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

8.0 REFERENCES

American Society of Civil Engineers and the Water Environment Federation (ASCE and WEF). 1992. *Design and Construction of Urban Storm water Management Systems.* New York: American Society of Civil Engineers and the Water Environment Federation.

Brater, E.F. and King, H.W. 1976. *Handbook of Hydraulics for the Solution of Hydraulic Engineering Problems*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Debo, T. N. and A.J. Reese. 2003. *Municipal Storm Water Management.* Second Edition. New York: Lewis Publishers.

Federal Aviation Administration (FAA). 1966. *Airport Drainage*. Washington, DC: Federal Aviation Administration.

Guo, J.C.Y. 1999a. Detention Storage Volume for Small Urban Catchments. *Journal of Water Resources Planning and Management,* 125(6): 380-384.

Guo, J.C.Y. 1999b. *Storm Water System Design*. Denver, CO: University of Colorado at Denver.

Hwang, N.H.C. and R.J. Houghtalen. 1996. *Fundamentals of Hydraulic Engineering Systems*. Third Edition. New Jersey: Prentice Hall.

CHAPTER 6. STORM SEWER SYSTEM DESIGN

CONTENTS

TABLES

FIGURES

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Purpose of the Chapter

The intent of this chapter of the *Manual* is to give concise, practical guidelines for the design of urban storm water collection and conveyance systems. Procedures and equations are presented for the hydraulic design of storm sewer systems, locating inlets and determining capture capacity and efficiency, and sizing storm sewers. In addition, examples are provided to illustrate the hydraulic design process. Spreadsheet solutions accompany the hand calculations for most example problems.

Chapter Summary

Proper sizing and placement of stormwater capture and conveyance structures is pivotal in the handling of stormwater runoff in urban areas. The primary function of stormwater collection and conveyance systems is to collect excess stormwater from street gutters, convey the excess stormwater through storm sewers and along the street right-of-way or drainage easements, and discharge it into a detention basin, water quality best management practice (BMP), or the nearest receiving water body (FHWA 1996). The main premise of urban stormwater systems is to minimize disruption to the natural drainage system, promote safe passage of vehicular traffic during minor storm events, maintain public safety and manage flooding during major storm events, preserve and protect the urban stream environment, and minimize capital and maintenance costs of the stormwater collection system. To ensure these measures are met, consistent and strategic use of accepted and proven design methodology for sizing and placing stormwater capture and conveyance structures is required. Within this section of the *Manual* the City of Tontitown addresses specific stormwater system design methods and system requirements that have been deemed acceptable and compatible with the type of transportation system and stormwater system characteristic within the City.

Urban stormwater collection and conveyance systems are comprised of three primary components: (1) street gutters and roadside swales, (2) stormwater inlets, and (3) storm sewers (and appurtenances like manholes, junctions, bends and transitions, etc.). Street gutters and roadside swales collect runoff from the street (and adjacent areas) and convey the runoff to a stormwater inlet while maintaining the street's level-of-service.

Inlets collect stormwater from streets and other land surfaces, transition the flow into storm sewers, and often provide maintenance access to the storm sewer system. Storm sewers convey stormwater in excess of a street's or a swale's capacity along the right-of-way and discharge it into a stormwater management facility or a nearby receiving water body. All of these components must be designed properly to achieve the stormwater collection and conveyance system's objectives. This chapter of the

Manual spells out the steps involved in the design and evaluation of the three primary components mentioned above.

The design procedures presented in this chapter are based upon fundamental hydrologic and hydraulic design concepts. The design equations provided are well accepted and widely used. They are presented without derivations or detailed explanation, but are properly referenced if the reader wishes to study their background. Therefore, it is assumed the reader has a fundamental understanding of basic hydrology and hydraulics. A working knowledge of the Rational Equation (Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*) and open channel hydraulics (Chapter 7 – *Open Channel Flow*) is particularly helpful.

Summary of Critical Design Criteria

The summary below outlines some of the most critical design criteria essential to design engineers for proper drainage design of streets, inlets, and storm sewers according to City of Tontitown's requirements. The information below contains exact numerical criteria as well as general guidelines that must be adhered to during the design process. This section is meant to be a summary of critical design criteria for this section; however, the engineer is responsible for all information in this chapter. It should be noted that any design engineer who is not familiar with Tontitown's Drainage Criteria Manual and its accepted design techniques and methodology should review the entirety of this chapter. If additional specific information is required, it will be necessary to review the appropriate section as needed.

1.0 STREET DRAINAGE

Stormwater Flow – Pavement Encroachment and Curb Depth Standards for the Minor Storm, 10-yr Return Frequency

- Refer to Section 1.2 for more detailed information/explanation/derivation
- Refer to Table ST-1 for more detailed information/explanation
- Refer to Section 1.3.1 for allowable gutter flow.

Street Class	Street Width	Depth at Curb	Maximum Encroachment	Maximum Width of Gutter Flow (Typical Section)
Local	29 ft	No overtopping	Half of roadway width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) to remain clear.	≤ 7.25 ft
Collector	44 ft	No overtopping	Half of roadway width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) to remain clear.	≤ 11.00 ft
Minor Arterial	44 ft	No overtopping	Half of roadway width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) to remain clear.	≤ 11.00 ft
Principal Arterial	59 ft	No overtopping	Half of roadway width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) to remain clear.	≤ 14.75 ft
Boulevard	Varies	No overtopping	Half of roadway width (F.O.C to F.O.C) to remain clear in each direction.	Varies

* Note: Maximum width of gutter flow will be reduced for Collector and Arterial streets if a non-boulevard section is approved by the Planning Board. Street widths shown are face of curb to face of curb.

Stormwater Flow – Curb Depth and Street Inundation Standards for the Major Storm, 100-yr Return Frequency

- Refer to Section 1.2 for more detailed information/explanation
- Refer to Table ST-2 for more detailed information/explanation

Street Class	Maximum Depth and Inundated Area
Local & Collector	- Residential dwellings and public, commercial, and industrial buildings ≥ 12 inches above the 100-year flood at the ground line or lowest water entry of the building. - Depth of water at curb ≤ 18 inches. - Min. F.F.E. ≥ 12 inches above gutter line.
Minor Arterial Principal Arterial & Boulevard	- Residential dwellings and public, commercial, and industrial buildings ≥ 12 inches above the 100-year flood at the ground line or lowest water entry of the building. - The depth of water shall not exceed the street crown to allow operation of emergency vehicles. Depth of water at curb ≤ 12 inches. - Min. F.F.E. ≥ 12 inches above gutter line.

Allowable Stormwater Flow Through Cross-Street/Intersection

- Refer to Section 1.2 for more detailed information/explanation
- Refer to Table ST-3 for more detailed information/explanation

Street Class	Minor (10-yr) Storm Flow Depth	Major (100-yr) Storm Flow Depth
Local	≤ 6 inches in cross pan	≤ 12 inches above gutter flow line.
Collector	Where cross pans allowed, ≤ 4 inches in cross pan	≤ 12 inches above gutter flow line.
Minor Arterial	None	No cross flow through intersection or across a street. Max depth at upstream gutter ≤ 12 inches
Principal Arterial	None	No cross flow through intersection or across a street. Max depth at upstream gutter ≤ 12 inches
Boulevard	None	No cross flow through intersection or across a street. Max depth at upstream gutter ≤ 12 inches

Physical Constraints for Curb and Gutter

- Minimum Longitudinal Grade = 0.50%
- Standard Cross Slope = 2.00% for Collectors, Minor and Principal Arterials, and Boulevards; 3.00% for Local streets.
- Maximum Velocity of Curb Flow ≤ 7 ft/sec at ≤ 3 inches of depth
- Typical Manning's n-value = 0.015 (see pg. ST-13)
- Refer to Section 1.3.2 for more detailed information/explanation

Physical Constraints for Roadside Swales

- Maximum 10-year flow velocity ≤ 4 ft/sec
- Maximum Longitudinal Grade of a Grass-lined Swale ≤ 2.00%. Use grade control checks if adjacent street is steeper to limit the swale's flow.
- Maximum Flow Depth ≤ 12 inches
- Maximum Side Slope ≤ 3H:1V
- Refer to Section 1.3.3 for more detailed information/explanation

2.0 STORM DRAIN INLETS

Inlet Types and Applicable Settings

- Refer to Section 2.1 for more detailed information/explanation
- See Table ST-5 for more detailed information/explanation

Inlet Type	Applicable Setting	Advantages	Disadvantages
Grate	Sumps and continuous grades (must be bicycle safe)	Perform well over wide range of grades	Can become clogged Lose some capacity with increasing grade
Curb-opening	Sumps and continuous grades (but not steep grades)	Do not clog easily Bicycle safe	Lose capacity with increasing grade
Combination	Sumps and continuous grades (must be bicycle safe)	High capacity Do not clog easily	More expensive than grate or curb-opening acting alone
Slotted	Locations where sheet flow must be intercepted.	Intercept flow over wide section	Susceptible to clogging
Area Inlet	Sumps or a lower point on a site where runoff can be efficiently collected	Do not clog easily Bicycle safe	Protrude above ground and are limited to certain locations (such as yards, etc.)

Physical Constraints for Storm Drain Inlets / Junction Boxes

- Refer to Section 3.3.2 for more detailed information/explanation.
- Inlets and junction boxes shall have 24-inch diameter manway opening, and the lids shall have City of Tontitown logo and fish. Rings and lids shall be heavy duty, traffic rated when in traffic areas or right-of-way.
- Inlet curb-opening lengths shall be in 4-foot increments. The one exception shall be that curb inlets with a 5-foot interior diameter may have a 5-foot opening if they do not have extensions.
- Inlets / junction boxes shall be sized as shown in the following table (same as Table ST-11).
- Inlets / junction boxes shall be HL-93 traffic rated if in right-of-way or traffic areas.

Inlet / Junction Box Sizing

Storm Sewer Pipe Diameter at Outlet End (inches)	Inlet / Junction Box Min. Interior Diameter / Width (feet)
18	4
21 to 42	5
48 to 54	6
60 and larger	To be approved by City
Multiple storm sewer (STS) pipes entering structure	Provide 12 inches (min.) between each STS and six inches (min.) between the outside edge of the STS and interior wall of the inlet/junction box

Inlet Spacing

- Refer to Section 3.3.2 for more detailed information/explanation
- Space inlets so as <u>not to exceed the allowable encroachment</u> widths as defined in Table ST-1
- Space inlets so that a <u>carryover flow between 20- to 40-percent</u> occurs at each inlet on grade
- Inlets / junction boxes shall be spaced at a maximum as shown in the following table (same as Table ST-10).

Inlet / Junction Box Spacing Based on Storm Sewer Pipe Size

Vertical Dimension of Pipe (and equivalent Box Culvert Height) (inches)	Maximum Allowable Distance Between Inlet / Junction Boxes and/or Cleanout Points (feet)
18 to 36	400
42 and larger	500

Inlets Located in Sumps and "Flat" Grades

- Refer to Section 2.3.5 for more detailed information/explanation
- Inlets located on grades ≤ 1.0% and at sumps:
  - …shall not have a grate inlet acting as the sole inlet.
  - …shall have a minimum curb opening of 12 feet.
  - …shall have positive drainage in some form provided to convey/collect any ponded water that could result from a 100% clogged inlet.

Inlet Clogging Factors

- Refer to Section 2.3.6 for more detailed information/explanation
- Inlets in a Sump:
  - <u>Single Grate Inlet</u> – 50% reduction
  - <u>Combination-Curb Inlet</u> – 30% reduction
  - <u>Single Curb-Opening Inlet</u> – 20% reduction
  - <u>Multiple-Unit Street Inlet</u> – use clogging coefficient(s)/factor(s) and methodology as defined in Table ST-8 in Section 2.3.6
- Inlets on Grade:
  - <u>Single Grate Inlet</u> – 25% reduction
  - <u>Combination-Curb Inlet</u> – 25% reduction

3.0 STORM SEWERS

Storm Sewer Pipe Shape

- Refer to Section 3.3.1 for more detailed information/explanation.
- <u>Circular</u> – preferred shape
- <u>Horizontal elliptical</u> – must be hydraulically equivalent to the round pipe size
- <u>Arch</u> – must be hydraulically equivalent to the round pipe size
- <u>Box</u>

Storm Sewer Pipe Material

- Refer to Section 3.3.1 for more detailed information/explanation.

- Reinforced Concrete Pipe (RCP)
  - RCP shall be used in all street right-of-way areas and under all traffic areas (including parking lots, driveways, etc. that are outside of right-of-way).
  - RCP shall conform to:
    - Circular pipe - AASHTO M 170/ASTM C-76
    - Arch pipe - AASHTO M 206/ASTM C-506
    - Elliptical Pipe - AASHTO M 207/ASTM C507
  - All STS pipe having a diameter of 36 inches or greater shall be RCP.
  - Minimum two feet of cover in traffic areas.
  - Minimum one foot of cover in all other areas.
  - RCP must meet ASTM Class III specifications
- Corrugated Metal Pipe (CMP) [including Smooth Lined (SLCMP)]
  - CMP can be used in areas outside of street right-of-way, but shall not be used under traffic areas.
  - CMP shall conform to:
    - Galvanized Steel - AASHTO M218/ASTM A929; AASHTO M36/ASTM A760 and AASHTO Section 12/ASTM A796
    - Aluminized Steel Type 2 – AASHTO M274/ASTM A929; AASHTO M36/ASTM A760 and AASHTO Section 12/ASTM A796
    - Aluminum – AASHTO M197/ASTM B744; AASHTO M196/ASTM B745 and AASHTO Section 12/ASTM B790
  - CMP shall have a minimum cover of two feet.
  - All STS pipe having a diameter of 36 inches or greater shall be RCP.
- Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe (CPP) [including Smooth Lined (SLCPP)]
  - CPP may not be used:
    - …in City right-of-way
    - …under traffic areas

    - …in City drainage easements
    - …to convey water through a development from properties upstream
    - …on properties where drainage structures are maintained by a residential POA

- All STS pipe having a diameter of 36 inches or greater <u>shall be</u> RCP.
- CPP up to 30 inches can be used in areas outside of the right-of-way and outside of city drainage easements.
- CPP shall conform to AASHTO M 294, Type S specification / ASTM F2648, ASTMD3350 and ASTMF2306.
- CPP shall have a minimum cover of two feet.

Storm Sewer Pipe Physical and Operational Constraints

- Refer to Section 3.3.1 for more detailed information/explanation
- All STS pipe having a diameter ≥ 36 inches <u>must be</u> RCP.
- <u>Minimum Pipe Size</u> = 18 inches
- <u>Minimum Pipe Slope</u> = 0.40%
- <u>Design storm frequency</u> = 10-year design storm
- <u>Maximum design flow capacity at Design Storm Frequency (10-yr)</u> = 80% full flow capacity
- Two feet below ground surface (gutter line) to Hydraulic Grade Line (HGL).
- Design shall manage <u>100-year storm runoff</u> so that it is contained within 6” of the gutter line or a drainage easement and adjacent properties are protected from damage.
- <u>Minimum Flow Velocity flowing under Design Storm (10-yr) Capacity</u> = 3.0 ft/sec
- <u>Maximum Flow Velocity flowing under any design storm and capacity</u> = 12 ft/sec. Greater than 12 ft/sec. can be accepted on a case by case basis as approved by the city engineer.
- <u>Maximum Pipe Cover</u> shall be per Manufacturer’s recommendation or Arkansas Department of Transportation (ARDOT) standards, whichever is more restrictive.
- Assume full flow conditions for discharge into an existing storm sewer system or ditch for which no design information exists.

1.0 STREET DRAINAGE

1.1 Street Function and Classification

The primary function of a street or roadway is to provide for the safe passage of vehicular traffic at a specified level of service. If stormwater collection and conveyance systems are not designed properly, this primary function can be impaired when streets flood due to surcharge in storm sewers and street encroachment. To make sure this does not happen, streets are classified for drainage purposes based on their traffic volume, parking practices, and other criteria (Wright-McLaughlin Engineers 1969). The five street classifications for the City of Tontitown are:

- Minor: low-speed traffic for residential or industrial area access.
- Collector: low/moderate-speed traffic providing service between local streets and arterials.
- Minor Arterial: moderate/high-speed traffic moving through urban areas.
- Major Arterial: moderate/high-speed traffic moving through urban areas.
- Boulevard: moderate/high-speed traffic moving through urban areas.

For drainage design, the classification shown on the Tontitown Master Street Plan shall be used unless a higher standard is deemed appropriate by the Engineer of Record or City.

Streets serve another important function other than traffic flow. They contain the first component in the urban stormwater collection and conveyance system. That component is the street gutter or adjacent swale, which collects excess stormwater from the street and adjacent areas and conveys it to a stormwater inlet. Proper street drainage is essential to:

- Maintain the street's level-of-service.
- Reduce skid potential.
- Minimize the potential for cars to hydroplane.
- Maintain good visibility for drivers by reducing splash and spray.
- Minimize inconvenience/danger to pedestrians during storm events (FHWA 1984).

1.2 Design Considerations

Stormwater which flows in a street will flow in the gutters of the street until it reaches an overflow point or some other outlet/inlet. During its travel time the top width (or spread) of the stormwater flowing in the gutter widens as more stormwater is collected. Certain design considerations must be taken into account in order to meet the drainage objectives of a street to handle the stormwater flowing in the gutter. The primary design objective is to maintain permissible values of spread (encroachment) for minor storm (10-yr frequency) events. If the width and depth of the flow becomes great enough, the street loses its effectiveness as a traffic-carrier and travel becomes hazardous. Based on this, the City has established encroachment standards for the minor storm event. These encroachment standards are shown in Table ST-1.

Table ST-1 — Pavement Encroachment and Curb Depth Standards for the Minor Storm, 10-yr Return Frequency

Street Class	Depth at Curb	Maximum Encroachment	Example Based on Given Street Width (Normal Typical Section)
Local	No curb overtopping	Spread of water flowing in gutter shall be limited so that half of roadway width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) remains clear.	- Street Width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) = 29' ; - Required Clear Lane = 29'/2 = 14.5' - Therefore: Street flow in each gutter ≤ (29'-14.5')/2 = **7.25 feet**
Collector	No curb overtopping	Spread of water flowing in gutter shall be limited so that half of roadway width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) remains clear.	- Street Width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) = 44' ; - Required Clear Lane = 44'/2 = 22' - Therefore: Street flow in each gutter ≤ (44'-22')/2 = **11 feet**
Minor Arterial	No curb overtopping	Spread of water flowing in gutter shall be limited so that half of roadway width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) remains clear.	- Street Width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) = 44' ; - Required Clear Lane = 44'/2 = 22' - Therefore: Street flow in each gutter ≤ (44'-22')/2 = **11 feet**
Major Arterial	No curb overtopping	Spread of water flowing in gutter shall be limited so that half of roadway width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) remains clear.	- Street Width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) = 59' ; - Required Clear Lane = 59'/2 = 29.5' - Therefore: Street flow in each gutter ≤ (59'-29.5')/2 = **14.75 feet**
Boulevard	No curb overtopping	Spread of water flowing in gutter shall be limited so that half of roadway width (F.O.C. to F.O.C.) remains clear in each direction.	- Varies based on street width

Additional design objectives are required for major storm (100-yr frequency) events and resulting gutter flows and street cross flows. The main factor to be considered when evaluating the major storm event is to determine the potential for flooding and public safety. Cross-street/intersection flows also need to be regulated for traffic flow and public safety. The City has established street inundation standards during the major storm event and allowable cross-street/intersection flow standards. These standards are shown in Table ST-2 and Table ST-3.

Table ST-2 — Street Inundation Standards for the Major Storm, 100-yr Return Frequency

Street Classification	Maximum Depth and Inundated Area
Local And Collector	Residential dwellings and public, commercial, and industrial buildings shall be no less than 12 inches above the 100-year flood at the ground line or lowest water entry of the building, whichever is lower. The depth of water over the gutter flow line shall not exceed 18 inches. Minimum finished floor elevation (F.F.E) shall be 12 inches above the gutter line.
Minor Arterial Principal Arterial and Boulevard	Residential dwellings and public, commercial, and industrial buildings shall be no less than 12 inches above the 100-year flood at the ground line or lowest water entry of the building, whichever is lower. The depth of water shall not exceed the street crown to allow operation of emergency vehicles. The depth of water over the gutter flow line shall not exceed 12 inches. Minimum finished floor elevation (F.F.E) shall be 12 inches above the gutter line.

Table ST-3 — Allowable Cross-Street/Intersection Flows

Street Classification	Minor (10-yr) Storm Flow	Major (100-yr) Storm Flow
Local	4 inches of depth in cross pan.	6 inches of depth above gutter flow line.
Collector	Where cross pans allowed, depth of flow shall not exceed 4 inches.	6 inches of depth above gutter flow line.
Minor Arterial	None.	No cross flow through intersection or across a street. Maximum depth at upstream gutter on road edge of 6 inches.
Principal Arterial	None.	No cross flow through intersection or across a street. Maximum depth at upstream gutter on road edge of 6 inches.
Boulevard	None.	No cross flow through intersection or across a street. Maximum depth at upstream gutter on road edge of 6 inches.

1.3 Hydraulic Evaluation of Street Gutters and Swales

Hydraulic computations are performed to determine the capacity of roadside swales and street gutters and the encroachment of stormwater onto the street. The design discharge is usually determined using the Rational Method (covered later in this chapter). Stormwater runoff ends up in swales, roadside ditches and street gutters.

1.3.1 Evaluation Procedures

The hydraulic evaluation of street capacity includes the following steps:

1. Calculate the theoretical street gutter flow capacity to convey the minor storm based upon the allowable **spread** defined in Table ST-1.

2. Calculate the theoretical street gutter flow capacity to convey the minor storm based upon the allowable **depth** defined Table ST-1.

3. Calculate the allowable street gutter flow capacity by multiplying the theoretical capacity (calculated in number 2) by a reduction factor (see Figure ST-3). This reduction factor is used for safety considerations. The lesser of the capacities calculated in step 1 and this step is the allowable street gutter capacity.

4. Calculate the theoretical major storm conveyance capacity based upon the road inundation criteria in Table ST-2. Reduce the major storm capacity by a reduction factor to determine the allowable storm conveyance capacity. (see Figure ST-3)

1.3.2 Curb and Gutter

1.3.2.1 Physical Constraints for Longitudinal Slope and Cross Slope

Streets are characterized with two different slope components: longitudinal slope and cross slope. A gutter's longitudinal slope will match the street's longitudinal slope. The hydraulic capacity of a gutter increases as the longitudinal slope increases. To ensure cleaning velocities at very low flows, the gutter shall have a minimum slope of 0.005 feet per foot (0.5%). The allowable flow capacity of the gutter on steep slopes (≥ 6%) is limited to provide for public safety and as such the maximum velocity of curb flow shall be ≤ 7 feet per second and limited to 3 inches of depth.

The cross slope of a street represents the slope from the street crown to the gutter section. The City requires a standard cross slope of 2% for pavement drainage for most streets; 3% is required for Local streets. Gutters shall be sloped to match the street's cross slope.

1.3.2.2 Gutters With Uniform Cross Slopes (i.e., Where Gutter Cross Slope = Street Cross Slope)

Gutter flow is assumed to be uniform for design purposes; therefore, Manning's equation is appropriate with a slight modification to account for the effects of a small hydraulic radius. For a triangular cross section (Figure ST-1), the Manning formula for gutter flow is written as:

$$Q = \frac{0.56}{n} * S_x^{5/3} * S_L^{1/2} * T^{8/3}$$ **(Equation ST-1)**

in which:

Q = calculated flow rate for the street (cfs)

n = Manning's roughness coefficient, (typically = 0.013). Refer to Table ST-4 for other gutter and pavement types

S_x = street cross slope (ft/ft)

S_L = street longitudinal slope (ft/ft)

T = top width of flow spread (ft)

Figure ST-1 — Typical Gutter Section – Constant Cross Slope (VDOT Drainage Manual 2010)

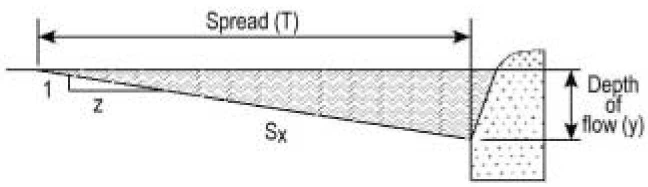


Table ST-4 — Manning's n Values For Street and Pavement Gutters (FHWA – HDS-3 1961)

Type of Gutter or Pavements	Manning's n
Concrete gutter, troweled finished	0.012
Asphalt pavement:	
Smooth texture	0.013
Rough texture	0.016
Concrete gutter with asphalt pavement:	
Smooth	0.013
Rough	0.015
Concrete pavement:	
Float finish	0.014
Broom finish	0.016
For gutters with small slopes, where sediment may accumulate, increase above values of n by	0.002

The depth of flow, y, at the curb can be found using:

$$y = T * S_x$$ **(Equation ST-2)**

Note that the flow depth must be less than the curb height during the minor storm based on Table ST-1. Manning's equation can be written in terms of the flow depth, as:

$$Q = \frac{0.56}{n} * S_L^{1/2} * y^{8/3}$$ **(Equation ST-3)**

The cross-sectional flow area, A, can be expressed as:

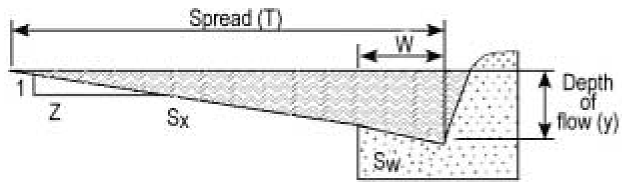
$$A = (1/2) * S_x * T^2$$ **(Equation ST-4)**

The gutter velocity at peak capacity may be found from the continuity equation ($V = Q/A$).

1.3.2.3 Gutters With Composite Cross Slopes (i.e., Where Gutter Cross Slope ≠ Street Cross Slope)

Gutters with composite cross slopes (Figure ST-2) can be used to increase the gutter capacity, but their use must be specifically approved by the City of Tontitown.

Figure ST-2 — Typical Gutter Section – Composite Cross Slope (VDOT Drainage Manual 2010)



For a composite gutter section:

$$Q = Q_w + Q_S \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-5)}$$

in which:

Q_w = flow rate in the depressed section of the gutter (cfs)

Q_s = discharge in the section that is above the depressed section (cfs)

The Federal Highway Administration's HEC-22 (2001) provides the following equations for obtaining the flow rate in gutters with composite cross slopes. The theoretical flow rate, Q, is:

$$Q = \frac{Q_S}{1 - E_o} \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-6)}$$

in which:

$$E_o = \frac{1}{1 + \dfrac{S_W / S_X}{\left[1 + \dfrac{S_W / S_X}{(T/W) - 1}\right]^{8/3} - 1}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-7)}$$

in which S_w is the gutter cross slope (ft/ft), and,

$$S_W = S_X + \frac{a}{W}$$ **(Equation ST-8)**

in which a is the gutter depression (feet) and W is width of the gutter (ft).

Figure ST-2 depicts all geometric variables. From the geometry, it can be shown that:

$$y = a + T * S_X$$ **(Equation ST-9)**

and,

$$A = \frac{1}{2} * S_X * T^2 + \frac{1}{2} * a * W$$ **(Equation ST-10)**

in which y is the flow depth (at the curb) and A is the flow area.

1.3.2.4 Allowable Gutter Hydraulic Capacity

As stormwater flows along streets, it encounters obstructions and other limiting street conditions that decrease the gutter's hydraulic capacity. These conditions include street overlays, parked vehicles, debris and hail accumulation, and deteriorated pavement. Due to the negative impact these street conditions have on the stormwater flow in the gutter, a reduction factor is applied to the theoretical gutter capacity. The reduction factor also is used to minimize damaging gutter flow velocities and depths. Utilizing the reduction factor, the allowable gutter hydraulic capacity is determined as the lesser of:

$$Q_A = Q_T$$ **(Equation ST-11)**

or

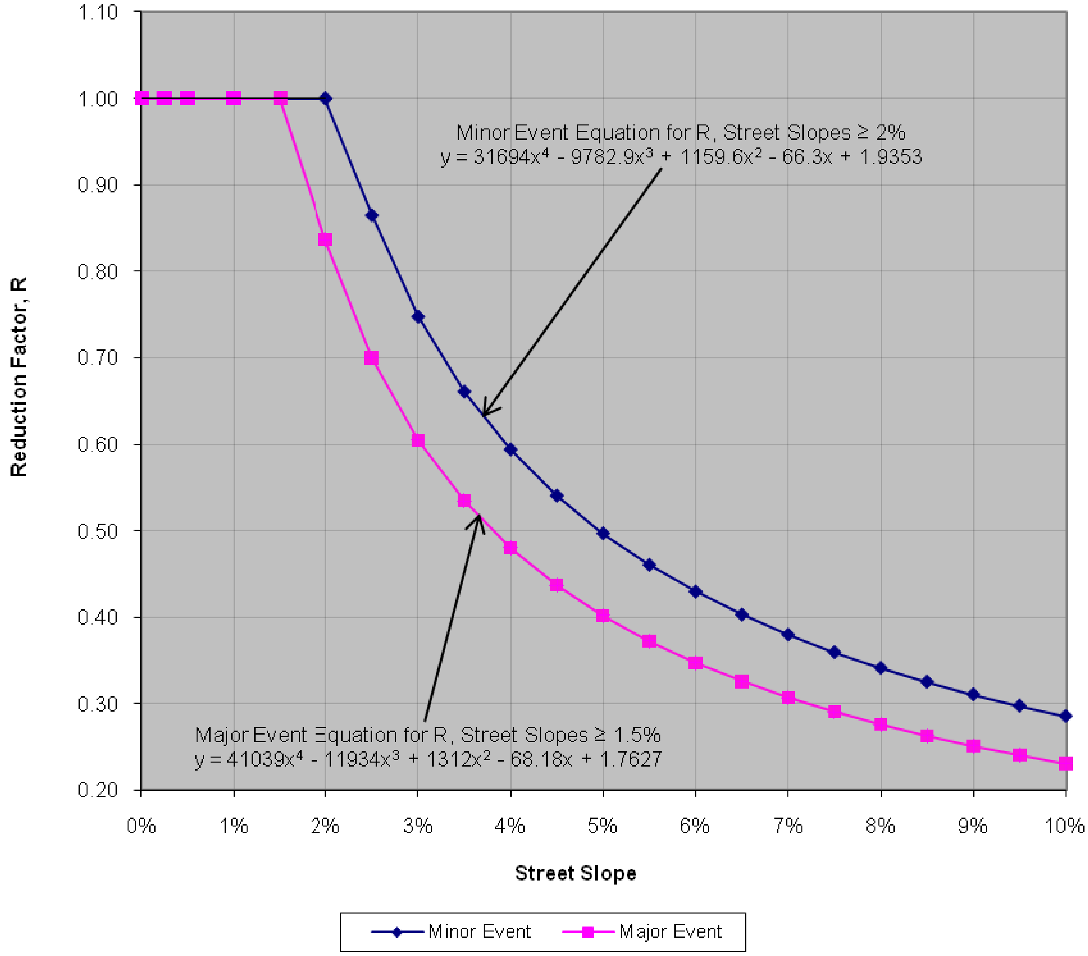
$$Q_A = R * Q_F$$ **(Equation ST-12)**

in which Q_A = allowable street hydraulic capacity, Q_T = street hydraulic capacity limited by the maximum water spread, R = reduction factor (see Figure ST-3), and Q_F = gutter capacity when flow depth equals allowable depth.

There are two sets of reduction factors developed for the City of Tontitown based on the reduction factor equation(s) discussed in *Urban Hydrology and Hydraulics Design* (Guo 2000b). One is for the minor event, and another is for the major event. Figure ST-3 shows that the reduction factor remains constant for a street slope ≤1.5% for a major event (≤2.0% for a minor event), and then decreases as the street slope increases.

It is important for street drainage designs that the allowable street hydraulic capacity be used instead of the calculated gutter-full capacity. Thus, wherever the accumulated stormwater amount on the street is close to the allowable capacity, a street inlet shall be installed.

Figure ST-3 — Reduction Factor for Allowable Gutter Capacity



1.3.3 Swale Sections (V-Shaped With the Same or Different Side Slopes)

Swales are often used to convey runoff from pavement where curb and gutter sections are not used. It is very important that swale depths and side slopes be as shallow as possible for safety and maintenance reasons. Street-side swales serve as collectors of initial runoff and transport it to the nearest inlet or major drainageway. To be effective, they need to be limited to the velocity, depth, and cross-slope geometries considered acceptable. The following limitations shall apply to street-side swales:

- Maximum flow velocity ≤ 4 ft/sec for grass-lined swales for 10-year event.
- Longitudinal grade of a grass-lined swale ≤ 2%. Use grade control checks if adjacent street is steeper to limit the swale's flow.
- Maximum flow depth (d) ≤ 1.0 ft. for 10-year event.
- Maximum side slope of each side (S_{x1} and S_{x2}) ≤ 3H:1V.*

* Note: Use of flatter side slopes is strongly recommended.

Swales generally have V-sections (Figure ST-4). Equation ST-1 can be used to calculate the flow rate in a V-section (if the section has a constant Manning's n value) with an adjusted slope found using:

$$S_X = \frac{S_{x1} * S_{x2}}{S_{x1} + S_{x2}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-13)}$$

in which:

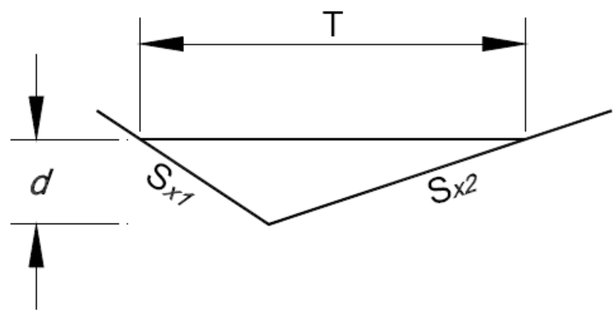
S_{x1} = adjusted side slope (ft/ft)

S_{x1} = right side slope (ft/ft)

S_{x2} = left side slope (ft/ft)

Figure ST-4 shows the geometric variables.

Figure ST-4 — Typical Street-Side Swale Sections—V-Shaped (UDFCD USDCM 2002)



Note that the slope of swales is often different than the adjacent street. The hydraulic characteristics of the swale can therefore change from one location to another on a given swale. The flow depth and spread limitations of Table ST-2 and Table ST-3 are also valid for swales. There is no capacity reduction for safety considerations for roadside swales.

Manning's equation can be used to calculate flow characteristics.

$$Q = \frac{1.49}{n} * A * R^{2/3} * S_L^{\;1/2} \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-14)}$$

in which:

Q = flow rate (cfs)

n = Manning's roughness coefficient (see Table ST-4)

A = flow area (ft^2)

$R = A/P$ (ft)

P = wetted perimeter (ft)

S_L = longitudinal slope (ft/ft)

2.0 STORM DRAIN INLETS

2.1 Inlet Functions, Types and Appropriate Applications

Once the design flow spread (encroachment) has been established for the minor storm, the placement of inlets can be determined. The primary function of stormwater inlets is to intercept excess surface runoff and deposit it in storm sewers, thereby reducing the possibility of surface flooding.

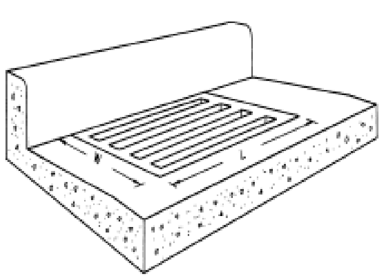
The location of storm drain inlets along a road is influenced by the roadway's geometry as well as adjacent land features. As a rule, inlets are placed at all low points in the gutter grade, median breaks, intersections, and at or near crosswalks. Along with adhering to the geometric controls outlined above, storm drain inlet spacing shall be such that the gutter spread under the design storm (10-yr frequency) conditions will not exceed the allowable encroachment for the type of street class under consideration. (Table ST-1)

There are five major types of storm drain inlets: grate, curb opening, combination, slotted, and area. Figure ST-5 depicts the major types of inlets along with some associated geometric variables. Table ST-5 provides general information on the appropriate application of the different inlet types along with basic advantages and disadvantages of each.

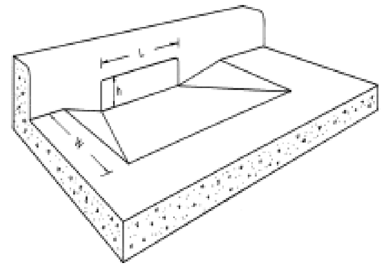
Table ST-5 — Applicable Settings for Various Inlet Types

Inlet Type	Applicable Setting	Advantages	Disadvantages
Grate	Sumps and continuous grades (must be bicycle safe)	Perform well over wide range of grades	Can become clogged Lose some capacity with increasing grade
Curb-opening	Sumps and continuous grades (but not steep grades)	Do not clog easily Bicycle safe	Lose capacity with increasing grade
Combination	Sumps and continuous grades (must be bicycle safe)	High capacity Do not clog easily	More expensive than grate or curb-opening acting alone
Slotted	Locations where sheet flow must be intercepted.	Intercept flow over wide section	Susceptible to clogging
Area Inlet	Sumps or a lower point on a site where runoff can be efficiently collected	Do not clog easily Bicycle safe	Protrude above ground and are limited to certain locations (such as yards, etc.)

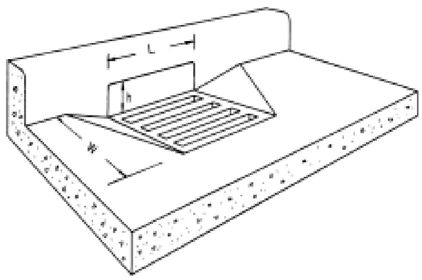
Figure ST-5 — Types of Storm Drain Inlets (FHWA – HEC-22 2001)



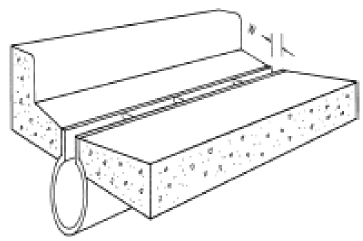
a. Grate



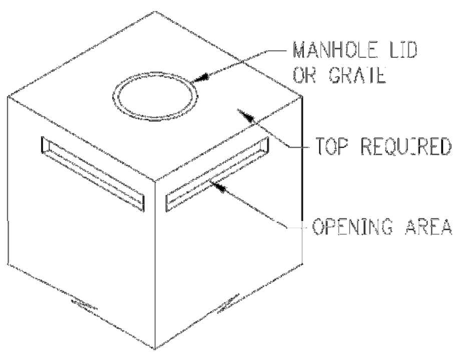
b. Curb-opening Inlet



c. Combination Inlet



d. Slotted Drain Inlet



e. Arec Inlet

2.2 Design Considerations

Stormwater inlet design takes two forms: inlet placement location and inlet hydraulic capacity. As previously mentioned, inlets must be placed in sumps to prevent ponding of excess stormwater. On streets with continuous grades, inlets are required periodically to keep the gutter flow from exceeding the encroachment limitations. In both cases, the size and type of inlets need to be designed based upon their hydraulic capacity.

Inlets placed on continuous grades rarely intercept all of the gutter flow during the minor (design) storm. The effectiveness of the inlet is expressed as an efficiency, E, which is defined as:

$$E = Q_i / Q \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-15)}$$

in which:

E = inlet efficiency

Q_i = intercepted flow rate (cfs)

Q = total gutter flow rate (cfs)

Bypass (or carryover) flow is not intercepted by the inlet. By definition,

$$Q_b = Q - Q_i \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-16)}$$

in which:

Q_b = bypass (or carryover) flow rate (cfs)

The ability of an inlet to intercept flow (i.e., hydraulic capacity) on a continuous grade generally increases with increasing gutter flow, but the capture efficiency decreases. In other words, even though more stormwater is captured, a smaller percentage of the gutter flow is captured. In general, the inlet capacity depends upon the following factors:

- Inlet type and geometry (length, width, etc.).
- Flow rate (depth and spread of water).
- Cross (transverse) slope (of road and gutter).
- Longitudinal slope.

As a general rule, an effective way to achieve an economic design and spacing for storm drain inlets is to allow 20 to 40 percent of gutter flow reaching the inlet to carry over to the next inlet downstream, provided that water flowing in the gutter does not exceed the allowable encroachment.

Inlets in sumps operate as weirs for shallow pond depths, but eventually will operate as orifices as the depth increases. A transition region exists between weir flow and orifice flow, much like a culvert. Grate inlets and slotted inlets tend to clog with debris, especially in sump conditions, so calculations shall take that into account. Curb opening inlets tend to be more dependable in sumps for this reason.

2.3 Hydraulic Evaluation

The hydraulic capacity of an inlet is dependent on the type of inlet (grate, curb opening, combination, or slotted) and the location (on a continuous grade or in a sump). The methodology for determination of hydraulic capacity of the various inlet types is described in the following sections:

a) grate inlets on a continuous grade (Section 2.3.1)
b) curb opening inlets on a continuous grade (Section 2.3.2)
c) combination inlets on a continuous grade (Section 2.3.3)
d) slotted inlets on a continuous grade (Section 2.3.4)
e) inlets located in sumps (Section 2.3.5).

2.3.1 Grate Inlets (On a Continuous Grade)

The capture efficiency of a grate inlet is highly dependent on the width and length of the grate and the velocity of gutter flow. Ideally, if the gutter velocity is low and the spread of water does not exceed the grate width, all of the flow will be captured by the grate inlet. However, the spread of water often exceeds the grate width, and the flow velocity can be high. Thus, some water gets by the inlet. Because of this, the inlet efficiency must be determined in order to evaluate the impact the bypass gutter flow will have on the efficiency and encroachment at the next inlet downstream of the bypassed inlet.

In order to determine the efficiency of a grate inlet, gutter flow is divided into two parts: frontal flow and side flow. Frontal flow is defined as that portion of the flow within the width of the grate. The portion of the flow outside the grate width is called side flow. By using Equation ST-1, the frontal flow can be evaluated and is expressed as:

$$Q_W = Q\left[1-\left(1-\left(W/T\right)\right)\right]^{2.67} \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-17)}$$

in which:

Q_W = frontal discharge (flow within width *W*) (cfs)

Q = total gutter flow (cfs) found using Equation ST-1

W = width of grate (ft)

T = total spread of water in the gutter (ft)

It should be noted that the grate width is generally equal to the depressed section in a composite gutter section. By definition:

$$Q_S = Q - Q_W \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-18)}$$

in which:

Q_S = side discharge (i.e., flow outside the depressed gutter or grate) (cfs)

The ratio of the frontal flow intercepted by the inlet to total frontal flow, R_f, is expressed as:

$$R_f = Q_{wi}/Q_w = 1.0 - 0.09(V - V_o) \text{ for } V \geq V_o\text{, otherwise } R_f = 1.0 \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-19)}$$

in which:

Q_{wi} = frontal flow intercepted by the inlet (cfs)

V = velocity of flow in the gutter (ft/sec)

V_0 = splash-over velocity (ft/sec)

Figure ST-6 provides a graphical solution to Equation ST-19.

The splash-over velocity is defined as the minimum velocity causing some water to shoot over the grate. This velocity is a function of the grate length and type.

The splash-over velocity can be determined using the empirical formula (Guo 1999):

$$V_o = \alpha + \beta * L_e - \gamma * L_e^{\,2} + \eta * L_e^{\,3} \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-20)}$$

in which:

V_0 = splash-over velocity (ft/sec)

L_e = effective unit length of grate inlet (ft)

$\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \eta$ = constants from Table ST-6

Figure ST-6 — Grate Inlet Frontal Flow Interception Efficiency (FHWA – HEC-22 2009)

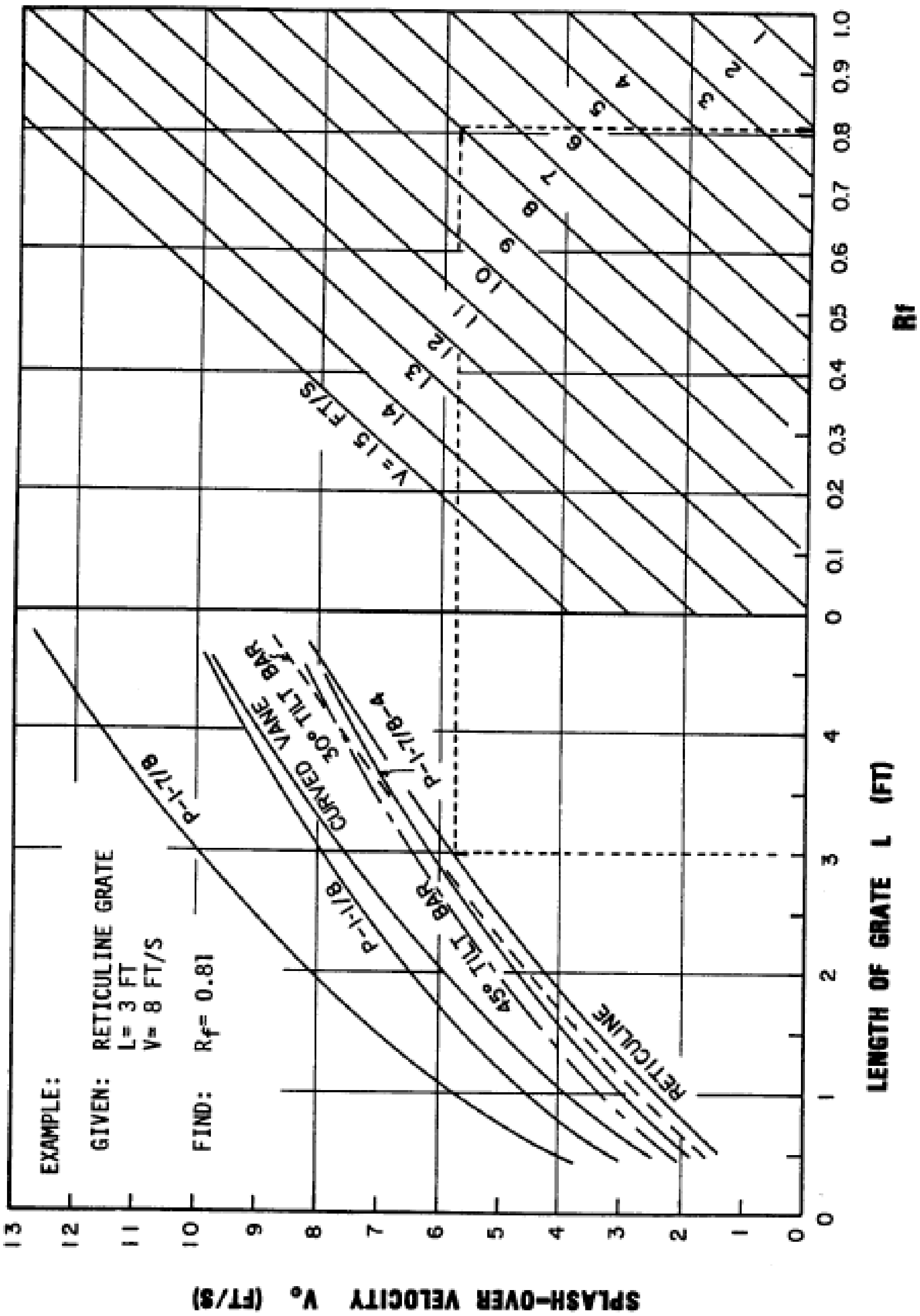


Table ST-6 — Splash Velocity Constants for Various Types of Inlet Grates

(UDFCD USDCM 2002)

Type of Grate	α	β	γ	η
Bar P-1-7/8	2.22	4.03	0.65	0.06
Bar P-1-1/8	1.76	3.12	0.45	0.03
Vane Grate	0.30	4.85	1.31	0.15
45-Degree Bar	0.99	2.64	0.36	0.03
Bar P-1-7/8-4	0.74	2.44	0.27	0.02
30-Degree Bar	0.51	2.34	0.20	0.01
Reticuline	0.28	2.28	0.18	0.01

The ratio of the side flow intercepted by the inlet to total side flow, R_s, is expressed as:

$$R_S = \frac{1}{1 + \dfrac{0.15 * V^{1.8}}{S_X * L^{2.3}}}$$ **(Equation ST-21)**

in which:

V = velocity of flow in the gutter (ft/sec)

S_x= street cross slope (ft/ft)

L = length of grate (ft)

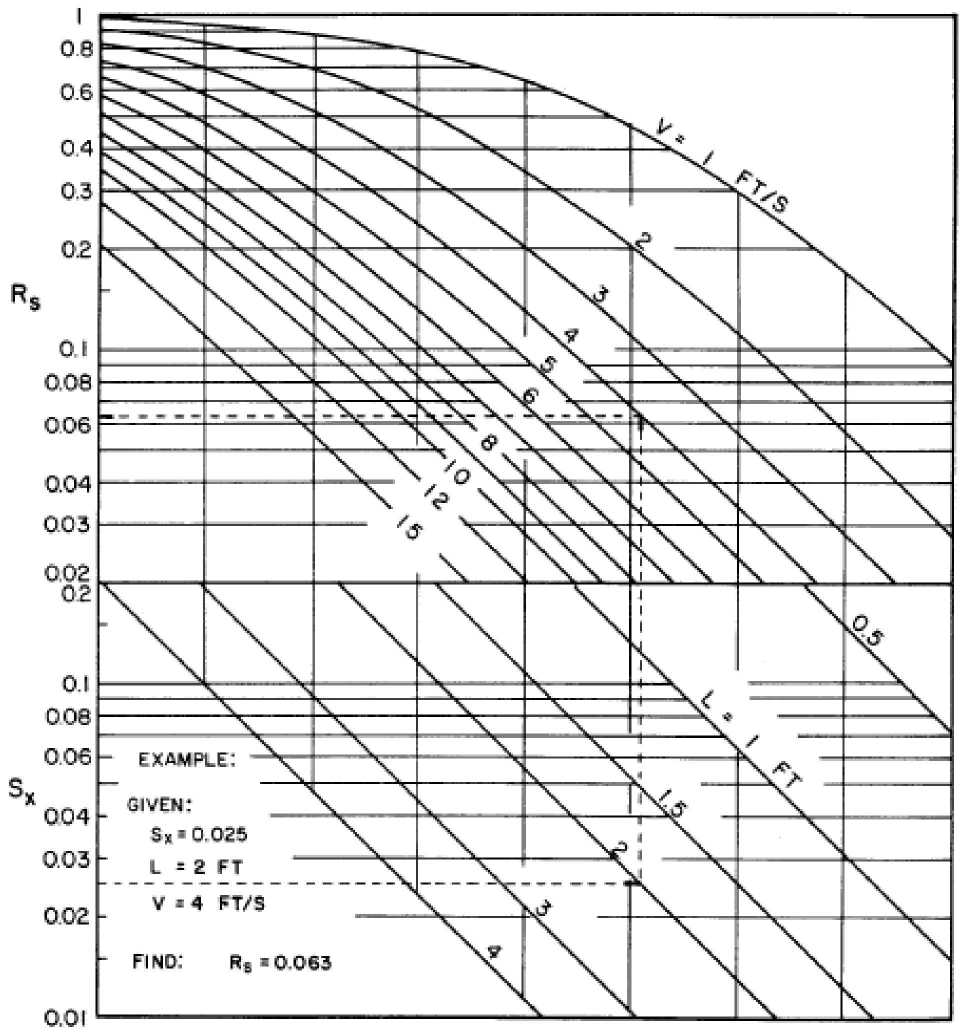
Figure ST-7 below provides a graphical solution to Equation ST-21.

The capture efficiency, E, of the grate inlet may now be determined using:

$$E = R_f\left(Q_W/Q\right) + R_S\left(Q_S/Q\right)$$ **(Equation ST-22)**

Figure ST-7 — Grate Inlet Side Flow Interception Efficiency

(FHWA – HEC-22 2009)



2.3.2 Curb-Opening Inlets (On a Continuous Grade)

The capture efficiency of a curb-opening inlet is dependent on the length of the opening, the depth of flow at the curb, street cross slope and the longitudinal gutter slope. Ideally, if the curb opening is long, the flow rate is low, and the longitudinal gutter slope is small, all of the flow will be captured by the inlet. However, it is uneconomical to install a curb opening long enough to capture all of the flow for all situations and as a result some water gets by the inlet. Therefore, the inlet efficiency needs to be determined in order to evaluate the impact the bypass gutter flow will have on the efficiency and encroachment at the next inlet downstream of the bypassed inlet.

The efficiency, E, of a curb-opening inlet is calculated as:

$$E = 1 - \left[1 - \left(L/L_T\right)\right]^{1.8} \text{ for } L < L_T\text{, otherwise } E = 1.0 \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-23)}$$

in which:

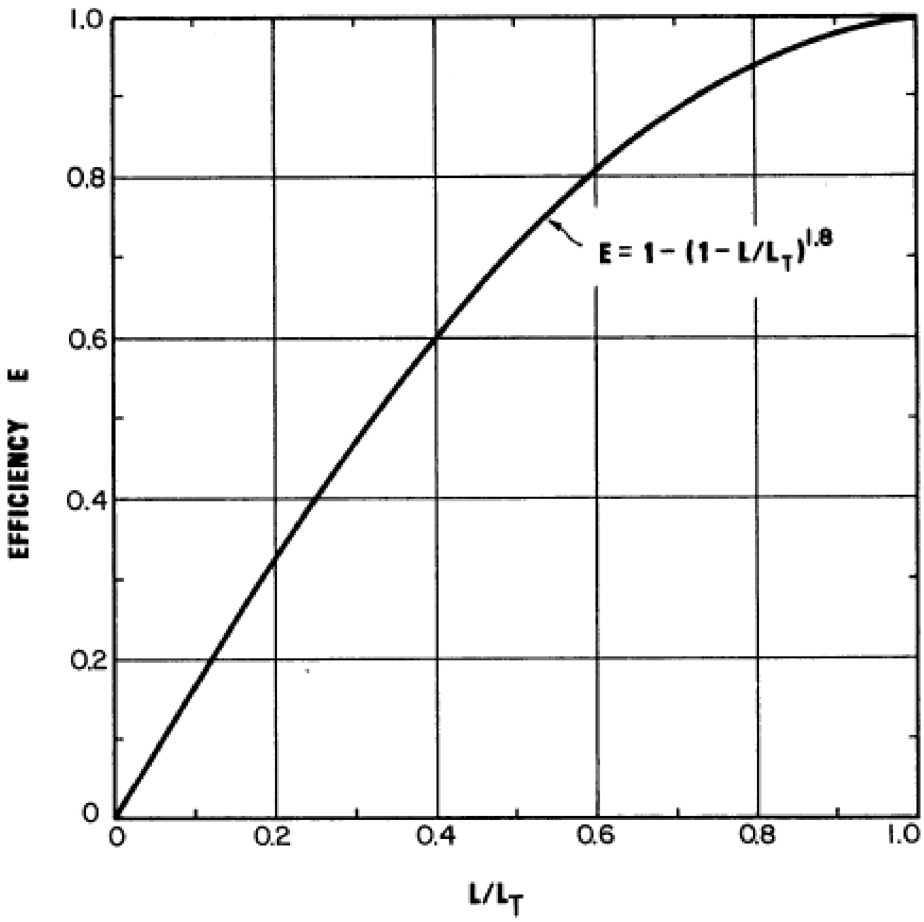
L = installed (or designed) curb-opening length (ft)

L_T = curb-opening length required to capture 100% of gutter flow (ft)

Design curb-opening length shall be in 4-foot increments.

Figure ST-8 below provides a graphical solution to Equation ST-23 once L_T is known.

Figure ST-8 — Curb-Opening and Slotted Drain Inlet Interception Efficiency (FHWA – HEC-22 2009)



Besides at low points, inlets located on streets of less than one percent (1%) grade, shall be considered and evaluated as inlets in sumps based on the procedures outlined in Section 2.3.5.

2.3.2.1 Curb-Opening Inlet – Not Depressed

In the case of a curb-opening inlet that is not depressed, the depth of flow at the upstream end of the opening is the depth of flow in the gutter. In streets where grades are greater than one percent (1%), the velocities are high and the depths of flow are usually small, which allows for little time to develop cross flow into a curb opening. Therefore, curb-opening inlets that are not depressed shall only be used on streets where the longitudinal grade is one percent (1%) or less.

For a curb-opening inlet that is not depressed,

$$L_T = 0.6 * Q^{0.42} * S_L^{\ 0.3} * \left(\frac{1}{n * S_X} \right)^{0.6}$$ **(Equation ST-24)**

in which:

Q = gutter flow (cfs)

S_L = longitudinal street slope (ft/ft)

S_X = street cross slope (ft/ft)

n = Manning's roughness coefficient

2.3.2.2 Curb-Opening Inlet – Depressed

Depressing the gutter at a curb-opening inlet below the normal level of the gutter increases the cross-flow toward the opening, thereby increasing the inlet capacity. Also, the downstream transition out of the depression causes backwater which further increases the amount of water captured. Depressed inlets shall be used on continuous longitudinal grades that exceed one percent (1%) <u>except that their use in traffic lanes shall be approved by the City.</u>

For a depressed curb-opening inlet,

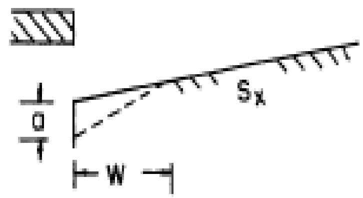
$$L_T = 0.6 * Q^{0.42} * S_L^{\ 0.3} * \left(\frac{1}{n * S_e} \right)^{0.6}$$ **(Equation ST-25)**

The equivalent cross slope, S_e, can be determined from

$$S_e = S_X + \frac{a}{W} * E_o$$ **(Equation ST-26)**

in which a = gutter depression and W = depressed gutter section as shown in Figure ST-9. For a curb-opening inlet, a = 4.5 inches and W = 18 inches. The ratio of the flow in the depressed section to total gutter flow, E_0, can be calculated from Equation ST-7.

Figure ST-9 — Depressed Gutter Section (FHWA – HEC-22 2009)



2.3.3 Combination Inlets (On a Continuous Grade)

Combination inlets take advantage of the debris removal capabilities of a curb-opening inlet and the capture efficiency of a grate inlet. Interception capacity is computed by neglecting the curb opening if the grate and curb opening are side-by-side and of approximately the same length. A desirable configuration is to have all or part of the curb-opening inlet lie upstream from the grate, allowing the curb opening to intercept debris which might otherwise clog the grate and also provide additional capacity. A combination inlet with a curb opening upstream of the grate has an interception capacity equal to the sum of the two inlets, except that the frontal flow and thus the interception capacity of the grate is reduced by the amount of gutter flow intercepted by the curb opening. The appropriate equations have already been presented in Section 2.3.1 and Section 2.3.2.

2.3.4 Slotted Inlets (On a Continuous Grade)

Slotted inlets can generally be used to intercept sheet flow that is crossing the pavement in an undesirable location. Unlike grate inlets, they have the advantage of intercepting flow over a wide section. They do not interfere with traffic operations and can be used on both curbed and uncurbed sections. Like grate inlets, they are susceptible to clogging.

Slotted inlets function like a side-flow weir, much like curb-opening inlets. The FHWA HEC-22 (2001) suggests the hydraulic capacity of slotted inlets closely corresponds to curb-opening inlets if the slot openings are equal to or greater than 1.75-inches. Therefore, the equations developed for curb-opening inlets (Equation ST-23 through Equation ST-26) are appropriate for slotted inlets with openings ≥ 1.75 inches. All slot inlets designed for use in the City of Tontitown shall have slot openings ≥ 1.75 inches.

2.3.5 Inlets Located in Sumps

All of the stormwater excess that enters a sump (i.e., a depression or low point in grade) must pass through an inlet to enter the stormwater conveyance system. If the stormwater is laden with debris, the inlet is susceptible to clogging and ponding could result. Therefore, the capacity of inlets in sumps must account for this clogging potential. Flanking inlets may be used on the upstream side of the sump just far enough away that before encroachment and ponding depth issues could begin the backwater built up due to the clog would be collected by the flanking inlets. At the very most the difference between the throat flowlines of the flanking inlet and sump inlet shall not be more than one-tenth of a foot (0.10 foot) less than the curb height. Grate inlets acting alone as the sole inlet in a sump shall not be allowed. Curb-opening inlets or combination inlets are to be used to capture stormwater runoff collecting in sumps. The minimum curb opening for inlets in sumps is 12 feet in street right-of-way or public access.

Positive drainage shall be provided at all sump inlets, so that if the sump inlet becomes 100% clogged there will be a way for stormwater to be conveyed away from the area and prevent encroaching and ponding depth noncompliance in the gutter section. Roadside swales shall be designed and placed in such a way that when the depth of stormwater at the curb exceeds the curb height, water will drain away from the road and be collected and conveyed in the swale.

Furthermore sumps or concentrated low points on a site can occur in areas isolated from curbed and guttered pavements and the information provided in this section can be used to analyze the collection of stormwater runoff at these locations. The type of inlet usually reserved to collect stormwater runoff in areas as described are called area inlets. Area inlets act as curb-opening inlets, but typically have curb openings on more than one side. Area inlets can also be grated inlets, like in the application of a grated inlet in a low point in the middle of a parking lot.

As previously mentioned, inlets in sumps function like weirs for shallow depths, but as the depth of stormwater increases, they begin to function like an orifice. The transition from weir flow to orifice flow takes place over a relatively small range of depth that is not well defined. The FHWA provides guidance on the transition region based on significant testing.

The hydraulic capacity of grate, curb-opening, and slotted inlets operating as weirs is expressed as:

$$Q_i = C_W * L_W * d^{1.5}$$ **(Equation ST-27)**

in which:

Q_i = inlet capacity (cfs)

C_W = weir discharge coefficient

L_W = weir length (ft)

d = flow depth (ft)

Values for C_w and L_w are presented in Table ST-7 for various inlet types. (Note that the expressions given for curb-opening inlets without depression shall be used for depressed curb-opening inlets if L > 12 feet.)

The hydraulic capacity of grate, curb-opening, and slotted inlets operating as orifices is expressed as:

$$Q_i = C_O * A_O * (2 * g * d)^{0.5}$$ **(Equation ST-28)**

in which:

Q_i = inlet capacity (cfs)

C_O = orifice discharge coefficient

A_O = orifice area (ft^2)

d = characteristic depth (ft) as defined in Table ST-7

g = 32.2 ft/sec^2

Values for C_O and A_O are presented in Table ST-7 for different types of inlets.

Combination inlets are commonly used in sumps. The hydraulic capacity of combination inlets in sumps depends on the type of flow and the relative lengths of the curb opening and grate. For weir flow, the capacity of a combination inlet (grate length equal to the curb opening length) is equal to the capacity of the grate portion only. This is because the curb opening does not add any length to the weir equation (Equation ST-27). If the curb opening is longer than the grate, the capacity of the additional curb length shall be added to the grate capacity. For orifice flow, the capacity of the curb opening shall be added to the capacity of the grate.

Table ST-7 — Sag Inlet Discharge Variables and Coefficients (Modified From Akan and Houghtalen 2002)

Weir Flow

Inlet Type	C_w	L_w [1]	Weir Equation Valid For	Definitions of Terms
Grate Inlet	3.00	$L + 2W$	$d < 1.79(A_o / L_w)$	L = Length of grate W = Width of grate d = Depth of water over grate A_o= Clear opening area [2]
Curb Opening Inlet	3.00	L	$d < h$	L = Length of curb opening h = Height of curb opening $d = d_i - (h / 2)$ d_i = Depth of water at curb opening
Depressed Curb Opening Inlet [3]	2.30	$L + 1.8W$	$d < (h + a)$	W = Lateral width of depression a = Depth of curb depression
Slotted Inlets	2.48	L	$d < 0.2$ ft	L = Length of slot d = Depth at curb

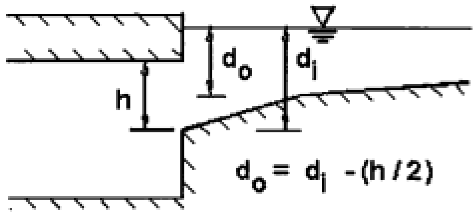
1) The weir length shall be reduced where clogging is expected.
2) Ratio of clear opening area to total area is 0.8 for P-1-7/8-4 and reticuline grates, 0.9 for P-1-7/8 and 0.6 for P-1-1/8 grates. Curved vane and tilt bar grates are not recommended at sag locations. Provide actual value based on manufacturer's specifications.
3) If $L > 12$ ft, use the expressions for curb opening inlets without depression.

Orifice Flow

Inlet Type	C_o	A_o [4]	Orifice Equation Valid for	Definition of Terms
Grate Inlet	0.67	Clear opening area [5]	$d > 1.79(A_o / L_w)$	d = Depth of water over grate
Curb Opening Inlet (depressed or undepressed, horizontal orifice throat [6])	0.67	$(h)(L)$	$d_i > 1.4h$	$d = d_i - (h / 2)$ d_i = Depth of water at curb opening h = Height of curb opening
Slotted Inlet	0.80	$(L)(W)$	$d > 0.40$ ft	L = Length of slot W = Width of slot d = Depth of water over slot

4) The orifice area shall be reduced where clogging is expected.
5) The ratio of clear opening area to total area is 0.8 for P-1-7/8-4 and reticuline grates, 0.9 for P-1-7/8 and 0.6 for P-1-1/8 grates. Curved vane and tilt bar grates are not recommended at sag locations. Provide actual value based on manufacturer's specifications.
6) See Figure ST-10 for curb opening throat type to be used for all curb opening inlets in the City of Tontitown.

Figure ST-10 — Curb Opening Inlet Throat Type for Use in Design (FHWA – HEC 22 2009)



a. Horizontal Throat

2.3.6 Inlet Clogging

Inlets are subject to clogging when debris laden runoff is collected during the first-flush runoff volume during a storm event. Clogging factors (as a percent) shall be applied to the design lengths and or/areas calculated for the stormwater inlet in order to take into account the effects of clogging on each inlet type. A 50% clogging factor shall be used in the design of a single grate inlet, 30% clogging factor for a single combination-curb inlet, and 20% clogging factor for a single curb-opening inlet or area inlet in a sump. A 25% clogging factor shall be used in the design of a single grate inlet or the grate portion of a combination inlet when these inlets are located on grade.

Often, it takes multiple units to collect the stormwater on the street. Since the amount of debris is largely associated with the first-flush volume in a storm event, the clogging factor applied to a multiple-unit street inlet shall be decreased with respect to the length of the inlet. Linearly applying a single-unit clogging factor to a multiple-unit inlet leads to an excessive increase in length.

With the concept of first-flush volume, the decay of clogging factor to curb opening length is described as (Guo 2000a):

$$C = \frac{1}{N}\left(C_o + eC_o + e^2 C_o + e^3 C_o + \ldots + e^{N-1} C_o\right) = \frac{C_o}{N}\sum_{i=1}^{i=N} e^{i-1} = \frac{KC_o}{N} \quad \textbf{(Equation ST-29)}$$

in which:

C = multiple-unit clogging factor for an inlet with multiple units

C_0 = single-unit clogging factor (50% - grate in a sump, 30% - combination in a sump, 20% - curb-opening in a sump, 25% - grate & combination on-grade)

e = decay ratio less than unity, 0.5 for grate inlet, 0.25 for curb-opening inlet

N = number of units

K = clogging coefficient from Table ST-8

Table ST-8 — Clogging Coefficients and Clogging Factor to apply to Multiple Units (UDFCD USDCM 2002)

	Grate Inlet		Curb Opening Inlet		Combination	
N	***K***	***C***	***K***	***C***	***K***	***C***
1	1.00	0.50	1.00	0.20	1.00	0.30
2	1.50	0.38	1.25	0.13		
3	1.75	0.29	1.31	0.09		
4	1.88	0.24	1.33	0.07		
5	1.94	0.19	1.33	0.05		
6	1.97	0.16	1.33	0.04		
7	1.98	0.14	1.33	0.04		
8	1.99	0.12	1.33	0.03		
>8	2.00	T.B.D.	1.33	T.B.D.		

Note: This table is generated by Equation ST-29 with *e* = 0.5 and *e* = 0.25.

The interception of an inlet on a grade is proportional to the inlet length, and in a sump is proportional to the inlet opening area. Therefore, a clogging factor shall be applied to the length of the inlet on a grade as:

$$L_e = (1 - C)L$$ **(Equation ST-30)**

in which L_e = effective (unclogged) length. Similarly, a clogging factor shall be applied to the opening area of an inlet in a sump as:

$$A_e = (1 - C)A$$ **(Equation ST-31)**

in which:

A_e = effective opening area

A = opening area

2.4 Inlet Location and Spacing on Continuous Grades

2.4.1 Introduction

Locating (or positioning) stormwater inlets rarely requires design computations. Inlets are simply required in certain locations based upon street design/layout considerations, topography (sumps and flat longitudinal grades), and local ordinances. The one exception is that a combination of design computations are required to locate and space inlets on continuous grades. On long, continuous grades, stormwater flow increases as it moves down the gutter and picks up more drainage area. As the flow in the gutter increases, so does the spread. Since there is a specified range for spread (encroachment) allowed for specific street classes, inlets must be strategically placed to remove some of the stormwater from the street. Locating these inlets requires detailed design computations by the design engineer.

2.4.2 Design Considerations

The primary design consideration for the location and spacing of inlets on continuous grades is the spread limitation. This was addressed in Section 2.3. Table ST-1 lists pavement encroachment standards for minor storms in the City of Tontitown.

Proper design of stormwater collection and conveyance systems makes optimum use of the conveyance capabilities of street gutters. In other words, an inlet is not needed until the spread reaches its allowable limit during the design storm (10-year frequency). To place an inlet prior to that point on the street is not economically efficient. To place an inlet after that point would violate the encroachment standards. Therefore, the primary design objective is to position inlets along a continuous grade at the locations where the allowable spread is about to be exceeded for the design storm.

Additionally, it is important to consider the type of inlet and its location when designing and positioning inlets. As outlined in Section 2.1 (Table ST-5), certain inlets (e.g., curb opening inlets) function better than others at avoiding clogging, while others are capable of efficiently capturing water over a wider range of grades (grated inlets). In order to achieve an economic design it is important to utilize the correct inlet type for the specific site constraints.

2.4.3 Design Procedure

Due to the complexity and steps involved in designing inlets, a step-by-step procedure is provided below to aid the design engineer. The steps are typical for most design instances, but may not represent every inlet design scenario. Because of this, it is acceptable for the design engineer to veer from the order of the outline as shown below when needed. Additionally, design spreadsheets and sample problems related to inlet design provide useful information and tools. The general steps for inlet design are:

1) Place inlets at locations where they are required as a result of the roadway's geometry and adjacent land features (i.e. low points in the gutter grade, median breaks, before intersections and crosswalks, etc.).

2) Using Table ST-1 in Section 1.2 of this chapter, determine the encroachment limit for the type of street function and classification considered in the design.

3) Based on the maximum encroachment limit determined in Step 2, the allowable street hydraulic capacity (peak flow rate in street and gutter) can be determined using Equation ST-11 or Equation ST-12.

4) Equate the peak flow rate calculated in Step 3 to a hydrologic method that incorporates the area and characteristics of the drainage area. Through this relationship, the inlet under design can be positioned on the street so that it will serve a specific drainage area. Typically the Rational

method is most often used to determine the requisite drainage area. The Rational method was discussed in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff* and is repeated here for convenience.

$$Q = C * I * A \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-32)}$$

in which:

Q = peak discharge (cfs)

C = runoff coefficient described in Table RO-2 and Table RO-3 of Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*

I = design storm rainfall intensity (in/hr) described in Table RO-5 of Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff*

A = drainage area (acres)

The drainage area (A) will be the unknown variable to solve for in Equation ST-32. Runoff coefficient (C) and rainfall intensity (I) shall be determined as discussed in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff* of this *Manual*. Then, at the upstream end of the project drainage basin, outline a subarea that correlates to the peak flow rate outlined in Step 3 and the area parameter defined in this Step.

5) Position an inlet along the street in a location that will prevent the allowable encroachment from being exceeded. The idea is to position the inlet at the location where the allowable encroachment is about to reach its allowable limit.

6) Specify inlet type and size based on the grade and location where the inlet is to be placed, the amount and velocity of gutter flow, and the resulting spreads. The initial inlet specification (size and type) will be a best guess as the next step in the design process will be to evaluate the specified inlet. (Note: an iterative process is required to achieve an inlet design (type and size) that will satisfy the requirements needed for street drainage)

7) Assess the hydraulic capacity of the inlet specified and calculate the inlet efficiency. Repeat Steps 6 and 7 as needed to achieve an inlet design that provides the desired inlet functionality at the location the inlet is required. Generally, an inlet will not capture all of the gutter flow. In fact, it is uneconomical to size an inlet (on continuous grades) large enough to capture all of the gutter flow. Instead, some carryover flow is expected.

8) Position another inlet (if needed) along the street downstream from the first inlet to capture runoff from other local drainage areas until a complete system of inlets has been designed that satisfies the allowable street encroachment limit. Utilize the same steps as above while accounting for carryover from one inlet to the next. The gutter discharge for inlets, other than the first inlet,

consists of the carryover from the upstream inlet plus the stormwater runoff generated from the intervening local drainage area. The resulting peak flow is approximate since the carryover flow peak and the local runoff peak do not necessarily coincide. The important concept to recognize here is that the carryover reduces the amount of new flow that can be picked up at the next downstream inlet.

9) After a complete system of inlets has been established, modification should be made to accommodate special situations such as point sources of large quantities of runoff, and variation of street alignments and grades.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

3.0 STORM SEWERS

3.1 Introduction

Once stormwater runoff is collected from the street surface and local watershed areas and captured by an inlet, the water is conveyed through the storm sewer system. The storm sewer system is comprised of inlets, manholes, pipes, bends, outlets, and other appurtenances. The stormwater passes through these components and is discharged into a stormwater management device for mitigation purposes, such as a detention pond or wetland, or discharged directly to an open channel or other waterbody. This section addresses the combination of storm sewer features and how they interrelate to convey stormwater to an outlet.

3.2 Storm Sewer System Components

3.2.1 Inlets

Inlets are the most common stormwater runoff capturing device within a storm sewer system. Design of these structures was outlined in Section 2 of this chapter. As previously described, the primary function of inlets is to collect stormwater runoff to prevent flowing stormwater in streets from becoming a hazard to drivers as well as preventing flood damage to structures adjacent to areas where stormwater is collected.

3.2.2 Junction Boxes

Apart from inlets, junction boxes are the most common component in storm sewer systems. The main difference between inlets and junction boxes is that an inlet's primary function is to collect stormwater runoff. Junction boxes on the other hand are purely for access and transition uses. Their primary functions include:

- Providing maintenance access.
- Providing ventilation.
- Serving as junctions when two or more pipes merge.
- Providing flow transitions for changes in pipe size, slope, and alignment.

Inlets serve in the above capacities as well with the added benefit of also collecting stormwater runoff.

3.2.3 Storm Sewer Pipe

Storm sewer piping is the conduit within the storm sewer system which conveys stormwater collected by inlets to an outlet. Storm sewer piping must be sized to work in conjunction with inlets so that the capacity of the storm sewer is consistent throughout all areas of its design. The sizing of storm sewer piping is described in this section and further analysis and design are provided herein.

3.2.4 Bends and Transitions

Bends and transitions are components utilized to facilitate a change in the alignment or size of storm sewer piping within a storm sewer system. Bends and transitions are an important component in minimizing energy losses within the system when transitions in alignment and size are needed. Bends and transitions without the use of a junction box are subject to City approval.

3.2.5 Outlets

Outlet structures are transitions from pipe flow into open channel flow or still water (e.g., ponds, lakes, etc.). The primary function of outlets is to control the flow and resulting force of stormwater exiting the storm sewer system in order to minimize the erosion potential in the receiving water body. Outlet designs are discussed in Chapter 4 – *Culvert Hydraulics*; Section 6.0 – Outlet Protection. Additional information on designing outlets can be found in FHWA's HEC-11 (1989) and HEC-14 , 3rd Ed. (2006).

3.3 Design Process, Considerations, and Constraints

The design of a storm sewer system requires the collection and evaluation of multiple pieces of information concerning the existing conditions of the study area. Required information includes topography, drainage/watershed boundaries, soil types, impervious surface areas, and locations of any existing storm sewers, inlets, and junction boxes and their sizes. In addition, it is necessary to identify the type and location of existing utilities. With the information described above it is possible to accurately examine proposed layouts of a new storm sewer system or adjustments to an existing system.

When looking at proposed layouts for a storm sewer system each conceptual layout plan shall show inlet and manhole locations, drainage boundaries serviced by each inlet, storm sewer locations, flow directions, and outlet locations. Emphasis should be placed on how the proposed layout interfaces with the existing right-of-way and site topography as these two factors greatly affect the cost of any new storm sewer construction or renovations of an existing system.

Once a final layout is chosen, storm sewers are sized using hydrologic techniques (to determine peak flows generated by the watershed) and hydraulic analysis (to determine pipe capacities). The constraints discussed below and the following design methods shall be used to evaluate the design requirements of a proposed storm sewer system with respect to the design storm.

3.3.1 Storm Sewer Pipe

3.3.1.1 Design Storm Accommodation

Closed storm sewers for all conditions, other than required for major drainage ways as discussed in Chapter 4 – *Culvert Hydraulics*, shall be designed to accommodate the 10-year design storm, based on the stormwater runoff collected and conveyed by the storm sewer system. Accommodating the design storm means the storm sewer shall be sized to convey collected runoff without surcharging using approved drainage design practices within this *Manual*. All storm sewer shall be designed so that the hydraulic gradient is two feet below the ground surface (gutter line) for the entire length of the storm sewer run. The storm sewer shall also be designed so that it conveys at a maximum 80% full flow capacity during the 10-year design storm. Furthermore, all storm sewer must be able to manage the 100-year design storm runoff so that it is conveyed within 6” of the gutter line or a drainage easement at all times and adjacent properties are protected from damage.

3.3.1.2 Size

Industry standard pipe sizes shall be used for all storm sewer piping within the system with no pipe being less than 18 inches in diameter. Pipe sizes generally increase in size moving downstream since the drainage area and corresponding stormwater flows increase. Do not discharge the contents of a larger pipe into a smaller one, even when the capacity of a smaller downstream pipe has sufficient capacity to handle the flow due to a steeper slope.

3.3.1.3 Material

Reinforced concrete pipe (RCP) shall be used in all right-of-way areas, city maintained access easements, and under all traffic areas (including parking lots, driveways, etc.). All storm sewer pipe having a diameter or hydraulically equivalent pipe size diameter of 36 inches or greater must be RCP. RCP ASTM Class III shall be used in all areas unless otherwise required due to fill heights; use ARDOT standards to determine.

RCP shall conform to:

> Circular Pipe – AASHTO M170/ASTM C76
>
> Arch-shaped Pipe – AASHTO M206/ASTM C506
>
> Elliptical Pipe – AASHTO M207/ASTM C507.

Corrugated metal pipe (CMP) [including smooth lined (SLCMP)] can only be used in areas outside of street right-of-way, but shall not be used under traffic areas. CMP shall have a minimum cover of two feet. CMP shall conform to shall conform to the following:

> Galvanized Steel – AASHTO M218/ASTM A929; AASHTO M36/ASTM A760 and AASHTO Section 12/ASTM A796
>
> Aluminized Steel Type 2 – AASHTO M274/ASTM A929; AASHTO M36/ASTM A760 and AASHTO Section 12/ASTM A796
>
> Aluminum – AASHTO M197/ASTM B744; AASHTO M196/ASTM B745 and AASHTO Section 12/ASTM B790.

Corrugated polyethylene pipe (CPP) [including smooth lined (SLCPP)] can only be used in situations where it is not draining off-site properties and must be approved by the City prior to its use. CPP up to 30 inches in diameter can be used in areas outside of the right-of-way and outside of City drainage easements. CPP shall not be used to convey water through a development from properties upstream and on properties where drainage structures are maintained by a residential POA. CPP shall have a minimum cover of two feet. CPP shall conform to AASHTO M 294, Type S specification or ASTM F2648, ASTM D3350 and ASTM F2306. All pipe shall be installed per manufacturer's specifications.

Reinforced concrete box (RCB), also includes three-sided boxes for these purposes, shall be structurally designed to accommodate earth and live load to be imposed upon the structure. Refer to the ARDOT Reinforced Concrete Box Culvert Standard Drawings. When installed within public right of way, all structures shall be capable of withstanding minimum HL-93 loading.

3.3.1.4 Manning's Roughness Coefficients

Manning's roughness coefficients for storm drains are as follows on Table ST-9

Table ST-9 — Manning's Roughness Coefficients, *n* for Storm Drains

Materials of Construction	Design Manning Coefficient (*n*)
Reinforced Concrete Pipe (and Reinforced Concrete Box)	0.013
Corrugated Metal Pipe	
Plain or Coated	0.024
Paved Invert	0.020
Smooth lined	0.012
Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe	
Plain	0.021
Smooth lined	0.012

3.3.1.5 Shape

Approved storm sewer pipe shapes within the storm sewer system are circular, horizontal elliptical, and arch. Circular pipe is the preferred shape for storm sewer piping; however, where used, horizontal elliptical pipe or arch pipe sizes shall be hydraulically equivalent to the round pipe size. Reinforced concrete box culverts are an acceptable storm sewer conduit and shall be designed according to the same requirements and criteria as RCP storm sewer. Refer to Chapter 8 – *Culvert Hydraulics* for concrete box requirements.

3.3.1.6 Minimum Grades

Storm sewer piping shall operate with flow velocities sufficient to prevent excessive deposition of solid material; otherwise, clogging can result. Storm drains shall be designed to have a minimum flow velocity of 3.0 ft/sec when flowing under its 10-year design storm capacity. This velocity is accepted as producing scour potential when a storm sewer is flowing at its 10-year design storm capacity so that any deposition of solid material within the storm sewer will be cleaned out during the 10-year design storm. Grades for closed storm sewers and open paved channels shall be designed so that the velocity shall be no less than 3.0 ft/sec for the 10-year design storm capacity nor exceed 12 ft/sec for any design storm. The minimum slope for standard construction procedures shall be 0.40 percent. Any variance must be approved by the City Planning Board.

3.3.2 Curb Inlet/Junction Boxes

Junction box (inlets, as a minimum, serve the same function as a junction box in most instances) locations are evaluated in the system prior to, and in conjunction with, pipe design. Most junction box locations are dictated by proper design practices. For example, junction boxes are required whenever there is a change in pipe size, alignment, slope, or where two or more pipes merge. Junction boxes are also required along straight sections of pipe for maintenance purposes. The distance between junction boxes is dependent on pipe size. The maximum spacing between junction boxes for various pipe sizes shall be in accordance with the Table ST-10.

Table ST-10 — Inlet / Junction Box Spacing Based on Storm Sewer Pipe Size

Vertical Dimension of Pipe or Box Culvert Height (inches)	Maximum Distance Between Inlet / Junction Boxes and/or Cleanout Points (feet)
18 to 36	400
42 and larger	500

The invert of a pipe leaving a junction box shall be at least 0.1 foot lower than the incoming pipe to ensure positive low flows through the junction box. Whenever possible, match the crown of the pipe elevations when the downstream pipe is larger. All pipe shall be cut flush with the interior of the inlet / junction box and grouted to insure a smooth flow transition.

Approved sizes for junction boxes are four to six feet in interior diameter/width. Table ST-11 provides standard junction box sizing in accordance with the size of storm sewer pipe that will exit the structure. The widest dimension for horizontal elliptical or arch pipe shall be used when sizing a corresponding junction box. Larger junction boxes may be required when sewer alignments are not straight through or in cases where more than one pipe is connected to the junction box. In instances where more than one storm sewer line goes through a junction box the interior width of the junction box shall at a minimum provide one foot between each storm sewer pipe and one foot between the outside edge of the sewer pipe and interior wall of the junction box.

Manhole rings and lids for junction boxes and curb inlets shall be cast with the words “City of Tontitown” and exhibit the fish logo. All rings and lids shall be heavy duty and traffic rated when located in traffic areas.

Table ST-11 — Inlet / Junction Box Sizing

Storm Sewer (STS) Pipe Diameter at Outlet End (inches)	Inlet / Junction Box Interior Diameter / Width (feet)
18	4
21 to 42	5
48 to 54	6
60 and larger	To be approved by City
Multiple STS pipes entering structure	Provide 12 inches (min.) between each STS and six inches (min.) between the outside edge of the STS and interior wall of the inlet/junction box

3.3.3 Bends and Transitions

Once storm sewers are sized and junction box locations are determined, the performance of the storm sewer system must be evaluated using energy grade line calculations starting at the downstream terminus of the system. As stormwater flows through the storm sewer system, it encounters many flow transitions. These transitions include changes in pipe size, slope, and alignment, as well as entrance and exit conditions. All of these transitions produce energy losses, usually expressed as head losses. These losses must be accounted for to ensure that inlets and junction boxes do not surcharge to a significant degree (i.e., produce street flooding). This is accomplished using hydraulic grade line (HGL) calculations as a check on pipe sizes and system losses. If significant surcharging occurs, the pipe diameters shall be increased. High tailwater conditions at the storm sewer outlet may also produce surcharging. This can also be accounted for using HGL calculations. Specific constraints for these items are discussed further in this section. Bends and transitions without the use of junction box are subject to City approval.

3.4 Storm Sewer Hydrology

3.4.1 Peak Runoff Prediction

The Rational method is commonly used to determine the peak flows that storm sewers must be able to convey. It is an appropriate method due to the small drainage areas typically involved. It is also relatively easy to use and provides reasonable estimates of peak runoff. The total drainage area contributing flow to a particular storm sewer is often divided up into smaller subcatchments. The Rational Method is described in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Storm Runoff* of this *Manual*.

The first pipe in a storm sewer system is designed using Equation ST-32 to determine the peak flow. Downstream pipes receive flow from the upstream pipes as well as local inflows. The Rational equation applied to the downstream pipes is:

$$Q = I\sum_{j=1}^{n} C_j A_j$$ **(Equation ST-33)**

in which:

I = design rainfall average intensity, over the time of concentration t_c (in/hr)

n = number of subareas above the stormwater pipe

j = drainage subarea

C_j = runoff coefficient of subarea j

A_j = drainage area of subarea j (acres)

With respect to Equation ST-33, it is evident that the peak flow changes at each design point since the time of concentration, and thus the average intensity, changes at each design point. It is also evident that the time of concentration coming from the local inflow may differ from that coming from upstream pipes. Normally, the longest time of concentration is chosen for design purposes. If this is the case, all of the subareas above the design point will be included in Equation ST-33, and it usually produces the largest peak flow. In some cases, the peak flow from a shorter path may produce the greater peak discharge if the downstream areas are heavily developed. It is good practice to check all alternative flow paths and tributary areas to determine the tributary zone that produces the biggest design flow and use the largest peak discharge rate for storm sewer sizing.

3.5 Storm Sewer Hydraulics (Gravity Flow in Circular Conduits)

3.5.1 Flow Equations and Storm Sewer Sizing

The size of closed storm sewers shall be designed so that their capacity will not be less than the flow rate computed using Manning's equation. Even though storm sewer flow is usually unsteady and non-uniform, for design purposes it is assumed to be steady and uniform at the peak flow rate. This assumption allows for the use of Manning's equation:

$$Q = \frac{1.49}{n} * A * R^{2/3} * S_f^{1/2}$$ **(Equation ST-34)**

in which:

Q = flow rate (cfs)

n = Manning's roughness coefficient for storm drain (see Table ST-9)

A = flow area (ft^2)

R = hydraulic radius (ft)

S_f = friction slope (normally taken as the storm sewer slope) (ft/ft)

For full flow in a circular storm sewer,

$$A = A_f = \frac{\pi * D^2}{4}$$ **(Equation ST-35)**

$$R = R_f = \frac{D}{4}$$ **(Equation ST-36)**

in which:

D = pipe diameter (ft)

A_f = flow area at full flow (ft^2)

R_f = hydraulic radius at full flow (ft)

If the flow is pressurized (i.e., surcharging at the inlets or junction boxes is occurring), $S_f \neq S_o$ where S_o is the longitudinal bottom slope of the storm sewer. Design of storm sewers in Tontitown assumes 80% full flow. This discharge, Q_f, is calculated using:

$$Q_f = \frac{1.49}{n} * A_f * R_f^{\,2/3} * S_o^{1/2}$$ **(Equation ST-37)**

Storm sewers shall be sized to flow 80% full (i.e., as open channels using nearly the full capacity of the pipe) during the design storm (10-yr frequency). The design discharge is determined first using the Rational equation as previously discussed, then the Manning's equation is used (with $S_f = S_o$) to determine the required pipe size. For circular pipes,

$$D_r = \left[\frac{2.16 * n * Q_p}{\sqrt{S_o}} \right]^{3/8}$$ **(Equation ST-38)**

in which D_r is the minimum size pipe required to convey the design flow and Q_p is peak design flow.

The typical process for sizing storm sewer pipe proceeds as follows. Initial storm sewer sizing is performed first using the Rational equation (Equation ST-33) in conjunction with Manning's equation (Equation ST-37). The Rational equation is used to determine the peak discharge that storm sewers must convey. The storm sewers are then initially sized using Manning's equation assuming uniform, steady flow at the peak. Finally, these initial pipe sizes are checked using the energy equation by accounting for all head losses. If the energy computations detect surcharging at manholes or inlets, the pipe sizes are increased, and the process is repeated as necessary to obtain a solution where surcharging is avoided.

3.5.2 Energy Grade Line and Head Losses

Head losses must be accounted for in the design of storm sewers in order to find the energy grade line (EGL) and the hydraulic grade line (HGL) at any point in the system. The FHWA (1996) gives the following general equation as the basis for calculating the head losses at inlets and junction boxes (h_{LM}, in feet):

$$h_{LM} = K_o * C_D * C_d * C_Q * C_p * C_B * \left(\frac{V_o^2}{2 * g} \right)$$ **(Equation ST-39)**

in which:

K_o = initial loss coefficient

V_o = velocity in the outflow pipe (ft/sec)

g = gravitational acceleration (32.2 ft/sec^2)

C_D, C_d, C_Q, C_p, and C_B = correction factors for pipe size, flow depth, relative flow, plunging flow, and benching

However, this equation is valid only if the water level in the receiving inlet or junction box is above the invert of the incoming pipe. Otherwise, another protocol has to be used to calculate head losses at junction boxes. A modified FHWA procedure is provided that the design engineer can use to calculate the head losses and the EGL along any point in a storm sewer system.

The EGL represents the energy slope between the two adjacent junction boxes in a storm sewer system. A junction box may have multiple incoming storm sewers, but only one outgoing sewer. Each storm sewer and its downstream and upstream junction boxes form a “storm sewer-junction box” unit. The entire storm sewer system can be broken down into a series of “storm sewer-junction box” units that satisfy the energy conservation principle. The computation of the EGL does this by repeating the energy-balancing process for each “storm sewer-junction box” unit.

As illustrated in Figure ST-11, a “storm sewer-junction box” unit has four distinctive sections. Section 1 represents the downstream junction box, Section 2 is the point at the exit of the incoming storm sewer just as enters this junction box, Section 3 is at the entrance to this storm sewer at the upstream junction box, and Section 4 represents the upstream junction box. For each “storm sewer-junction box” unit, the head losses are determined separately in two parts as:

1. Friction losses through the storm sewer pipe, and
2. Jjuncture losses at the junction box.

Calculation of the EGL through each "storm sewer-junction box" unit is described in the following sections.

In cases where a downstream tailwater condition may exist for which there is no information, e.g. discharging into an existing storm sewer system or ditch, it shall be assumed that the existing pipe or ditch is flowing full for the design storm event.

3.5.2.1 Losses at the Downstream Junction Box—Section 1 to Section 2

The continuity of the EGL is determined between the flow conditions at centerline of the downstream junction box, Section 1, and the exit of the incoming storm sewer, Section 2, as illustrated in Figure ST-11 and an idealized EGL and HGL profiles in Figure ST-12.

At Section 2 there may be pipe-full flow, critical/supercritical open channel flow, or sub-critical open channel flow. If the storm sewer crown at the exit is submerged, the EGL at the downstream junction box provides a tailwater condition; otherwise, the junction box drop can create a discontinuity in the EGL. Therefore, it is necessary to evaluate the two possibilities, namely:

$$E_2 = Max\left(\frac{V_2^2}{2 * g} + Y_2 + Z_2, E_1\right) \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-40)}$$

in which:

E_2 = EGL at Section 2

V_2 = storm sewer exit velocity (ft/sec)

Y_2 = flow depth at the storm sewer exit (feet)

Z_2 = invert elevation at the storm sewer exit (feet)

E_1 = tailwater at Section 1 (feet)

Equation ST-40 states that the highest EGL value shall be considered as the downstream condition. If the junction box drop dictates the flow condition at Section 2, a discontinuity is introduced into the EGL.

Figure ST-11 — A Storm Sewer-Junction Box Unit (UDFCD USDCM 2002)

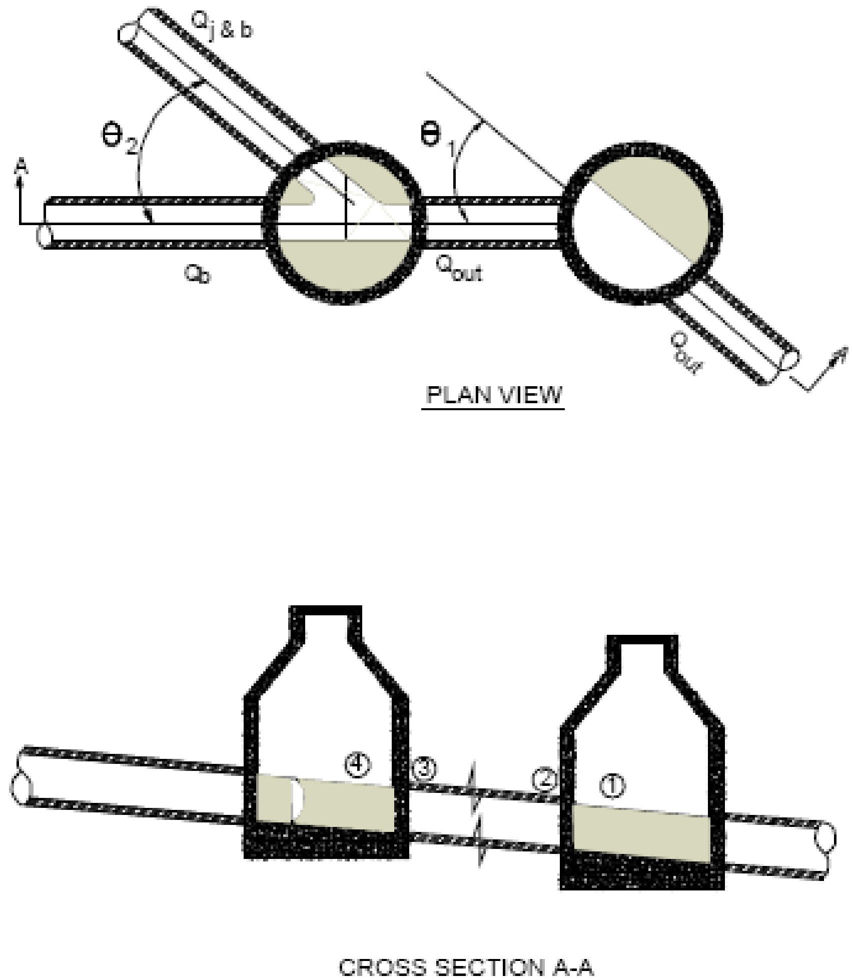
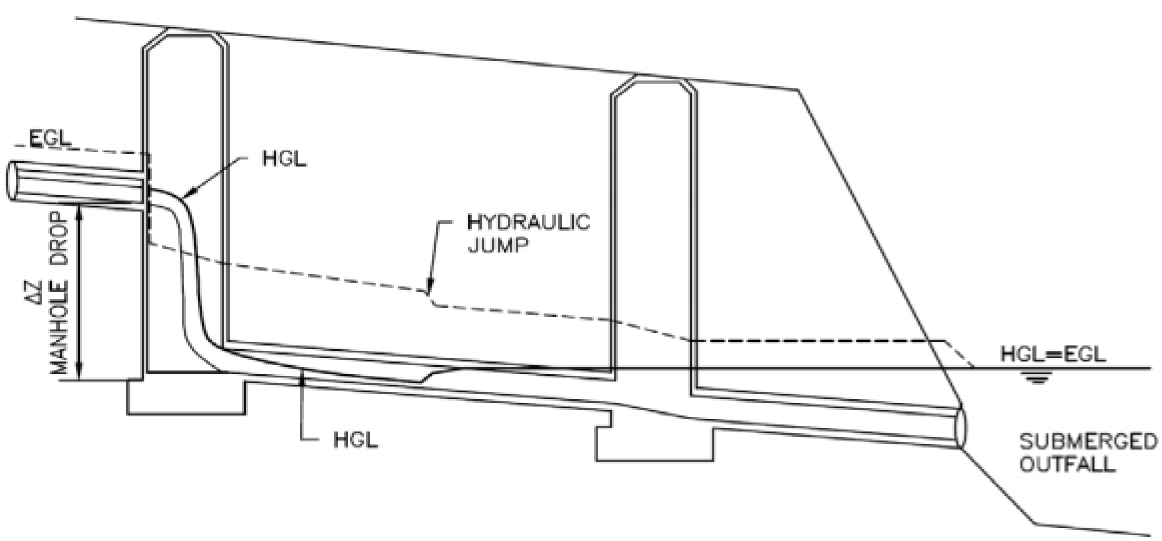


Figure ST-12 — Hydraulic and Energy Grade Lines (UDFCD USDCM 2002)



3.5.2.2 Losses in the Pipe, Section 2 to Section 3.

The continuity of the EGL upstream of the junction box depends on the friction losses through the storm sewer pipe. The flow in the storm sewer pipe can be one condition or a combination of open channel flow, full flow, or pressurized (surcharge) flow.

When a free surface exists through the pipe length, the open channel hydraulics apply to the backwater surface profile computations. The friction losses through the storm sewer pipe are the primary head losses for the type of water surface profile in the storm sewer. For instance, the storm sewer pipe carrying a subcritical flow may have an M-1 water surface profile if the water depth at the downstream junction box is greater than normal depth in the storm sewer or an M-2 water surface profile if the water depth in the downstream junction box is lower than normal depth. Under an alternate condition, the pipe carrying a supercritical flow may have an S-2 water surface profile if the pipe entering the downstream junction box is not submerged; otherwise, a hydraulic jump is possible within the storm sewer.

When the downstream storm sewer crown is submerged to a degree that the entire storm sewer pipe is under the HGL, the head loss for this full flow condition is estimated by pressure flow hydraulics.

When the downstream storm sewer crown is slightly submerged, the downstream end of the storm sewer pipe is surcharged, but the upstream end of the storm sewer pipe can have open channel flow. The head loss through a surcharge flow depends on the flow regime. For a subcritical flow, the head loss is the sum of the friction losses for the full flow condition and for the open channel flow condition. For a supercritical flow, the head loss may involve a hydraulic jump. To resolve which condition governs, culvert hydraulic principles can be used under both inlet and outlet control conditions and the governing condition is the one that produces the highest HGL at the upstream junction box.

Having identified the type of flow in the storm sewer pipe, the computation of friction losses begins with the determination of friction slope. The friction loss and energy balance are calculated as:

$$h_f = L * S_f \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-41)}$$

$$E_3 = E_2 + \sum h_f \qquad \textbf{(Equation ST-42)}$$

in which:

h_f = friction loss

L = length of storm sewer pipe (feet)

S_f = friction slope in the pipe (ft/ft)

E_3 = EGL at the upstream end of storm sewer pipe (feet)

3.5.2.3 Losses at the Upstream Junction Box, Section 3 to Section 4

Additional losses may be introduced at the storm sewer entrance. Based on the general head loss equation shown in Equation ST-39, the general formula to estimate the entrance loss is:

$$h_E = K_E * \frac{V^2}{2*g}$$ **(Equation ST-43)**

in which:

h_E = entrance loss (feet)

V = pipe-full velocity in the incoming storm sewer (ft/sec)

K_E = entrance loss coefficient (see Table ST-12)

In the modeling of storm sewer flow, the storm sewer entrance coefficients can be assumed to be part of the bend loss coefficient.

The energy principle between Sections 3 and 4 is determined by:

$$E_4 = E_3 + h_E$$ **(Equation ST-44)**

in which E_4 = EGL at Section 4.

Table ST-12 — Entrance Loss Coefficients for Outlet Control, Full or Partly Full Flow

(FHWA – HDS-5 2005)

Type of Structure and Design of Entrance	Coefficient K_e
• Pipe, Concrete	
Projecting from fill, socket end (groove-end)	0.2
Projecting from fill, sq. cut end	0.5
Headwall or headwall and wingwalls	
Socket end of pipe (groove-end	0.2
Square-edge	0.5
Rounded (radius = D/12	0.2
Mitered to conform to fill slope	0.7
*End-Section conforming to fill slope	0.5
Beveled edges, 33.7^0 or 45^0 bevels	0.2
Side- or slope-tapered inlet	0.2
• Pipe. or Pipe-Arch. Corrugated Metal	
Projecting from fill (no headwall)	0.9
Headwall or headwall and wingwalls square-edge	0.5
Mitered to conform to fill slope, paved or unpaved slope	0.7
*End-Section conforming to fill slope	0.5
Beveled edges, 33.7^0 or 45^0 bevels	0.2
Side- or slope-tapered inlet	0.2
• Box, Reinforced Concrete	
Headwall parallel to embankment (no wingwalls)	
Square-edged on 3 edges	0.5
Rounded on 3 edges to radius of D/12 or B/12 or beveled edges on 3 sides	0.2
Wingwalls at 30^0 to 75^0 to barrel	
Square-edged at crown	0.4
Crown edge rounded to radius of D/12 or beveled top edge	0.2
Wingwall at 10^0 to 25^0 to barrel	
Square-edged at crown	0.5
Wingwalls parallel (extension of sides)	
Square-edged at crown	0.7
Side- or slope-tapered inlet	0.2

*Note: "End Sections conforming to fill slope," made of either metal or concrete, are the sections commonly available from manufacturers. From limited hydraulic tests they are equivalent in operation to a headwall in both inlet and outlet control. Some end sections, incorporating a closed taper in their design have a superior hydraulic performance. These latter sections can be designed using the information given for the beveled inlet.

3.5.2.4 Juncture and Bend Losses at the Upstream Junction Box, Section 4 to Section 1

The analysis from Section 4 of the downstream "storm sewer-junction box" unit to Section 1 of the upstream "storm sewer-junction box" unit consists only of juncture losses through the junction box. To maintain the conservation of energy through the junction box, the outgoing energy plus the energy losses at the junction box have to equal the incoming energy. Often a junction box is installed for the purpose of maintenance, deflection of the storm sewer line, change of the pipe size, and as a juncture for incoming laterals. Although there are different causes for juncture losses, they are often, rightly or wrongly, considered as a minor loss in the computation of the EGL. These juncture losses in the storm sewer system are determined solely by the local configuration and geometry and not by the length of flow in the junction box.

3.5.2.4.1 Bend/Deflection Losses

The angle between the incoming sewer line and the centerline of the exiting main storm sewer line introduces a bend loss to the incoming storm sewer. Based on the general head loss equation shown in Equation ST-39, bend loss is estimated by:

$$h_b = K_b * \frac{V^2}{2 * g}$$ **(Equation ST-45)**

in which:

h_b = bend loss (feet)

V = full flow velocity in the incoming storm sewer (ft/sec)

K_b = bend loss coefficient

As shown in Figure ST-13 and Table ST-13, the value of K_b depends on the angle between the exiting storm sewer line and the existence of junction box bottom shaping. A shaped junction box bottom or a deflector guides the flow and reduces bend loss. Figure ST-14 illustrates four cross-section options for the shaping of a junction box bottom. Only sections "c. Half" and "d. Full" can be considered for the purpose of using the bend loss coefficient for the curve on Figure ST-13 labeled as "Bend at Manhole, Curved or Shaped."

Because a junction box may have multiple incoming storm sewer lines, Equation ST-45 shall be applied to each incoming storm sewer line based on its incoming angle, and then the energy principle between Sections 4 and 1 is calculated as:

$$E_1 = E_4 + h_b$$ **(Equation ST-46)**

3.5.2.4.2 Lateral Juncture Losses

In addition to the bend loss, the lateral juncture loss is also introduced because of the added turbulence and eddies from the lateral incoming flows. Based on the general head loss equation shown in Equation ST-39, the lateral juncture loss is estimated as:

$$h_j = \frac{V_o^2}{2 * g} - K_j \frac{V_i^2}{2 * g}$$ **(Equation ST-47)**

in which:

h_j = lateral loss (feet)

V_o = full flow velocity in the outgoing storm sewer (ft/sec)

K_j = lateral loss coefficient

V_i = full flow velocity in the incoming storm sewer (ft/sec)

In modeling, a manhole can have multiple incoming storm sewer lines, one of which is the main (i.e., trunk) line, and one outgoing storm sewer line (see Figure ST-11). As shown in Table ST-13, the value of K_j is determined by the angle between the lateral incoming storm sewer line and the outgoing storm sewer line.

Table ST-13 — Bend Loss and Lateral Loss Coefficients (FHWA – HEC-22 2001)

Angle in Degree (0)	Bend Loss Coefficient (K_b) for Curved Deflector in the Junction Box	Bend Loss Coefficient (K_b) for Non-shaping Junction Box	Lateral Loss Coefficient (K_j) on Main Line Storm Sewer
Straight Through	0.05	0.05	Not Applicable
22.50	0.10	0.13	0.75
45.00	0.28	0.38	0.50
60.00	0.48	0.63	0.35
90.00	1.01	1.32	0.25
Angles greater than 90.00 are not allowed.			

At a junction box, the engineer needs to identify the main incoming storm sewer line (the one that has the largest inflow rate) and determine the value of K_j for each lateral incoming storm sewer line. To be conservative, the smallest K_j is recommended for Equation ST-47, and the lateral loss is to be added to the outfall of the incoming main line storm sewer as:

$$E_1 = E_4 + h_b + h_j$$ (h_j is applied to the main storm sewer line only) **(Equation ST-48)**

The difference between the EGL and the HGL is the flow velocity head. The HGL at a junction box is calculated by:

$$H_1 = E_1 - \frac{V_o^2}{2 * g} \quad \textbf{(Equation ST-49)}$$

The energy loss between two junction boxes is defined as:

$$\Delta E = (E_1)_{upstream} - (E_1)_{downstream} \quad \textbf{(Equation ST-50)}$$

in which ΔE = energy loss between two junction boxes. It is noted that ΔE includes the friction loss, juncture loss, bend loss, and junction box drop.

3.5.2.5 Transitions

In addition to “storm sewer-junction box” unit losses, head losses in a storm sewer can occur due to a transition in the pipe itself, namely, gradual pipe expansion. Based on the general head loss equation shown in Equation ST-39, transition loss, h_{LE}, in feet, can be determined using:

$$h_{LE} = K_e \left(\frac{V_1^2}{2 * g} - \frac{V_2^2}{2 * g} \right) \quad \textbf{(Equation ST-51)}$$

in which K_e is the expansion coefficient and subscripts 1 and 2 refer to upstream and downstream of the transition, respectively. The value of the expansion coefficient, K_e, may be taken from Table ST-14 for free surface flow conditions in which the angle of cone refers to the angle between the sides of the tapering section (see Figure ST-15).

Table ST-14 — Head Loss Expansion Coefficients (K_e) in Non-Pressure Flow (FHWA – HEC-22 2009)

D_2/D_1	Angle of Cone						
	10°	20°	45°	60°	90°	120°	180°
1.5	0.17	0.40	1.06	1.21	1.14	1.07	1.00
3	0.17	0.40	0.86	1.02	1.06	1.04	1.00

This *Manual* does **NOT** allow pipe contractions within new storm sewers. The following table is provided for evaluating existing storm sewers where contractions may be present.

Table ST-15 — Typical Values for Sudden Pipe Contractions (K_c)
(FHWA – HEC-22 2009)

D_2/D_1	K_c
0.2	0.5
0.4	0.4
0.6	0.3
0.8	0.1
1.0	0.0
D_2/D_1 = Ratio of diameter of smaller pipe to large pipe.	

3.5.2.6 Curved Storm Sewers

Curved storm sewers shall not be used unless specifically approved by City. Derived from the general head loss equation shown in Equation ST-39, head losses due to curved storm sewers (sometimes called radius pipe), h_{Lr}, in feet, can be determined using:

$$h_{Lr} = K_r \frac{V^2}{2*g}$$ **(Equation ST-52)**

in which K_r = curved storm sewer coefficient from Figure ST-13.

3.5.2.7 Losses at Storm Sewer Exit

Derived from the general head loss equation shown in Equation ST-39, head losses at storm sewer outlets, h_{LO}, are determined using:

$$h_{LO} = \frac{V_o^2}{2*g} - \frac{V_d^2}{2*g}$$ **(Equation ST-53)**

in which V_o is the velocity in the outlet pipe, and V_d is the velocity in the downstream channel. When the storm sewer discharges into a reservoir or into air because there is no downstream channel, V_d = 0 and one full velocity head is lost at the exit.

Figure ST-13 — Bend Loss Coefficients (UDFCD USDCM 2002)

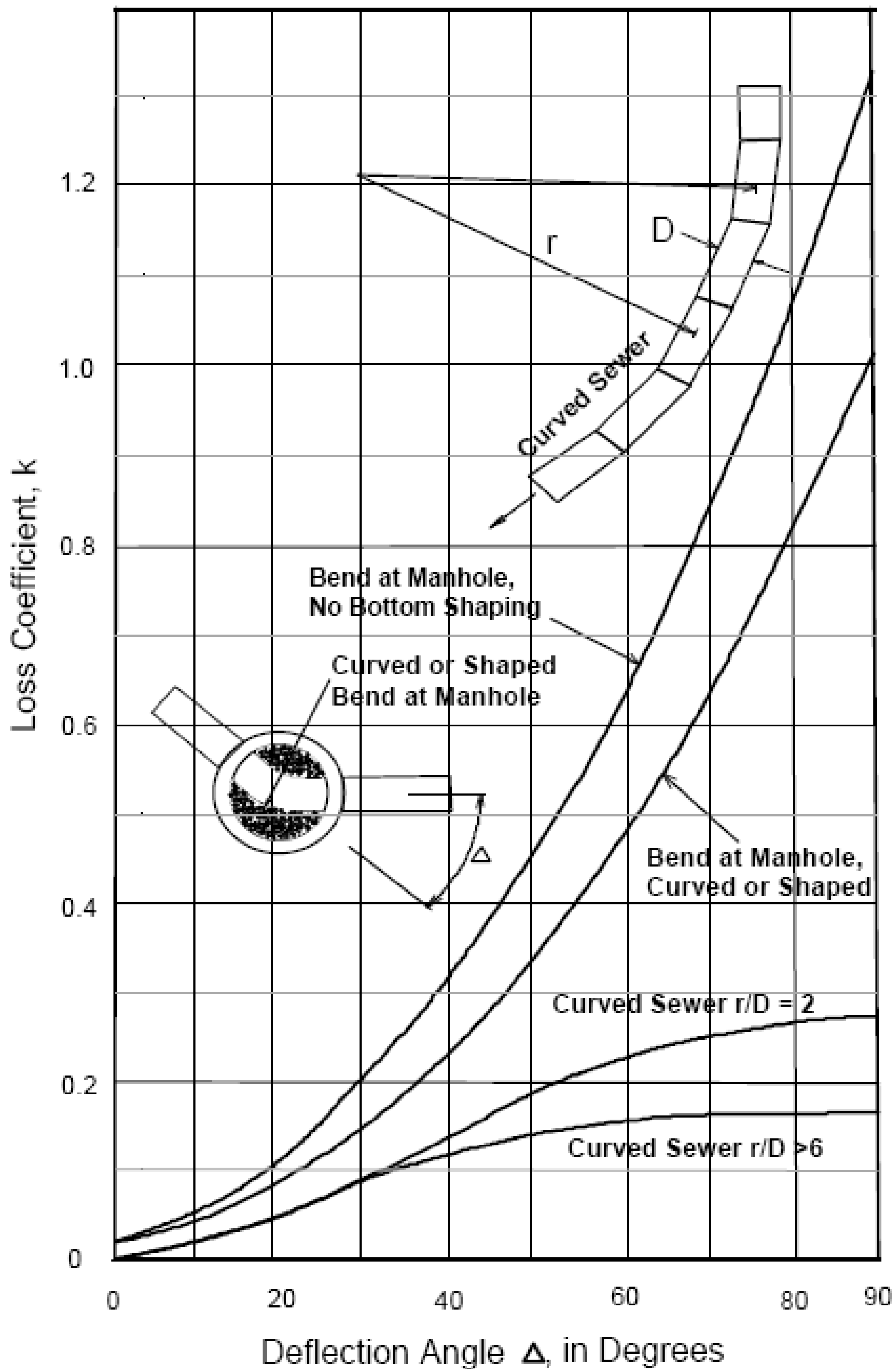


Figure ST-14 — Access Hole Benching Methods (UDFCD USDCM 2002)

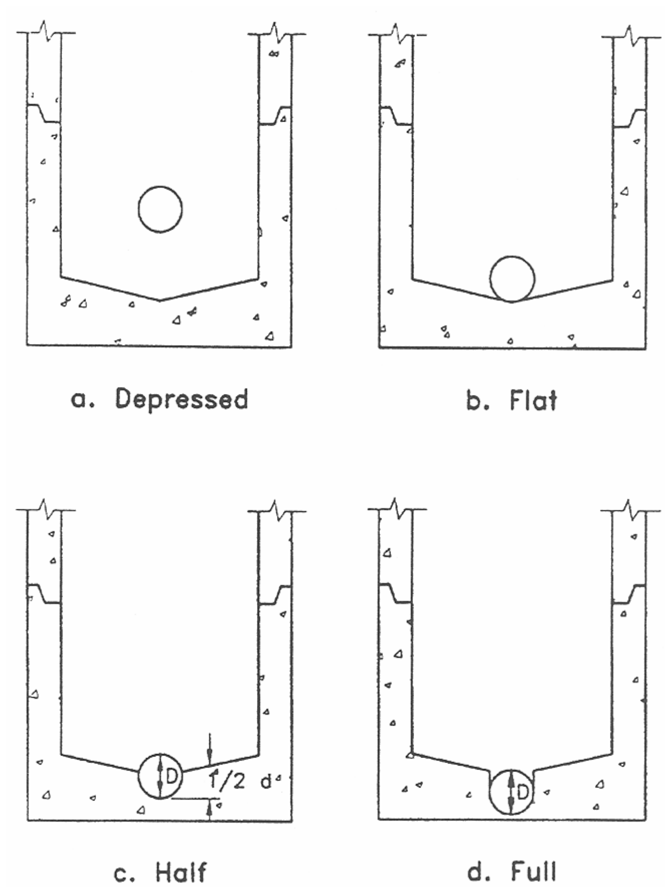
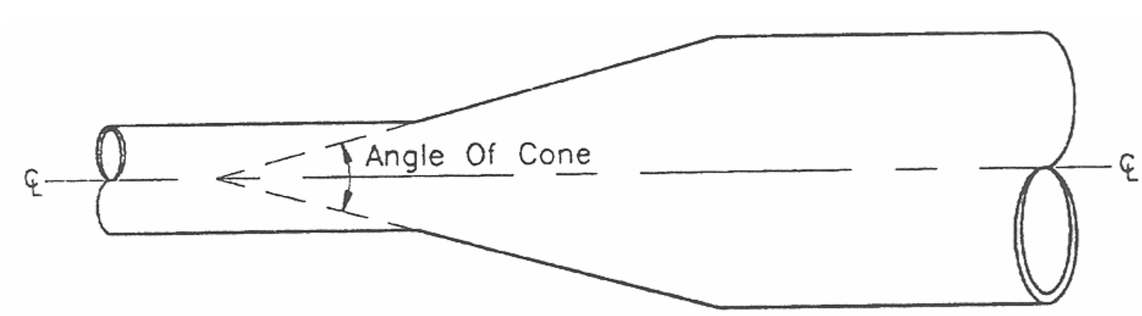


Figure ST-15 — Angle of Cone for Pipe Diameter Changes (FHWA HEC-22 2009)



4.0 REFERENCES

Akan, A.O. and R.J. Houghtalen. 2002. *Urban Hydrology, Hydraulics, and Water Quality*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall. Forthcoming.

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO). 1992. *Volume 9, Highway Drainage Guidelines, Storm Drainage System*.

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, 1991. *Model Drainage Manual*.

Denver Regional Council of Governments (DRCOG). 1969 (Rev. 1984). *Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual (USDCM)*. Denver, CO.

Federal Highway Administration (FHWA). 1986. *Bridge Deck Drainage Guidelines*. *FHWA Report No. RD-014*. Washington, DC: Federal Highway Administration.

Federal Highway Administration. 1961. *Design Charts for Open-Channel Flow*. Hydraulic Design Series No. 3 (HDS-3). Washington, DC: Federal Highway Administration.

Federal Highway Administration. 1984. *Drainage of Highway Pavements*. Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 12 (HEC-12). McLean, VA: Federal Highway Administration.

Federal Highway Administration. 1993. *Design of Bridge Deck Drainage*. Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 21 (HEC-21). Washington, DC: Federal Highway Administration.

Federal Highway Administration. 2001. *Urban Drainage Design Manual.* Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 22 (HEC-22), Second Edition. Washington, DC: Federal Highway Administration.

Guo, J.C.Y. 1992. *Technical Manual for Computer Model UDSEWER for Storm Sewer System Design*. Denver, CO: Department of Civil Engineering, University of Colorado at Denver.

Guo, J.C.Y. 1998a. *Storm Sewer System Design and Flow Analysis Using the Personal Computer Model UDSEWER*. Denver, CO: Urban Drainage and Flood Control District.

Guo, J.C.Y. 1998b. *Street Hydraulics and Inlet Sizing Using the Computer Model UDINLET*. Denver, CO: Urban Drainage and Flood Control District.

Guo, J.C.Y. 1999. *Storm Water System Design*. CE 5803, University of Colorado at Denver.

Guo, J.C.Y. 2000a. Design of Grate Inlets with a Clogging Factor. *Advances in Environmental Research* 4(3)181-186.

Guo, J.C.Y. 2000b. Street Storm Water Conveyance Capacity. *Journal of Irrigation and Drainage Engineering* 136(2)119-124.

Guo, J.C.Y. 2000c. Street Storm Water Storage Capacity. *Journal of Water Environment Research*, Vol. 27, No. 6. Sept/Oct.

Guo, J.C.Y. 2006. *Urban Hydrology and Hydraulic Design*. Highlands Ranch, CO: Water Resources Publications, LLC.

Virginia Department of Transportation (VDOT). 2002. *Drainage Manual, 4th Edition*. Commonwealth of Virginia. Location and Design Division: Hydraulics Section

Wright-McLaughlin Engineers. 1969. *Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual*. Prepared for the Denver Regional Council of Governments. Denver, CO: Urban Drainage and Flood Control District.

Pavement and Geometric Design Criteria for Minimizing Hydroplaning. FHWA Report No. RD-79-31, December 1979

Dah-Chen Wood. Public Roads, Vol. 52, No. 2, Bridge Drainage System Needs Criteria. U. S. Department of Transportation, September 1988

Federal Highway Administration. 1979. *Design of Urban Highway Drainage*. Washington, DC: Federal Highway Administration.

CHAPTER 7. OPEN CHANNEL FLOW

CONTENTS

Section Page
OC-

TABLES

FIGURES

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Purpose of the Chapter

The purpose of this chapter is to provide guidance for designing facilities to convey stormwater runoff in open channels. The goal of open channels is to convey stormwater runoff from and through urban drainage areas without damage to adjacent properties/developments, to the open channel, or to the storm drainage system connected to it. Specifically, this chapter provides information on physical channel criteria and design methodology necessary to design open channels according to City requirements.

Chapter Summary

Once stormwater runoff has been collected in a storm drainage system it continues to combine with other sections of the storm drainage system until, typically, culminating into open channels. Except for roadside ditches and swales, open channels are nearly always a component of the major drainage system. There are a number of factors which must be considered in determining whether to specify an open drainageway as opposed to an underground storm drain: material and installation cost, maintenance costs and problems, acceptability to the developer or home buyer, public safety, water quality, appearance, etc. Effective planning and design of open drainageways can significantly reduce the cost of storm drainage facilities, while enhancing the quality of the development.

In planning a development, the designer should begin by determining the location and the width of existing drainageways. Streets and lots should be laid out in a manner to preserve the existing drainage system to the greatest degree practical. Constructed channels should be used only when it is not practical or feasible to utilize existing drainageways.

This section covers the evaluation of capacity and stability of natural drainage channels, and design of constructed drainage channels.

City Open Channel Flow Requirements

To comply with the City requirements for open channel flows, channels must be planned and designed to address the applicable criteria outlined below:

- **Layout and Structure**
  - Safety of the general public and preventing damage to private property are the most important considerations in the selection of the cross-sectional geometry and type of open channel. Channel shape, type, and alignment should be selected to ensure that velocities and depths do not exceed those specified in Section 2.0 and Section 3.0 of this

chapter. The range of design channel discharges should be selected by the designer based on flood hazard risks and local site conditions.

- Channels must be designed with long-term stability in mind. Following the guidelines and design criteria presented in this chapter for designing open channels provides reasonable parameters that when met provide adequate channel stability. Regular channel maintenance will be a necessary part of maintaining channel stability as well. The design of open channels must consider the frequency and types of maintenance expected and make allowance for maintenance access along and within the channel.

- **Environmental and Regulatory**

  - Environmental and regulatory criteria as mentioned herein are not discussed in detail in this *Manual*. Local, state, and federal regulations must be reviewed and addressed for the appropriate agency having jurisdiction over impacted areas.

  - Environmental impacts of channel modifications, including disturbance of fish habitat, wetlands and channel stability, should be assessed and if needed remediation planned within the overall drainage design for such impacted areas.

  - Channel designs that impact existing open channels shall satisfy the policies of the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) applicable to floodplain management and regulation. Wherever possible, disturbance of natural channels/streams shall be avoided and encroachment onto flood plains shall be minimized to the fullest extent practical.

  - Coordination with other Federal, State and local agencies (US Army Corp of Engineers, US Fish and Wildlife Service, Arkansas Department of Environmental Quality, Arkansas Historic Preservation Program, etc.) concerned with water resources planning must be carried out as part of the design of open channels to ensure all laws and regulations are adhered to in a design.

Summary of Critical Design Criteria

The summary below outlines some of the most critical design criteria essential to design engineers for proper drainage design of open channels according to City of Tontitown's requirements. The information below contains exact numerical criteria as well as general guidelines that must be adhered to during the design process. This section is meant to be a summary of critical design criteria for this section; however, the engineer is responsible for all information in this chapter. It should be noted that any design engineer who is not familiar with Tontitown's Drainage Criteria Manual and its accepted design techniques and methodology should review the entirety of this chapter.

Maintenance Classifications – Primary Channels, Secondary Channels, and Tertiary Channels	
Primary Channels	▪ major open channel that serves as a primary waterway to conduct runoff generated in a large composite area (typically ≥ 30-acres). ▪ a channel that has a flood zone (floodway, floodplain, etc.) as determined/studied by the City and/or FEMA. ▪ to be maintained by the owner and/or City and shall be placed in a drainage and recreation easement. ▪ 100-year design storm with ≥2-foot of freeboard. ▪ Designate extent of 100-year water surface elevation on grading plan.
Secondary Channels	▪ a medium open channel that collects runoff from storm sewer systems, tertiary and other secondary channels, and feeds the runoff into primary or other secondary channels. ▪ drainage areas for secondary channels typically range from > 2-acres and < 30-acres. ▪ to be maintained by a POA, developer of the subdivision, or other responsible entity for a development and shall be placed in a drainage and recreation easement. ▪ 100-year design storm with ≥1-foot of freeboard. ▪ Designate extent of 100-year water surface elevation on grading plan.
Tertiary Channels	▪ a small minor channel that serves as a conduit to channel runoff (typically ≤ 2-acres). ▪ These types of channels are to be maintained by the owners of the property which the channel serves. ▪ 10-year design storm. Convey 100-year between structures.

More detailed information can be found in Section 2.5 and Table OC-7a

Table OC-1 – Grass-Lined Open Channel Design Criteria	
Use of channel type subject to City approval?	No
Maximum Normal Depth Velocity	≤ 5-fps for 100-year design
Manning's n – Used to check channel capacity (flow depth)	0.040 (or see Section 3.1.3, Figure OC-3 Retardance Class C)
Manning's n – Used to check maximum velocity (channel stability)	0.030 (or see Section 3.1.3, Figure OC-3 Retardance Class D)
Froude Number [3]	< 0.8
Longitudinal Channel Slope [1]	≥ 0.75% ≥ 1.00% if no trickle channel is present
Side Slopes (max.)	3H:1V

Table OC-1 – Grass-Lined Open Channel Design Criteria (continued)	
Channel Bottom Width (trapezoidal)	≥ 5-ft
Channel Bottom Cross-slope	1% to 2%
Centerline Curve Radius (feet) (subcritical flow)	≥ 2x the top width of the 100-year design storm
Centerline Curve Radius (supercritical flow)	Supercritical Flow NOT ALLOWED
Channel Bend Protection	See Section 3.1.5.1
Outfall Height Above Channel Invert	≥ 1-ft (with properly designed outlet protection)
Normal Depth outside of the trickle/low-flow channel	≤ 5-ft at 100-year design peak flow for fully developed watershed
Secondary Channels Freeboard [2]	≥ 1-ft
Primary Channels Freeboard [2]	≥ 2-ft
Trickle Channel (if any) sized for …	2.0% of 100-year design peak flow for fully developed watershed
Trickle Channel (if any) Bottom Width	≥ 5-ft
Low-flow Channel sized for …	5-year design peak flow for fully developed watershed
Low-flow Channel Bottom Width	≥ 5-ft
Low-flow Channel Depth	≥ 3.0-ft and ≤ 5.0-ft
Maintenance Access Road for *Primary Channels*	10-ft (min) stable surface with 12-ft (min) clear width, 20-ft at drop structures
Maintenance access locations from city streets or drainage easements…	Locations to be determined during the review process.
Drop downstream of each culvert or bridge crossing	See Section 3.2.3
Secondary Channels water surface profile shall be computed for…	1-, 2-, 5- 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year storm events
Primary Channels water surface profile shall be computed for…	1-, 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50-, and 100-year storm events
Utility location and depth near channels	No utilities are allowed between the top of banks except for crossings which must be ≥ 3-ft deep. No utilities are allowed between maintenance road stable surface and top of bank.

1 – Maximum channel slope controlled by maximum channel velocity.
2 – Superelevation must be added in curves/bends – See Section 2.2.4.
3 – Flows at Froude numbers between 0.8 and 1.2 are unstable and unpredictable and must be avoided.

Table OC-2 – Composite Open Channel Design Criteria	
Use of channel type subject to City approval?	No
Maximum Normal Depth Velocity (ft/sec)	≤ 5-fps for 100-year design
Manning's n – Used to check maximum velocity (channel stability)	See Section 3.2.1, Figure OC-3 (Retardance Curve D), Table OC-8
Manning's n – Used to check channel capacity (flow depth)	See Section 3.2.1, Figure OC-3 (Retardance Curve C), Table OC-8
Composite Manning's *n* calculated for channel and used in hydraulic computations	See Section 3.2.2, Equation OC-11
Froude Number [3]	< 0.8
Longitudinal Channel Slope [1]	Base on "new channel" roughness condition. See Section 3.2; ≥ 0.25%
Side Slopes (max.) in low-flow channel…[4]	2.5H:1V [TRM (preferred) or soil riprap (requires approval) reinforcement required]
Side Slopes (max.) above low-flow channel…[4]	3H:1V (grass-lined)
Channel Bottom Width[4]	≥ 5-ft
Channel Bottom Cross-slope[4]	"Flat bottom"
Centerline Curve Radius (feet) (subcritical flow)	≥ 2x the top width of the 100-year design storm
Centerline Curve Radius (supercritical flow)	Supercritical Flow NOT ALLOWED
Channel Bend Protection	See Section 3.1.5.1
Outfall Height Above Channel Invert	≥ 2-ft
Normal Depth outside of the trickle/low-flow channel	≤ 5-ft at 100-year design peak flow for fully developed watershed
Secondary Channel Freeboard [2, 4]	≥ 1-ft
Primary Channel Freeboard [2, 4]	≥ 2-ft
Low-flow Channel sized for …	5-year design peak flow for fully developed watershed
Low-flow Channel depth	≥ 3.0-ft and ≤ 5.0-ft
Maintenance Access Road[4]	10-ft (min) stable surface with 12-ft (min) clear width, 20-ft at drop structures
Maintenance access locations from city streets or drainage easements…	Locations to be determined during the review process.
Drop downstream of each culvert or bridge crossing	See Section 3.2.3
Secondary Channels water surface profile shall be computed for…	1-, 10-, 25-, and 100-year storm events
Primary Channels water surface profile shall be computed for…	1-, 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year storm events

Table OC-2 – Composite Open Channel Design Criteria (continued)	
Utility location and depth near channels	No utilities are allowed between the top of banks except for crossings which must be ≥ 3-ft deep. No utilities are allowed between maintenance road stable surface and top of bank.

1 – Maximum channel slope controlled by maximum channel velocity.
2 – Superelevation must be added in curves/bends – See Section 2.2.4.
3 – Flows at Froude numbers between 0.8 and 1.2 are unstable and unpredictable and must be avoided.
4 – See Figure OC-5

Table OC-3 – Concrete-Lined Open Channel Design Criteria	
Use of channel type subject to City approval?	Yes
Maximum Normal Depth Velocity	≤ 18-fps for 100-year design
Manning's *n* – Used to check maximum velocity and Froude Number ≤ 0.7	0.011
Manning's *n* – Used to check channel capacity and Froude Number ≥ 1.4	0.013
Froude Number [5]	≤ 0.7 [3] and ≥ 1.4 [4] under both Manning's *n*
Longitudinal Channel Slope [1]	≤ 1.00%
Side Slopes (max.)	1.5H:1V (unless structurally designed for steeper slope)
Channel Bottom Width	≥ 5-ft
Centerline Curve Radius (subcritical flow)	≥ 2x the top width for the 100-year design storm
Centerline Curve Radius (supercritical flow)	No curvature permitted
Concrete channel lining thickness	≥ 5-in when F_r ≤ 0.7 [3] ; ≥ 8-in when F_r ≥ 1.4 [4]
Outfall Height Above Channel Invert	≥ 1-ft
Secondary Channels Freeboard [2]	≥ 1-ft See Section 3.3.1.4
Primary Channels Freeboard [2]	≥ 2-ft See Section 3.3.1.4
Maintenance Access Road	10-ft (min) stable surface with 12-ft (min) clear width, 20-ft at drop structures
Maintenance access locations from city streets or drainage easements…	Locations to be determined during the review process.
Secondary Channels water surface profile shall be computed for…	1-, 10-, 25-, and 100-year storm events
Primary Channels water surface profile shall be computed for…	1-, 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year storm events

Table OC-3 – Concrete-Lined Open Channel Design Criteria (continued)	
Safety Requirements	6-ft chain link or approved equivalent fence/barrier required in areas where channel depth is ≥ 3-ft
Utility location and depth near channels	No utilities are allowed between the top of banks except for crossings which must be ≥ 3-ft deep. No utilities are allowed between maintenance road stable surface and top of bank.

1 – Minimum channel slope controlled by minimum channel cleaning velocity (3-fps) during low-flows.
2 – Superelevation must be added in curves/bends – See Section 2.2.4.
3 – Requires free draining granular bedding under channel cover at 6-inch minimum thickness.
4 – Requires free draining granular bedding under channel cover at 9-inch minimum thickness.
5 – Flows at Froude numbers between 0.8 and 1.2 are unstable and unpredictable and must be avoided.

Table OC-4 – Riprap-Lined Open Channel Design Criteria	
Use of channel type subject to City approval?	Yes
Maximum Normal Depth Velocity (ft/sec)	≤ 12-fps
Manning's *n* – Used to check maximum velocity (channel stability)	0.030
Manning's *n* – Used to check channel capacity (flow depth)	0.041
Froude Number [1]	≤ 0.8
Side Slopes (max.)	2.5H:1V
Use of soil riprap …	Section 3.1.5.2; Figure OC-5; Section 3.4.1.1
Rock specific gravity and other rock parameters	≥ 2.50 and see Section 3.4.1.1
Riprap rock size / gradation	Sizing – Equation OC-13 and Table OC-13 Gradation – Table OC-10 & Table OC-11
Riprap blanket thickness	≥ 2x d_{50} in normal channel ≥ 3x d_{50} for at least 3-ft at upstream and downstream ends of lining
Toe protection provided according to…	Section 3.4.2.4 & Figure OC-9
Centerline Curve Radius (subcritical flow)	≥ 2x the top width of the 100-year design storm
Centerline Curve Radius (supercritical flow)	Supercritical Flow NOT ALLOWED

Table OC-4 – Riprap-Lined Open Channel Design Criteria (continued)	
Channel Bend Protection – Riprap sizing…	Size riprap in bends according to Section 3.4.2.5. Use Equation OC-13 and Table OC-13 based on the adjusted velocity (V_a) from Equation OC-10.
Channel Bend Protection – Riprap extents…	Extend downstream of bend ≥ 2x the top width of the 100-year design storm.
Outfall Height Above Channel Invert	≥ 1-ft
Secondary Channels Freeboard [2]	≥ 1-ft See Section 3.3.1.4
Primary Channels Freeboard [2]	≥ 2-ft See Section 3.3.1.4
Riprap at transitions – Riprap sizing …	Use Table OC-13 by using ≥ 1.25x maximum velocity in transition.
Riprap at transition – Riprap extents …	Extend upstream by 5-ft and downstream by ≥5x design flow depth.
Granular bedding – Gradation…	See Section 3.4.4.1; Table OC-14
Granular bedding – Thickness…	See Section 3.4.4.1; Table OC-15
Maintenance Access Road	10-ft (min) stable surface with 12-ft (min) clear width, 20-ft at drop structure
Maintenance access locations from city streets or drainage easements…	Locations to be determined during the review process.
Secondary Channels water surface profile shall be computed for…	1-, 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year storm events
Primary Channels water surface profile shall be computed for…	1-, 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year storm events
Utility location and depth near channels	No utilities are allowed between the top of banks except for crossings which must be ≥ 3-ft deep. No utilities are allowed between maintenance road stable surface and top of bank.

1 – Flows at Froude numbers between 0.8 and 1.2 are unstable and unpredictable and must be avoided.
2 – Superelevation must be added in curves/bends – See Section 2.2.4.

Table OC-5 – Bioengineered Open Channel Design Criteria	
Use of channel type subject to City approval?	Yes
Maximum Normal Depth Velocity	≤ 2-fps for 5-year design ≤ 4-fps for 100-year design
Froude Number [2]	0.3 for 5-year design 0.3 for 100-year design
Longitudinal Channel Slope [1]	≤ 0.20%
Centerline Curve Radius (feet) (subcritical flow)	≥ 2x the top width of the 100-year design storm
Centerline Curve Radius (supercritical flow)	Supercritical Flow <u>NOT ALLOWED</u>
Design guidelines	See Section 3.5.7
Utility location and depth near channels	No utilities are allowed between the top of banks except for crossings which must be ≥ 3-ft deep. No utilities are allowed between maintenance road stable surface and top of bank.

Water surface profiles
1 – Maximum channel slope controlled by maximum channel velocity.
2 – Flows at Froude numbers between 0.8 and 1.2 are unstable and unpredictable and must be avoided.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

1.0 INTRODUCTION

1.1 General

Major drainage is the cornerstone of an urban storm runoff system. The major drainage system will exist whether or not it has been planned and designed, and whether or not urban development is wisely located in respect to it. Thus, major drainage must be given high priority when considering drainage improvements.

A core component of any major drainage system is open channels. Open channels are the most common major drainage system component used to transport all the stormwater runoff collected in drainage systems. Open channels are versatile and come in several different types and consist of several different channel components. Open channels are in effect the final instrument within a drainage system for handling stormwater and as such have the final interaction with stormwater before it flows into a major river or other large body of water.

While the primary function of open channels is conveyance of runoff, many design decisions contribute to the role of channels in the urban environment in terms of stability, multiple use benefits, social acceptance, aesthetics, resource management, and maintenance. It is important for the engineer to be involved from the very start of a land development project, so that the criteria in this *Manual* have bearing on the critical planning decisions involved in route selection for open channels within the major drainage system. The importance of route selection cannot be overstated since the route selected will influence every element of the major drainage project from the cost, to the type of channel to use, to the benefits derived to the community.

Secondary and primary open channels shall be placed in Drainage and Recreation Easements.

1.2 Types of Major Open Channels

The types of major drainage channels available to the designer are numerous. Section 2.3.1 describes in detail the types of channels engineers can consider as potential major open channels in urban areas and then select the one that addresses the hydraulic requirements, environmental considerations, sociological/community impact and needs, permitting limitations the best. Table OC–6 lists the types of channels discussed within this chapter along with the City’s attitude toward each channel type.

Table OC-6 – Acceptable/Preferred Open Channel Types

Channel Type	Preference Rating [1] 1 – most preferred 4 – least preferred	City approval required prior to implementation [2]
Natural	1	No
Grass-lined	2	No
Composite	2	No
Concrete-lined	3	Yes
Riprap-lined	4	Yes
Bioengineered	2	No [3]

1: Even though the City prefers to see specific channel types over others, the final channel type selected must be based on preference as well as applicability to the hydraulic conditions.

2: Channel types listed as requiring City approval means the design engineer will have to address in the drainage report why the certain type of channel had to be used (i.e. R.O.W. constraints, hydraulic requirements, etc.) in lieu of the City's most preferred channel types (1 and 2). Additionally, written authorization from the City will be required prior to implementing a "lesser preferred" channel type (3 and 4) into a final design.

3: Design of channel must be carried out by a designer considered to be an authority in the design of such channels. Credentials of the engineer of record shall be provided with the plan submittal for City review.

As discussed in the rest of this chapter, the selection of the channel type for any given reach of a major drainageway is a complex function of hydraulic, hydrologic, structural, financial, environmental, sociological, public safety, and maintenance considerations and constraints. Table OC-6 merely provides preferences the design engineer should keep in mind when selecting an open channel type for a project.

Besides defining channel types by their lining characteristics, channels are further defined according to the maintenance classifications outlined in Section 2.5. Every open channel within the City of Tontitown shall receive a designation as either primary, secondary, or tertiary which will establish the party responsible for maintaining a specific open channel in the City. Section 2.5 further defines the physical parameters of each type of these channels along with the designated party responsible for maintaining the channel.

1.3 Overview of Chapter

This chapter addresses the major topics related to the design of open channels, beginning with essential background on the issues of open channel planning and engineering (Section 1.4) and fluvial geomorphology (Section 1.5). General open channel hydraulics and preliminary design criteria are presented in Section 2.0. It is the responsibility of the designer to be knowledgeable of open channel hydraulics, and, therefore, the key principles and equations are reviewed without extensive background of the subject matter, theoretical considerations, etc. Section 3.0 contains specific design criteria for a variety of channel types and includes example calculations, typical cross sections, and other representative design details.

1.4 Issues in Open Channel Planning and Engineering

The most fundamental function of open channels is conveyance of the major storm runoff event, and an important characteristic is their stability during major and minor storms. Stability must be examined in the context of the future urbanized condition, in terms of both runoff events and altered base flow hydrology. *Base flow* within a channel is flow that is not caused by rainfall events, but rather aquifer seepage resulting from a variety of causes. Some of the most common base flow sources are yard irrigation, artesian groundwater, and other constant flow sources. Urbanization in the City of Tontitown commonly causes base flows to increase, and the planner and engineer must anticipate and design for this increase.

In addition to stability issues, there are many planning and engineering decisions that contribute to the role of open channels in the urban environment, in terms of multiple use benefits, social acceptance, aesthetics, and resource management. The choices of the type and layout of open channels are of prime importance.

Open channels for transporting major storm runoff are the most desirable type of major drainageway because they offer many opportunities for creation of multiple use benefits such as incorporation of parks and greenbelts along the channel and other aesthetic and recreational uses that closed-conveyance drainageway designs preclude. Open channels are also usually less costly and they provide a higher degree of flood routing storage.

The choice of the type of open channel is a critical decision in planning and design of major drainageways. The preferred channel is a stable natural one carved by nature over a long period of time that can remain stable after urbanization. Generally, the closer an artificial channel's character can be made to that of a natural channel, the more functional and attractive the artificial channel will be. In an urban area, however, it is rarely feasible to leave a natural channel untouched since urbanization alters the hydrology of the watershed. Consequently, some level of stabilization is usually necessary to prevent the channel from degrading and eroding. Channel type evaluation should be done in ascending order as shown in Table OC-6.

1.5 Fluvial Geomorphology

A drainage system within a watershed involves flowing water or movement of water, thus the term *fluvial*. When flowing water develops a drainage pattern or surface forms, the process is identified as *fluvial geomorphology*. Surface form characteristics represented by open channels (natural and manmade) behave in a complex manner dependent on watershed factors such as geology, soils, ground cover, land use, topography, and hydrologic conditions. These same watershed factors contribute to the sediment eroded from the watershed and transported by the stream channel. The sediments moved by the flowing water also influence channel hydraulic characteristics. The natural-like channel and stabilization systems recommended in this *Manual* are based on fluvial geomorphology principles. The remainder of this section will provide the reader with a basic understanding of the workings and evolution of open channels within an urban watershed.

1.5.1 Effects of Urbanization on Existing Stream Channels

In response to urbanization, existing open channels can undergo substantial changes, especially if channel stabilization measures are not instituted in the early stages of urbanization. Urbanization causes (1) significant increases in peak discharges, total runoff volume, and frequency of bank-full discharges; (2) the steepening of channel slopes if and where natural channels are straightened to accommodate new development (this practice is discouraged by the City); (3) reduction in sediment bed load from fully developed areas; and (4) eroding and degrading natural channels. These factors, in combination, create conditions that are conducive to channel instability—widening (erosion) and deepening (degradation) in most reaches and debris and sediment accumulation (aggradation) in others.

1.5.2 Stable Channel Balance

A stable channel is usually considered an alluvial channel in equilibrium with no significant change in channel cross section with time. This is a *dynamic equilibrium* in which the stream has adjusted its width, depth, and slope so that the channel neither aggrades nor degrades. In this case, the sediment supply from upstream is equal to the sediment transport capacity of the channel. Under watershed conditions with normal hydrologic variations affecting runoff and sediment inflow, some adjustments in channel characteristics are inevitable.

Stable channel balance is well displayed in the relationship proposed by Lane (1955a) for the dynamic equilibrium concept whereby:

$$Q_W * S \propto Q_S * D_{50} \qquad \textbf{(Equation OC-1)}$$

in which:

Q_w = water discharge (cfs)

S = channel slope (ft/ft)

Q_s = bed material load (tons/day)

D_{50} = size of bed material (in)

For a stable channel, these four parameters are balanced, and, when one or more of the parameters changes, the others adjust to restore the state of equilibrium. For example, if the stream flow increased with no change in channel slope, there would be an adjustment on the sediment side of the balance, with an increase in either bed material size or sediment load, or both. It is this principle on which the remaining open channel design equations and criteria are based in this chapter.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

2.0 OPEN CHANNEL DESIGN PRINCIPLES

This section is intended to provide the designer with information necessary to perform open channel hydraulic analysis related to channel geometry, channel lining, and flow characteristics. This section includes preliminary design criteria and identifies considerations in selection of channel type.

2.1 General Open Channel Flow Hydraulics

When performing open channel design, hydraulic analyses must be completed to evaluate flow characteristics including flow regime, water surface elevations, velocities, depths, and hydraulic transitions for multiple flow conditions. Hydraulic grade lines and energy grade lines shall be prepared on all design projects.

The purpose of this section is to provide the designer with an overview of open channel flow hydraulics principles and equations relevant to the design of open channels. The reader should already be familiar with the open channel flow principles discussed in this section. Water surface profile computations are not addressed herein, and the reader is referred to other references [such as Chow (1959), Daugherty and Franzini (1977), and King and Brater (1963)] for discussion of this topic.

2.1.1 Types of Flow in Open Channels

Open channel flow can be characterized in many ways. Types of flow are commonly characterized by variability with respect to time and space. The following terms are used to identify types of open channel flow:

- *Steady flow* — rate of flow remains constant with time.
- *Unsteady flow* — rate of flow varies with time.
- *Uniform flow* — velocity and depth of flow remain constant over the length of the channel. If a channel is uniform and resistance and gravity forces are in exact balance, the water surface will be parallel to the bottom of the channel for uniform flow.
- *Varied flow* — velocity, discharge, depth, or other characteristics of the flow vary over the length of the channel stream. For a steady flow condition, flow is termed *rapidly varied* if these characteristics change over a short distance. If characteristics change over a longer stretch of the channel for steady flow conditions, flow is termed *gradually varied*.

For the purposes of open channel design, flow is usually considered steady and uniform. For a channel with a given roughness, discharge, and slope, there is only one possible depth for maintaining a uniform flow. This depth is the *normal depth*. When roughness, depth, and slope are known at a channel section, there can only be one discharge for maintaining a uniform flow through the section. This discharge is the *normal discharge*.

The designer should realize that uniform flow is more often a theoretical abstraction than an actuality (Calhoun, Compton, and Strohm 1971), namely, true uniform flow is difficult to find. Channels are sometimes designed on the assumption that they will carry uniform flow at the normal depth, but because of conditions difficult, if not impossible, to evaluate and hence not taken into account, the flow will actually have depths considerably different from uniform depth. Uniform flow computation provides only an approximation of what will occur.

Manning’s Equation describes the relationship between channel geometry, slope, roughness, and discharge for uniform flow:

$$Q = \frac{1.49}{n} * A * R^{2/3} * S^{1/2}$$ **(Equation OC-2)**

in which:

Q = discharge (cfs)

n = roughness coefficient

A = area of channel cross section (ft^2)

R = hydraulic radius = Area (A) / Wetted Perimeter (P) (ft)

P = wetted perimeter (ft)

S = channel bottom slope (ft/ft)

Manning's Equation can also be expressed in terms of velocity by employing the continuity equation, Q = VA, as a substitution in Equation OC-2, where V is velocity (ft/sec).

For wide channels of uniform depth, where the width, b, is at least 25-times (25x) the depth, the hydraulic radius can be assumed to be equal to the depth, y, expressed in feet, and, therefore:

$$Q = \frac{1.49}{n} * b * y^{5/3} * S^{1/2}$$ **(Equation OC-3)**

$$y = \frac{Q^{0.6} * n^{0.6}}{1.27 * b^{0.6} * S^{0.3}}$$ **(Equation OC-4)**

$$S = \frac{(Q*n)^2}{2.2*b^2*y^{3.33}}$$ **(Equation OC-5)**

Solution of Equation OC-2 for depth is iterative.

2.1.2 Roughness Coefficients

When applying Manning's Equation, the choice of the roughness coefficient, n, is the most subjective parameter. Manning's n is affected by many factors and its selection, especially in natural channels depends heavily on engineering experience. Table OC-7 provides guidance on values of roughness coefficients n to use for channel design. **Both** maximum and minimum roughness coefficients shall be used for channel design to check for sufficient hydraulic capacity and channel lining stability, respectively.

When using the retardance curves for grass-lined channels and swales (Figure OC-3), use Retardance C for finding Manning's n for determining channel capacity (depth) in a mature channel and Retardance D for checking the stability (velocity) in a newly constructed channel.

The designer should be aware that roughness greater than that assumed will cause the same discharge to flow at a greater depth, or conversely that flow at the computed depth will result in less discharge. Obstructions in the channel will cause an increase in depth above normal depth and must be taken into account. Sediment and debris in channels increase roughness coefficients, as well, and should be accounted for.

Table OC-7 – Manning's n Roughness Coefficients for Channel Design (After Chow 1959)

Channel Type	Roughness Coefficient (n)		
	Minimum	Typical	Maximum
I. Excavated or Dredged			
1. Earth, straight and uniform			
a. Gravel, uniform section, clean	0.022	0.025	0.030
b. With short grass, few weeds	0.022	0.027	0.033
2. Earth, winding and sluggish			
a. Grass, some weeds	0.025	0.030	0.033
b. Dense weeds or aquatic plants	0.030	0.035	0.040
c. Earthy bottom and rubble/riprap sides	0.028	0.030	0.035
3. Channels not maintained, weeds and brush uncut			
a. Dense weeds, high as flow depth	0.050	0.080	0.120
b. Clean bottom, brush on sides	0.040	0.050	0.080
II. Natural streams (top width at flood stage ≥ 100 ft)			
1. Streams on plain			
a. Clean, straight, full stage, no rifts or deep pools	0.025	0.030	0.033
b. Clean, winding, some pools and shoals, some weeds and stones	0.035	0.045	0.050
c. Very weedy reaches, deep pools, or floodways with heavy stand of timber and underbrush	0.075	0.100	0.150
III. Lined or Built-Up Channels			
1. Gravel bottom with sides of:			
a. Formed concrete	0.017	0.020	0.025
b. Random stone in mortar	0.020	0.023	0.026
c. Dry rubble or riprap	0.023	0.033	0.036
2. Concrete Lined Channels and Swales	See Table OC-9		
3. Composite (Wetland Bottom) Channels and Swales	See Section 3.2.1 Equation OC-11, Table OC-8		
4. Grass-Lined Channels and Swales	0.040 (capacity check); 0.030 (velocity check) or see Section 3.1.3, Figure OC-3		

2.1.3 Specific Energy of Channel Flow

Specific energy (E) of flow in a channel section is defined as the energy head relative to the channel bottom. If the channel slope is less than 10-percent and the streamlines are nearly straight and parallel (so that the hydrostatic assumption holds), the specific energy (E expressed as head in feet) becomes the sum of the depth and velocity head:

$$E = y + \frac{V^2}{2*g} = y + \frac{Q}{2*g*A^2}$$ **(Equation OC-6)**

Where:

y = Depth of flow (ft)

V = Mean flow velocity (ft/sec)

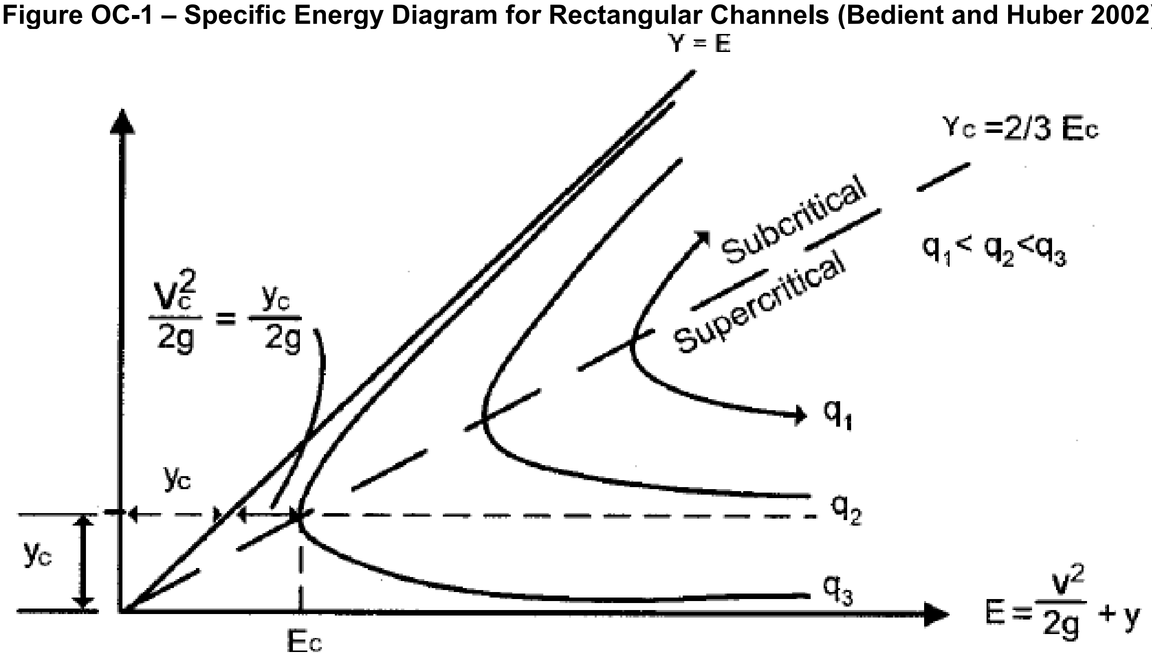
g = Gravitational acceleration (32.2 ft/sec^2)

Q = Discharge (ft^3/sec)

A = Cross-sectional area of flow (ft^2)

When specific energy is plotted against depth of flow, a curve with a minimum specific energy (E_c) results, as shown in Figure OC-1. At the minimum specific energy, E_c, the depth is called critical depth, y_c. Depths above critical depth, y_c, are subcritical, and below critical depth are supercritical (see additional discussion in Section 2.1.4).

Figure OC-1 – Specific Energy Diagram for Rectangular Channels (Bedient and Huber 2002)



q# = Q for particular discharge curve

2.1.4 Flow Regime

Another important characteristic of open channel flow is the state of the flow, often referred to as the flow regime. Flow regime is determined by the balance of the effects of viscosity and gravity relative to the inertia of the flow. The Froude number, F_r, is a dimensionless number that is the ratio of inertial forces to gravitational forces that defines the flow regime. The Froude number is given by:

$$F_r = \frac{V}{\sqrt{g * d}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation OC-7)}$$

in which:

V = Mean flow velocity (ft/sec)

g = Gravitational acceleration (32.2 ft/sec^2)

d = Hydraulic depth (ft) = A/T, cross-sectional area of water/width of free surface

Equation OC-7 applies to channel flow at any cross section. When:

- F_r = 1.0, flow is in a *critical* state
- F_r < 1.0, flow is in a *subcritical* state
- F_r > 1.0, flow is in a *supercritical* state

The following sections describe these flow regimes and associated criteria for channel design.

For all subcritical channels, check the Froude number using the *minimum* value of n for the relevant channel type from Table OC–7. When performing hydraulic computations for grassed channels, the n values for the 0.1-foot to 1.5-feet flow depth range (Table OC-8) are generally suitable for calculating the wetted channel portion for the initial storm runoff. For major runoff computations, however, the greater than 3.0-feet depth n values (Table OC-8) are more appropriate since flows will tend to lay the grass down to form a smoother bottom surface.

2.1.4.1 Critical Flow

Critical flow in an open channel with a free water surface is characterized by several conditions (Fletcher and Grace 1972):

1. The specific energy is a minimum for a given flow rate (see Figure OC-1).
2. The discharge is a maximum for a given specific energy.
3. The specific force is a minimum for a given discharge.
4. The velocity head is equal to half the hydraulic depth in a channel of small slope.
5. The Froude number is equal to 1.0 (see Equation OC-7).

6. The velocity of flow in a channel of small slope is equal to the speed of small gravity waves in shallow water.

If the critical state of flow exists throughout an entire reach, the channel flow is critical flow, and the channel slope is at critical slope, S_{cr}. A slope less than S_{cr} will cause subcritical flow, and a slope greater than S_{cr} will cause supercritical flow. Critical depth is the depth of maximum discharge when the specific energy is held constant. A flow at or near the critical state is not stable and as such flows at Froude numbers between 0.8 and 1.2 shall be avoided. In design, if the depth is found to be at or near critical, the shape or slope shall be changed to achieve greater hydraulic stability.

The general expression for flow at critical depth is:

$$\frac{Q^2}{g} = \frac{A^3}{T}$$ **(Equation OC-8)**

Where:

Q = Discharge (cfs)

g = Gravitation acceleration (32.2 ft/sec^2)

A = Cross-sectional area of flow (ft^2)

T = Channel top width at the water surface (ft)

When flow is at critical depth, Equation OC-8 must be satisfied, regardless of the shape of the channel.

2.1.4.2 Subcritical Flow

Flows with a Froude number less than 1.0 are *subcritical* flows and have the following characteristics relative to critical flows (Maricopa County 2000):

1. Flow velocity is lower.
2. Flow depth is greater.
3. Hydraulic losses are lower.
4. Erosive power is less.
5. Behavior is easily described by relatively simple mathematical equations.

6. Surface waves can propagate upstream and downstream, and the control is always located downstream.

Most stable natural channels have *subcritical* flow regimes. Consistent with the City's philosophy that the most successful artificial channels utilize characteristics of stable natural channels, major drainage design should seek to create channels with *subcritical* flow regimes.

A concrete-lined channel shall not be used for subcritical flows except in unusual circumstances where a narrow right-of-way exists. A stabilized natural channel, a wide grass-lined channel, or a channel with a wetland bottom are most preferred in the City storm drainage system. Do not design a subcritical channel for a Froude number greater than 0.8 using the velocity and depth calculated with the lowest recommended range for Manning's n (Table OC-7). When designing a concrete-lined channel for subcritical flow, use a Manning's n = 0.013 for capacity calculations and 0.011 to check whether the flow could go supercritical. If significant sediment deposition or sediment transport is likely, a Manning's n greater than 0.013 may be necessary for capacity calculations.

2.1.4.3 Supercritical Flow

Flows with a Froude number greater than 1.0 are supercritical flows and have the following characteristics relative to critical flows (Maricopa County 2000):

1. Flows have higher velocities.
2. Depth of flow is shallower.
3. Hydraulic losses are higher.
4. Erosive power is greater.
5. Surface waves propagate downstream only.

Supercritical flow in an open channel in an urban area creates hazards that the designer must consider. From a practical standpoint, it is generally not practical to have curvature in a channel with supercritical flow. Careful attention must be taken to prevent excessive oscillatory waves, which can extend down the entire length of the channel from only minor obstructions upstream. Imperfections at joints can cause rapid deterioration of the joints, which may cause a complete failure of the channel. In addition, high velocity flow at cracks or joints creates an uplift force by creating zones of flow separation with negative pressures and converts the velocity head to pressure head under the liner which can virtually tear out concrete slabs. It is evident that when designing a lined channel with supercritical flow, the designer must use utmost care and consider all relevant factors.

In the City of Tontitown, all channels carrying supercritical flow shall be lined with continuously reinforced concrete linings, both longitudinally and laterally. The concrete linings must be protected from hydrostatic uplift forces that are often created by a high water table or momentary inflow behind the lining from localized flooding. See Section 3.3.2 for concrete lining specifications. For supercritical flow, minor downstream obstructions do not create any backwater effect. Backwater computation methods are applicable for computing the water surface profile (see Section 3.1.6) or the energy gradient in channels having a supercritical flow; however, the computations must proceed in a downstream direction. The designer must take care to prevent the possibility of unanticipated hydraulic jumps forming in the channel. Do not design a supercritical channel for a Froude number less than 1.2.

Roughness coefficients for lined channels are particularly important when dealing with supercritical flow. Once a particular roughness coefficient is chosen, the construction inspection must be carried out in a manner to ensure that the particular roughness is obtained.

2.2 Preliminary Design Criteria

2.2.1 Design Velocity

Minimum and maximum velocities must be considered in the design of open channels. From structural and stability standpoints, maximum velocities are of concern; however, minimum velocities shall also be considered in design with respect to sediment accumulation and channel maintenance. For channels with high velocity flows, drop structures, suitable channel lining, check dams or other velocity controls will be necessary to control erosion and maintain channel stability. Froude number criteria also restrict velocity. *Subcritical* flow is desirable since the velocity for *subcritical* flow is less than that of critical or *supercritical* flow for a given discharge.

The flow velocity during the major design storm (i.e., 100-year) must recognize the scour potential of the channel, whether natural, grassed, bioengineered, riprapped or concrete-lined. Average velocities need to be determined using backwater calculations, which account for water drawdowns at drops, expansions, contractions, and other structural controls. Velocities must be kept sufficiently low to prevent excessive erosion in the channel. As preliminary design criteria, flow velocities shall not exceed velocities and Froude numbers given in Table OC-1 and Table OC-2 for non-reinforced channel linings and, in general, shall not exceed 18 ft/sec for reinforced channel linings. Channel-specific velocity criteria depend greatly on the channel lining and slope and are presented in more detail in Section 3.0 of this chapter for various types of open channels.

Computer modeling software, such as HEC-RAS, shall be used to estimate maximum velocities for erosive or hazard considerations or localized scour in a channel. Powerful computer modeling software, such as HEC-RAS, shall be used to design/analyze primary channels while channel design spreadsheets may be used in the design of tertiary and secondary channels.

2.2.2 Design Depths

The maximum design depths of flow should also recognize the scour potential of the channel lining and the bank materials. Scouring power of water increases in proportion to the third to fifth power of flow depth and is also a function of the length of time flow is occurring (USBR 1984). As criteria, the design depth of flow for the major storm runoff flow during a 100-year flood shall not exceed 5.0 feet in areas of the channel cross section outside the low-flow channel area, and less depth is desirable for channel stability. Low-flow channel depth shall be between 3.0 and 5.0 feet.

2.2.3 Design Slopes

2.2.3.1 Channel Slope

The slope of a channel affects flow velocity, depth, and regime and can have a significant impact on erosion and channel stability. Channel slope criteria vary based on the type of channel; however, the slope of a channel shall not be so steep as to result in a Froude number greater than 0.5 or 0.8, depending on soil erodibility characteristics (see Table OC-1 through Table OC-5), for the 100-year event. For steep-gradient drainageways, drop structures are necessary to meet slope criteria. For purposes of this *Manual,* design of drop structures is not specifically addressed. Instead the design engineer is directed to FHWA's *Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 14, 3rd Edition (HEC-14 2006)*, *Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipators for Culverts and Channels*. An important consideration in channel slope is sinuosity of the channel—straightening of a natural channel inevitably results in an increase in slope. Conversely, for a constructed channel, a design incorporating meanders can be used to satisfy slope criteria, potentially reducing the number of drop structures required.

2.2.3.2 Side Slopes

The flatter the side slopes, the more stable channel banks remain. For grassed channels, channels with wetland bottoms, and bioengineered channels, side slopes shall not be steeper than 3H:1V. Channels that require minimal slope maintenance such as concrete channels may have side slopes as steep as 1.5H:1V, although public safety issues must be taken into account. For riprap-lined channels, side slopes shall not be steeper than 2.5H:1V (rip-rap lined channels shall only be used upon approval by the City).

2.2.4 Curvature and Transitions

Generally, the gentler the curves, the better the channel will function. Channel alignments should not be selected to maximize land-use opportunities for lot layout; instead, lot layouts should be selected based on channel alignment. The centerline curvature of the channel shall have a radius of at least two-times (2x) the top width of the 100-year flow channel. The exception to this curvature requirement is for concrete channels that may experience *supercritical* flow conditions. From a practical standpoint, it is not advisable to have any curvature in a channel conveying *supercritical* flow, since minor perturbations can be amplified as they move downstream.

Superelevation must also be considered with respect to curvature. Curves in a channel cause the flow velocity to be greater on the outside of the curve. Due to centrifugal force the depth of flow is greater on the outside of a curve. This rise in water surface on the outside of a curve is referred to as superelevation. For *subcritical* flows, superelevation can be estimated by:

$$\Delta y = \frac{V^2 * T}{2 * g * r_c}$$ **(Equation OC-9)**

in which:

Δy = Increase in water surface elevation above average elevation due to superelevation (ft)

V = Mean flow velocity (ft/sec)

T = Channel top width at the water surface under design flow conditions (ft)

g = Gravitational constant (32.2 ft/sec^2)

r_c = Radius of curvature (ft)

Furthermore, transitions (expansions and contractions) are addressed in Section 3.4.2.6 (riprap-lined channels) and in Chapter 8 – *Culvert / Bridge Hydraulic Design*.

2.2.5 Design Discharge Freeboard

Residual discharge freeboard is necessary to ensure that a design developed using idealized equations will perform as desired under actual conditions. The amount of residual freeboard that must be allowed depends on the type of channel and the location and elevation of structures adjacent to the channel. Preserving existing floodplains maximizes “natural” freeboard. Freeboard requirements are addressed for specific channel types in Section 3.0 of this chapter.

2.2.6 Erosion Control

For major drainage channels, protection against erosion is key to maintaining channel stability. Unless hard-lined and vigilantly maintained, most major drainage channels are susceptible to at least some degree of erosion. The concave outer banks of stream bends are especially susceptible to erosion and may require armoring with riprap for grassed, bioengineered, or wetland bottom channels. While high sediment loads to a channel may occur as a result of active construction in the watershed, once an area is fully urbanized, the channel behavior changes. Flows increase significantly due to the increase in imperviousness in the watershed, and the runoff from these fully urbanized areas contains relatively low levels of sediment. As a result, the potential for erosion in the channel increases.

In the Tontitown area, most waterways will need the construction of drops (see HEC-14 2006) and/or erosion cutoff check structures to control the channel slope. Typically, these grade control structures are spaced to limit channel degradation to what is expected to be the final stable longitudinal slope after full urbanization of the tributary watershed. The designer should also be aware of the erosion potential created by constriction and poorly vegetated areas. An example is a bridge crossing over a grassed major drainage channel, where velocities increase as a result of the constriction created by the bridge, and bank cover is poor due to the inability of grass to grow in the shade of the bridge. In such a situation, structural stabilization is needed.

Another aspect of erosion control for major drainage channels is controlling erosion during and after construction of channel improvements. Construction of channel improvements during times in the year that are typically dryer can reduce the risk of erosion from storm runoff. Temporary stabilization measures including seeding and mulching and erosion controls such as installation and maintenance of silt fencing shall be used during construction of major drainage improvements to minimize erosion.

2.2.7 Utility Proximity

It is important to consider the location and depth of utilities near open channels. Utilities that are too close linearly and too shallow when crossing a channel pose future maintenance problems along with future planning issues. Keeping utilities out of the general operating plane of open channels allows the entity maintaining and operating the channel more flexibility when it comes to dredging, repairing, widening, or other improvements/maintenance. For this reason, in all channels within the City no utilities are allowed between the top of banks except for crossings which must be a minimum of 3-feet deep. Furthermore, no utilities are allowed between the maintenance road’s stable surface and top of bank. By implementing these proximity requirements between open channels and utilities the City hopes to prevent costly conflicts between open channels and utilities in the future.

2.3 Choice of Channel Type and Alignment

2.3.1 Types of Channels for Major Drainageways

The types of major drainage channels available to the designer are almost infinite. Selection of a channel type depends upon applying good hydraulic practice, environmental design, sociological impact, and basic project requirements. However, from a practical standpoint, it is useful to identify general types of channels that can be used by the designer as starting points in the design process. The following types of channels may serve as major drainage channels for the 100-year runoff event in urban areas:

Natural Channels—Natural channels are drainageways carved or shaped by nature before urbanization occurs. They often, but not always, have mild slopes and are reasonably stable. As the channel's tributary watershed urbanizes, natural channels often experience erosion and degrade. As a result, they require grade control checks and stabilization measures.

Grass-Lined Channels—Among various types of constructed or modified drainageways, grass-lined channels are some of the most frequently used and desirable channel types. They provide channel storage, lower velocities, and various multiple use benefits. Grass-lined channels in urbanizing watersheds shall be stabilized with grade control structures to prevent downcutting, depression of the water table, and degradation of natural vegetation. Low-flow areas may need to be armored or otherwise stabilized to guard against erosion.

Composite Channels—Composite channels have a distinct low-flow channel that is vegetated with a mixture of wetland and riparian species. A monoculture of vegetation shall be avoided. In composite channels, dry weather (base) flows are encouraged to meander from one side of the low-flow channel to the other. The low-flow channel banks need heavy-duty biostabilization that includes rock lining to protect against undermining and bank erosion.

Concrete-Lined Channels—Concrete-lined channels are high velocity artificial drainageways that are not recommended for use in urban areas. The use of this channel type is subject to City approval. However, in retrofit situations where existing flooding problems need to be solved and where right-of-way is limited, concrete channels can offer advantages over other types of open drainageways.

Riprap-Lined Channels (and use of TRMs)—Riprap-lined channels offer a compromise between grass-lined channels and concrete-lined channels. Riprap-lined channels can somewhat reduce right-of-way needs relative to grass-lined channels and can handle higher velocities and greater depths than grass-lined channels. Relative to concrete-lined channels, velocities in riprap-lined channels are generally not as high. Riprap-lined channels are more difficult to keep clean and maintain than other types of channels and are recommended for consideration only in retrofit situations where existing urban flooding problems are being addressed. The use of this channel type is discouraged and subject to City approval. A more desirable alternative to the use of riprap would be substituting turf reinforcement mats (TRMs) in place of riprap. This method is encouraged by the City when the use of such TRMs would adhere to the manufacturers recommended application. Refer to the EPA's *Storm Water Technology Fact Sheet – Turf Reinforcement Mats* document (http://www.epa.gov/ – EPA 832-F-99-002) for more information concerning the employment of TRMs.

Bioengineered Channels—Bioengineered channels utilize vegetative components and other natural materials in combination with structural measures to stabilize existing channels in existing urban areas, areas undergoing urbanization, and to construct natural-like channels that are stable and resistant to erosion. Bioengineered channels provide channel storage, slower velocities, and various multiple use benefits.

2.3.2 Factors to Consider in Selection of Channel Type and Alignment

The choice of channel type and alignment must be based upon a variety of multi-disciplinary factors and complex considerations that include, among others:

Hydraulic Considerations

- Slope of thalweg
- Right-of-way
- Capacity needs
- Basin sediment yield
- Topography
- Ability to drain adjacent lands

Structural Considerations

- Availability of material
- Areas for wasting fill
- Seepage and uplift forces
- Shear stresses
- Pressures and pressure fluctuations
- Momentum transfer

Environmental Considerations

- Neighborhood character
- Neighborhood aesthetic requirements
- Street and traffic patterns
- Municipal or county policies
- Need for new green areas
- Wetland mitigation
- Character of existing channel
- Wildlife habitat
- Water quality enhancement

Sociological Considerations

- Neighborhood social patterns
- Neighborhood children population
- Public safety of proposed facilities for storm and non-storm conditions

- Pedestrian traffic
- Recreational needs
- Right-of-way corridor needs

Maintenance Considerations

- Life expectancy
- Repair and reconstruction needs
- Maintainability
- Proven performance
- Accessibility
- Regulatory constraints to maintenance

2.3.3 Environmental Permitting Issues

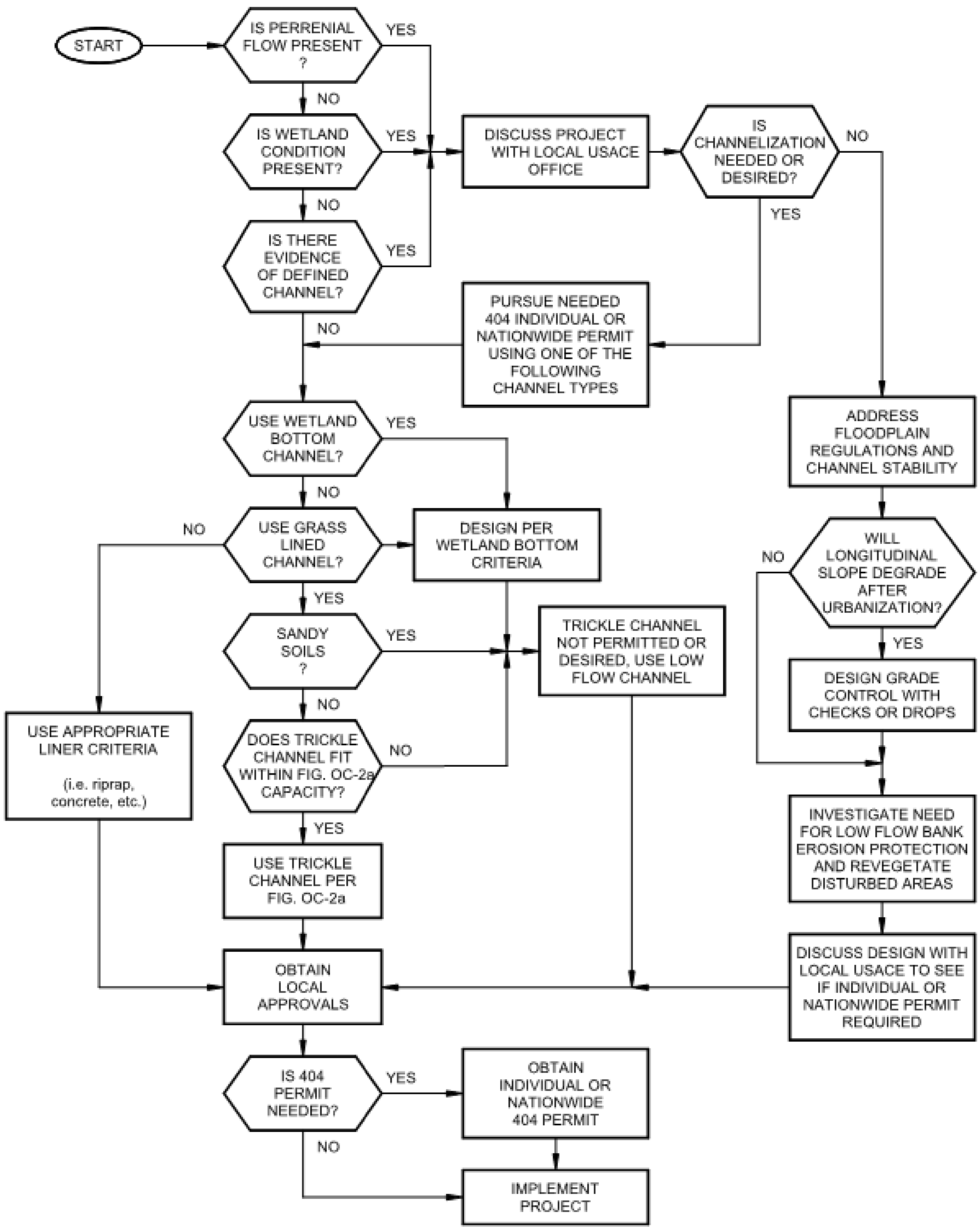
Environmental permitting, in particular wetland permitting, must be considered in selection of the type of major drainage channel. To assist with the selection of the type of open channel improvements where environmental permitting is concerned, a flow chart is presented in Figure OC-2. The flow chart contains a series of questions to be considered in light of the requirements in this *Manual* and the requirements of the CWA, Section 404 (dredge and fill in jurisdictional wetlands and "Waters of the United States").

Following along with the chart, the first step is to determine whether channelization is needed or desired. In many cases, a well-established natural drainageway and its associated floodplain could be preserved and protected from erosion damage. Therefore, before deciding to channelize, assess whether the value of reclaimed lands will justify the cost of channelization and whether a new channel will provide greater community and environmental benefits than the existing drainageway.

If the decision is to neither channelize nor re-channelize an existing drainageway, investigate the stability of the natural drainageway and its banks, design measures to stabilize the longitudinal grade and banks, if needed in selected areas, and obtain, if necessary, Section 404 permits and other approvals for these improvements. The reader should review the requirements for natural channels to ensure any channel improvements meet the City's requirements.

If the decision is to channelize, then determine whether the existing natural drainageway has a perennial flow, evidence of wetland vegetation, or is a well-established intermittent channel. This will often require the assistance of a biologist with wetland training. If any of these conditions exist, then the project is likely to be subject to individual or nationwide Section 404 permitting requirements. Regardless, it is suggested the designer check with the local USACE office early to determine which permit will be needed. Keep in mind that it is the responsibility of the proponent to comply with all applicable federal and state laws and regulations. Approvals by the local authorities do not supersede or waive compliance with these federal laws.

Figure OC-2 – Flow Chart for Selecting Channel Type and Assessing Need for 404 Permit (UDFCD USDCM 2002)



2.3.4 Maintenance

All drainage channels in urban areas will require periodic maintenance to ensure they can convey their design flow and to ensure that channels do not become a public nuisance and eyesore. Routine maintenance (i.e., mowing for weed control or annual or seasonal clean-outs), unscheduled maintenance (i.e., inspection and clean-out after large events) and restorative maintenance after some years of operation are expected.

A maintenance access road with a minimum passage width of 12 feet shall be provided along the entire length of all major drainageways except at drop structures, where a 20-foot maintenance road is needed. Maintenance roads shall consist of a 10-foot (minimum) wide stable surface consisting of a typical section directed by the City. This typical section will be determined during the design review process.

Furthermore, it will be necessary to consider the location and implementation of maintenance access ramps along drainage easements and where open channels intersect city streets. The purpose of a maintenance access ramp will be to serve for use by City maintenance vehicles in order to provide definitive and convenient access directly into an open channel. Maintenance access ramps may be something as simple as providing an embankment slope flatter than required for the specific channel type for which access is desired. Or it could include the detailed construction of a permanent heavy-duty pavement to provide access for more substantial equipment into the channel. Decisions about the locations and type of these access ramps will be determined by the City during the planning and review process.

Further discussion defining the party responsible for maintaining a specific type of open channel is discussed in Section 2.5.

2.4 Design Flows

Open channels must be able to convey the flow from a fully urbanized watershed for the design considerations outlined here. Methods for calculating the flow from a fully urbanized watershed are described in Chapter 3 – *Determination of Stormwater Runoff*. A channel's lining, geometry (depth, width, alignment, etc.), and freeboard characteristics shall be designed in relation to the channel's maintenance classification as defined in Section 2.5 of this chapter. Channels shall be designed according to the following design storm frequencies as follows:

- Primary Channel – 100-year design storm with ≥2-foot of freeboard
- Secondary Channel – 100-year design storm with ≥1-foot of freeboard
- Tertiary Channel – 10-year design storm and pass 100-year design storm between structures

Furthermore, open channels, including residual floodplain, must be able to convey the flow from a fully urbanized watershed, assuming no upstream detention, for the event with a 100-year recurrence interval without significant damage to the system. In addition to the capacity consideration of the 100-year event, the designer must also consider events of lesser magnitudes. For the low-flow channel in any type, 5-year storm peak discharge for fully developed conditions, assuming no upstream detention, is to be used for its design. Base flow must also be assessed, especially for grassed channels, channels with wetland bottoms, and bioengineered channels. Base flows are best estimated by examining already-urbanized watersheds that are similar to the planned urban area in terms of imperviousness, land use, and hydrology.

2.5 Maintenance Classification – Primary Channels, Secondary Channels, and Tertiary Channels

In order for open channels to function according to their original design, channels require periodic maintenance and repair. Maintenance and repair includes removal of debris and litter from the channel, regular mowing of grass-lined and composite channels to maintain expected channel roughness, repair and stabilization of eroded channel banks/bottoms, repair/replacement of any erosion control structures (including but not limited to channel drop structures, armored channel lining, etc.), and any other necessary upkeep work within the established open channel boundaries that don’t reflect the channels intended purpose.

Being that open channels provide a benefit to a number of different users the City has established certain physical and operational criteria that designate channels within the city limits as either primary, secondary, or tertiary. The definitions below along with Table OC-7a describe the use, maintenance/repair responsibilities, and designation criteria of each of the channels.

- Primary Channel – a major open channel that serves as a primary waterway to conduct runoff generated in a large composite area (typically ≥ 30-acres). More so, any channel that has a flood zone (floodway, floodplain, etc.) as determined/studied by the City and/or FEMA is to be considered a primary channel. Runoff conducted by primary channels is collected in the channel from discharges of a watershed, closed storm sewer systems, secondary and tertiary channels, and from the convergence of other primary channels. These types of channels are to be maintained by the City, POA, developer of the subdivision or other responsible entity for a development and shall be placed in a Drainage and Recreation Easement. Designate extent of 100-year water surface elevation on grading plan.

- Secondary Channel – a moderate open channel that collects runoff from storm sewer systems, tertiary and other secondary channels, and feeds the runoff into primary channels. Drainage areas for secondary channels typically range from ≥ 2-acres and ≤ 30-acres. These types of channels are to be maintained by a POA, developer of the subdivision, or other responsible entity for a development and shall be placed in a Drainage and Recreation Easement. Designate extents of 100-year water surface elevation on grading plan.

- Tertiary Channel – a small minor channel that serves as a conduit to channel runoff (typically ≤ 2-acres). These types of channels are to be maintained by the owners of the property which the channel serves. Maintenance responsibilities for the property owner end at the furthest point upstream and/or downstream the channel exists within the property's legal recorded boundaries. These channels are not typically placed in a drainage easement.

Table OC-7a – Open Channel Maintenance Classification Physical Criteria[5]

Channel Designation	Maintenance/Repair Responsibility Assigned to …	Channel Criteria for Design Event
Primary	City, POA, developer	≥ 2-foot flow depth [1] & ≥ 10-foot bottom width [1]
Secondary	POA, developer	≥ 1-foot flow depth [2] & ≥ 5-foot bottom width [2] or ≥ 1.5-foot flow depth [3] & ≥ 10-foot top width of flow [3]
Tertiary	Property owner / homeowner	≤ 1-foot flow depth [4] or ≤ 10-foot top width of flow [4]

1 – Channel criteria based on a trapezoidal ditch, 3:1 side slopes, 10-foot bottom width, 0.50% longitudinal slope, n=0.040, 10-min T_c with intensity from 10-yr. design storm, 30-acre drainage area.

2 – Channel criteria based on a trapezoidal ditch, 3:1 side slopes, 5-foot bottom width, 0.50% longitudinal slope, n=0.040, 10-min T_c with intensity from 10-yr. design storm, 4-acre drainage area.

3 – Channel criteria based on a typical v-bottom ditch, 3:1 side slopes, 0.50% longitudinal slope, n=0.040, 10-min T_c with intensity from 10-yr. design storm, 4-acre drainage area.

4 – Channel criteria based on a typical v-bottom ditch, 5:1 side slopes, 0.50% longitudinal slope, n=0.040, 10-min T_c with intensity from 10-yr. design storm, 4-acre drainage area.

5 – The criterion presented in Table OC-7a does not address every kind of channel type possible within the City. Instead the listed criteria provide an approximate basis from which to evaluate the maintenance classification of a channel that is either under design or already in use. The City will make the final determination of channel classification.

Backwater analysis computer modeling software, such as HEC-RAS, shall be used to design/analyze primary channels while channel design spreadsheets may be used in the design of tertiary and secondary channels. The City may require a backwater analysis for some secondary channels.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

3.0 OPEN-CHANNEL DESIGN CRITERIA

The purpose of this section is to provide design criteria for open channels, including grass-lined channels, composite channels, concrete-lined channels, riprap-lined channels, bioengineered channels, and natural channels. Open-channel hydraulic principles summarized in Section 2.0 can be applied using these design criteria to determine channel geometry and hydraulics.

3.1 Grass-Lined Channels

Grass-lined channels are considered by the City the most desirable type of artificial channels for new development where natural channels are absent or have limited environmental value. Channel storage, lower velocities, and aesthetic and recreational benefits create advantages over other channel types.

3.1.1 Design Criteria

Figure OC-4, Figure OC-5, and Figure OC-6 provide useful representative sketches for grass-lined channels showing the acceptable design criteria for grass-lined channels.

3.1.1.1 Design Velocity and Froude number

In determining flow velocity during the major design storm (100-year event), the designer must recognize the scour potential of the soil-vegetative cover complex. Average velocities need to be determined using backwater calculations, which account for water draw-down at drops, expansions, contractions, and other structural controls. Velocities must be kept sufficiently low to prevent excessive erosion in the channel. The maximum normal depth velocities and Froude numbers for 100-year flows in a grass-lined channel are listed in Table OC-1.

3.1.1.2 Design Depths

The maximum design depths of flow should recognize the scour potential of the soil-vegetative cover complex. The scouring power of water increases in proportion to a third to a fifth power of depth of flow and is a function of the length of time flow is occurring. As preliminary criteria, the design depth of flow for the major storm runoff flow shall not exceed 5.0-feet in areas of the channel cross section outside the low-flow or trickle channel area. Normal water depth can be calculated using Manning's Equation from Section 2.1.1 of this chapter.

3.1.1.3 Design Slopes

To function without instability, grass-lined channels normally have longitudinal slopes greater than or equal to 0.75%. Where the natural slope becomes steep enough to cause velocities in excess of those in Table OC-1 for grass-lined channels, drop structures shall be utilized.

With respect to side slopes, the flatter the side slope, the more stable it is. For grassed channels, side slopes shall not be steeper than 3H:1V.

3.1.1.4 Curvature

The more gentle the curve, the better the channel will function. At a minimum, centerline curves shall have a radius that is greater than two-times (2x) the top width (i.e., $2 \cdot T$) of the 100-year design flow (or other major flow) in the channel.

3.1.1.5 Design Discharge Freeboard

Bridge deck bottoms and sanitary sewers (culvert tops, etc.) often control the freeboard along the channel in urban areas. Where such constraints do not control the freeboard, the allowance for freeboard shall be determined by the conditions adjacent to the channel. For instance, localized overflow in certain areas may be acceptable and may provide flow storage benefits. In general, a minimum freeboard of 1-foot (or 2-foot if directed by the City) shall be allowed between the water surface and top of bank. Along major streams where potential for downed trees and other debris exists during a flood, <u>a 2-foot freeboard is required for the 100-year design flow</u>.

For curves in the channel, superelevation shall be evaluated using Equation OC-9 in Section 2.2.4 and shall be included in addition to freeboard.

3.1.2 Channel Cross Sections

The channel shape may be almost any type suitable to the location and environmental conditions. Often the shape can be chosen to suit open space and recreational needs, to create wildlife habitat, and/or to create additional sociological benefits (Murphy 1971). Typical cross sections suitable for grass-lined channels are shown in Figure OC-4.

3.1.2.1 Bottom Width

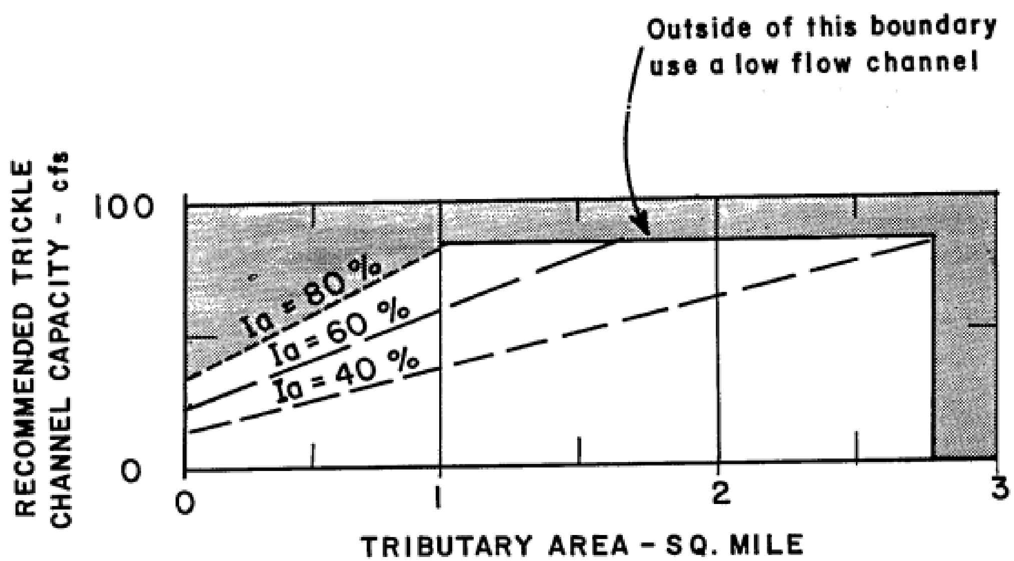
The bottom width should be designed to satisfy the hydraulic capacity of the cross section recognizing the limitations on velocity, depth, and Froude number. For a given discharge, the bottom width can be calculated using the depth, velocity, and Froude number constraints in Section 3.1.1.1 and Section 3.1.1.2 using Equation OC-2 from Section 2.1.1 of this chapter. In no case shall the bottom of the channel be any less than 5-feet wide.

3.1.2.2 Trickle and Low-Flow Channels

When base flow is present or is anticipated as the drainage area develops, a trickle or low-flow channel is required. Steady base flow will affect the growth of grass in the bottom of the channel, create maintenance needs, and can cause erosion. The purpose of a trickle channel is to convey very small perennial flows in a localized section of the overall channel to prevent adverse maintenance and erosion conditions. A trickle channel is a defined (typically narrow) longitudinal channel located at the thalweg of the overall prime channel and is used to transport steady base flows, typically ≤ 1-ft. Steady base flows that would be typical of a trickle channel to convey would be runoff from lawn irrigation, groundwater inflow into the channel, etc. Figure OC-2a should be used to estimate the required capacity of a trickle channel based on the percent of impervious area, I_a.

A low-flow channel on the other hand serves two essential purposes. One purpose of a low-flow channel would be that of a trickle channel just on a larger scale. Should a channel have a steady base flow that exceeds the limits set forth in Figure OC-2a for channel capacity for a specific impervious area, I_a, a low-flow channel having stabilized banks must be used in place of a trickle channel. Secondly, a low-flow channel is designed to carry stormwater runoff conveyed in the channel during smaller and more common design storm events. A low-flow channel is designed to flow full at a depth ≤ 5-ft. More specific sizing and design criteria for low-flow/trickle channels are presented in Section 3.1.4 of this chapter.

Figure OC-2a – Minimum Capacity Requirements for Trickle Channel (UDFCD USDCM 2002)



Note: I_a = tributary basin impervious area percentage using full basin development condition.

3.1.2.3 Outfalls Into Channel

Outfalls into grass-lined, major channels shall be at least 1-foot above the channel invert with adequate erosion protection provided at the outlet.

3.1.3 Roughness Coefficients

Designers shall use 0.040 and 0.030 for Manning's roughness coefficients, n, for grass-lined channels when checking design channel capacity (flow depth) and design maximum velocity (channel stability), respectively. In addition to these two set Manning's n, the designer is allowed to determine project specific roughness coefficients for grass-lined channels. Project specific roughness coefficients for grass-lined channels shall be determined based upon the product of the velocity and the hydraulic radius for different vegetative retardance classes (see Figure OC-3). When using the retardance curves for grass-lined channels, use Retardance C for finding Manning's n for determining channel capacity (depth) in a mature channel and Retardance D for finding the controlling velocity in a newly constructed channel to determine stability. The designer is referenced to *SCS Technical Paper No. 61 – Handbook of Channel Design for Soil and Water Conservation* and FHWA's *Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 15, 3rd Edition (HEC-15 2005)* for additional information concerning the background and development of the retardance curves in Figure OC-3.

3.1.4 Trickle and Low-Flow Channels

The low flows and present base flows from urban areas must be given specific attention. Waterways which are normally dry prior to urbanization will often have a continuous base flow after urbanization, both overland and from groundwater inflow. Continuous flow over grass or what used to be intermittent waterways will cause the channel profile to degrade, its cross-section to widen, its meanders to increase, destroy a healthy grass stand and may create boggy nuisance conditions.

A trickle channel with a porous bottom (i.e., unlined or riprapped) or a low-flow channel is required for all urban grass-lined channels. In some cases, a traditional concrete trickle channel may be necessary, but should be limited to headland tributary channels created in areas where no natural channel previously existed. However, low-flow/trickle channels with natural-like linings are preferable. Trickle channels with natural-like linings offer an advantage over concrete-lined trickle channels because they more closely mimic natural channels, have greater aesthetic appeal, and provide habitat benefits and vegetative diversity. These linings are best when porous and allow exchange of water with adjacent groundwater table and sub-irrigate vegetation along the channel. In addition, a vegetated low-flow channel provides a degree of water quality treatment, unlike concrete lined channels that tend to flush pollutants accumulated on the impervious lining downstream during runoff events.

Steady base and/or low flows must be carried in a trickle channel or a low-flow channel. Trickle channels are to be used to pass constant base flows from groundwater or the return flow from irrigation or other constant sources of water runoff. The capacity of a trickle channel shall be 2.0% of the major (100-year storm) design flow for the fully developed condition assuming no upstream detention. Low-flow channels shall be used for larger major drainageways, streams, and rivers and for channels located on sandy soils. A low-flow channel shall have a minimum capacity of passing the 5-year storm peak flow under the fully developed watershed conditions, assuming no upstream detention. To the extent practicable, a low-flow channel shall be gently sloped and shallow to promote flow through the channel's vegetation. See Figure OC-5 and Figure OC-6 for typical details of grass-lined channels with trickle and low-flow channels.

Using a soil-riprap mix for the low-flow channel lining can provide a stable, vegetated low-flow channel for grass-lined wetland bottom and bioengineered channels. Soil and riprap shall be mixed prior to placement for these low-flow channels. Soil-riprap low-flow channels shall have a cross slope of 1% to 2%. It's longitudinal slope shall be consistent with the channel type used.

Figure OC-3 – Manning's *n* vs. *VR* for Two Retardances in Grass-Lined Channels (taken from SCS-TP-61 Rev. 1954)

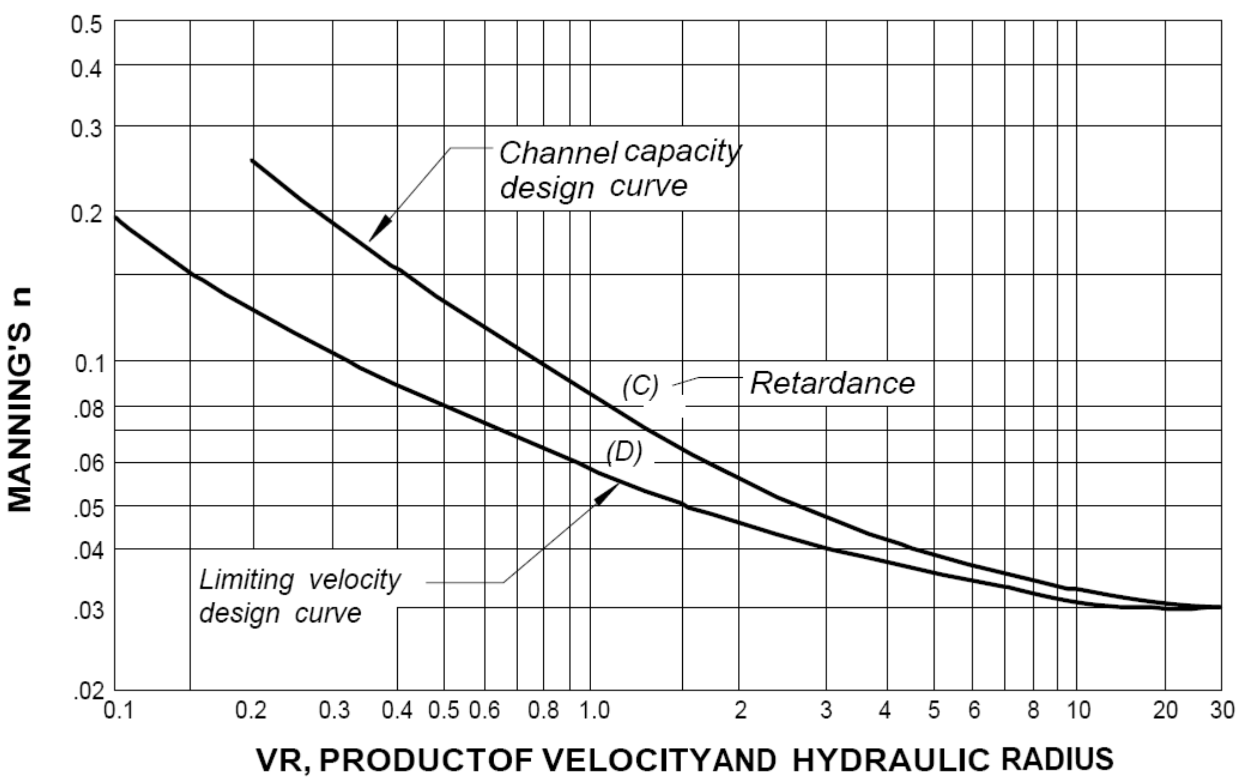
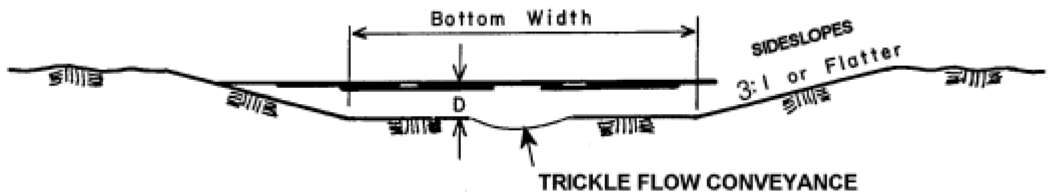
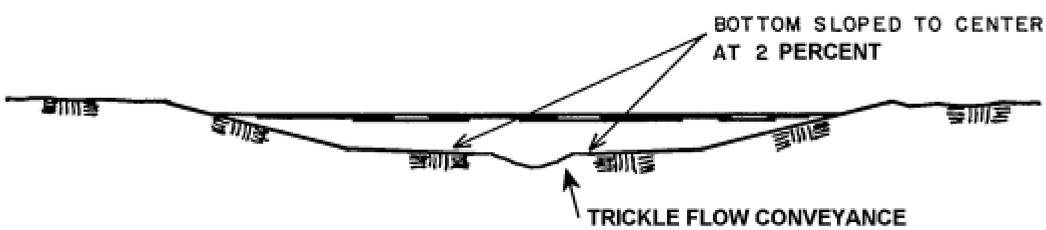


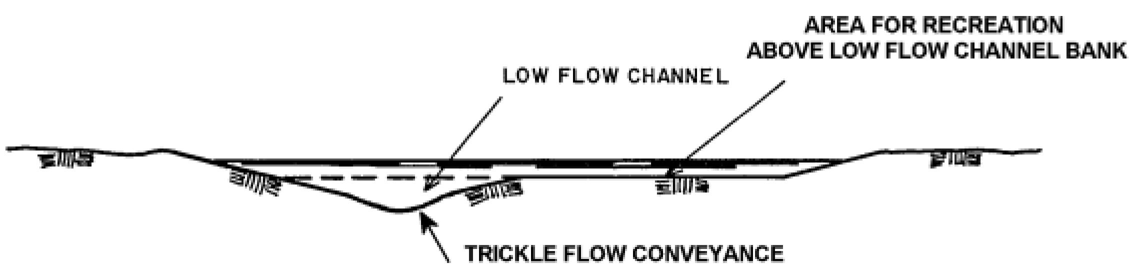
Figure OC-4 – Typical Grassed Channels (IDFCD USDCM 2002)



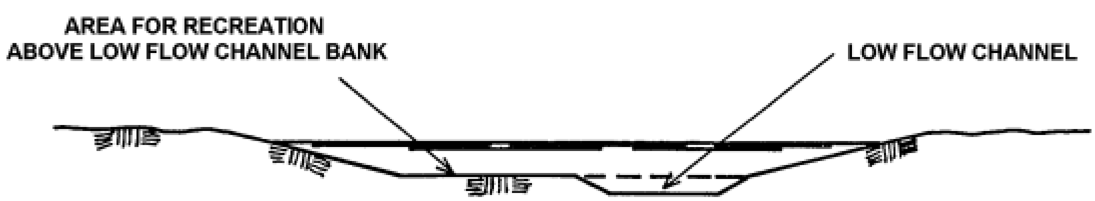
CROSS SECTION WITH OVAL OR SLOPED BOTTOM WITH TRICKLE CHANNEL



CROSS SECTION WITH OVAL OR SLOPED BOTTOM WITH TRICKLE CHANNEL

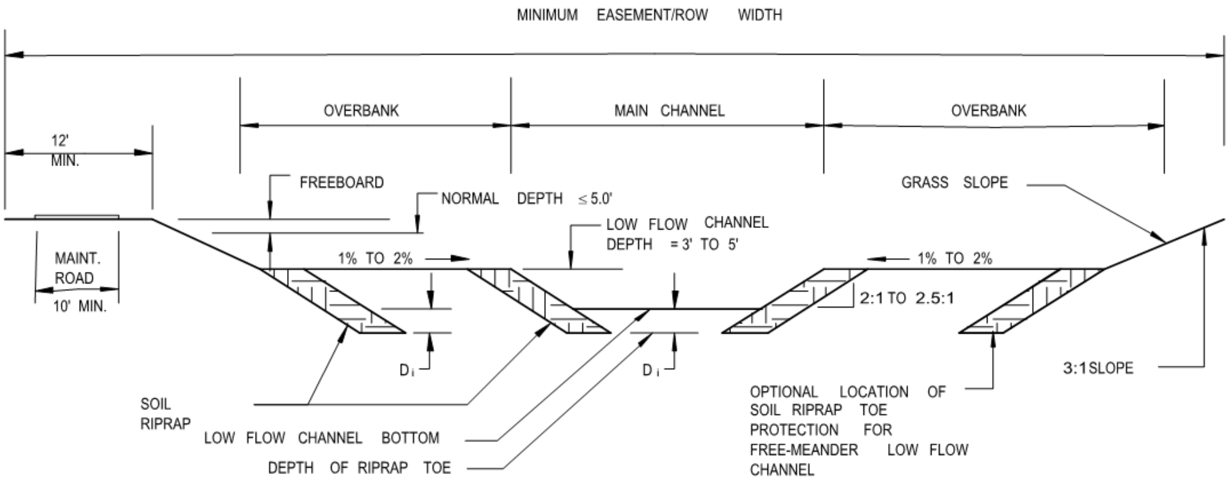


CROSS SECTION WITH LOW FLOW CHANNEL WITH TRICKLE CHANNEL
AREA FOR MAJOR DRAINAGE RUNOFF



CROSS SECTION WITH LOW FLOW CHANNEL WITH
OVERFLOW AREA FOR MAJOR DRAINAGE RUNOFF

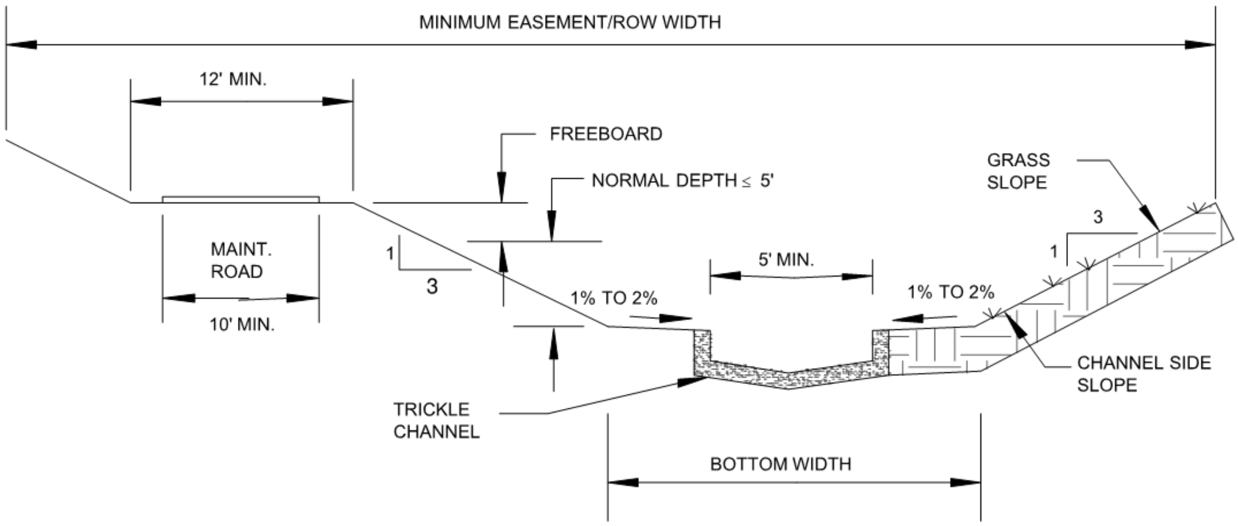
Figure OC-5 – Composite Grass-lined Channel with a Low-Flow Channel, including a Wetland Bottom Low-Flow Channel (UDFCD USDCM 2002)



NOTE:

1. Low Flow Channel: Capacity to be able to pass the 5-year storm peak discharge based on fully developed tributary watershed peak flow.
2. Normal Depth: Flow depth for 100-year flow shall not exceed 5-feet, not including the low flow channel depth. 100-year flow velocity at normal depth shall not exceed 5-ft/sec.
3. Freeboard: Freeboard to be 1-foot (min.) for Secondary Channels and 2-foot (min.) for Primary channels.
4. Maintenance Access Road: Minimum stable width to be 10-feet with a clear width of 12-feet.
5. Right-of-Way / Easement Width: Minimum width to include freeboard and maintenance access road.
6. Overbank: Flow in excess of main channel to be carried in this area. Area may be used for recreation purposes.
7. D_i = 3-foot (minimum)
8. Channel sideslope above low-flow channel 3H:1V or flatter, even if lined with soil riprap.
9. Froude number for all flows shall not exceed 0.8.
10. The channel can be designed to have the low-flow section to have a wetland bottom.

Figure OC-6 – Grass-lined Channel with a Trickle Channel (UDFCD USDCM 2002)



NOTE:

1. Bottom Width: Consistent with maximum allowable depth and velocity requirements shall not be less than trickle channel width.
2. Trickle Channel: Capacity to be approximately 2.0% of 100-year flow for the fully developed, undetained condition tributary watershed peak flow. Use natural lining when practical.
3. Normal Depth: Normal depth at 100-year flow shall not exceed 5-feet. Maximum 100-year flow velocity at normal depth shall not exceed 5-ft/sec.
4. Freeboard: Freeboard to be 1-foot (min.) for Secondary Channels and 2-foot (min.) for Primary channels.
5. Maintenance Access Road: Minimum stable width to be 10-feet with clear width of 12-feet.
6. Easement/Right-of-Way Width: Minimum width to include freeboard and maintenance access road.
7. Channel Side Slope: Maximum side slope for grassed channels to be no steeper than 3:1.
8. Froude number: Maximum value for minor and major floods shall not exceed 0.8.

3.1.5 Erosion Control

Grassed channels are erodible to some degree. Experience has shown that it is uneconomical to design a grassed channel that is completely protected from erosion during a major storm. It is far better to provide reasonably erosion-resistant design with the recognition that additional erosion-control measures and corrective steps will be needed after a major runoff event. The use of drops and checks (see HEC-14 2006) at regular intervals in a grassed channel is almost always needed to safeguard the channel from serious degradation and erosion by limiting velocities in the channel and dissipating excess energy at these structures. Take advantage of other infrastructure crossing the channel, such as a concrete-encased sewer crossing the channel that can be designed to also serve the function of a grade control structure or a drop structure. Erosion tends to occur at the edges and immediately upstream and downstream of a drop. Proper shaping of the crest and the use of riprap at all drops is necessary. Grade control structures will also protect healthy and mature native vegetation (i.e., trees, shrubs, grasses, wetlands) and reduce long-term maintenance needs.

3.1.5.1 Erosion at Bends

Special erosion control measures are often needed at bends, (see Section 3.1.1.4). An estimate of protection and velocity along the outside of the bend needs to be made using the following guidelines: When $r_c/T \geq 8.0$ (r_c = channel centerline radius, T = top width of water during the major design storm), no erosion protection is needed for the bank on the outside of the bend for channels meeting the velocity and depth criteria specified in this *Manual* for grass-lined channels. When $r_c/T < 8.0$, protect the bank on the outside of the bend with TRMs or riprap sized per Section 3.4.2.3 using an adjusted channel velocity determined using Equation OC-10. (TRMS are the approved method. The use of riprap will require approval by the City.)

$$V_a = (-0.147 * \frac{r_c}{T} + 2.176) * V$$ **(Equation OC-10)**

in which:

V_a = adjusted channel velocity for riprap sizing along the outside of channel bends (ft/sec)

V = mean channel velocity for the peak flow of the major design flood (ft/sec)

r_c = channel centerline radius (ft)

T = Top width of water during the major design flood (ft)

TRMs or riprap shall be applied to the outside ¼ of the channel bottom and to the channel side slope for the entire length of the bend plus a distance of $1 \cdot T$ upstream and $2 \cdot T$ downstream of the bend. When using riprap, as an alternative to lining the channel bottom, extend the riprap liner at the channel side slope to 5-feet below the channel's bottom.

3.1.5.2 Riprap Lining of Grass-lined Channels

For long-term maintenance needs, it is required that riprap channel linings be used only in the low-flow channel portion of a composite channel, but not on the banks above the low-flow channel section, nor on the banks of other grass-lined channels, with the exception of use of riprap at bends as discussed above. For this reason, whenever soil-riprap linings are used above the low-flow section, a side-slope typically used for grass-line channels is required (i.e., 3H:1V).

3.1.6 Water Surface Profile

Water surface profiles shall be computed for all channels, for the 10-year and 100-year events. Computation of the water surface profile shall include standard backwater methods, taking into consideration all losses due to changes in velocity, drops, bridge openings, and other obstructions. Computations shall begin at a known point and extend in an upstream direction for subcritical flow. It is for this reason that the channel shall be designed from a downstream direction to an upstream direction. It is necessary to show the hydraulic and energy grade lines on all preliminary and final drawings to help ensure against errors.

The designer must remember that open-channel flow in urban settings is usually non-uniform because of bridge openings, curves, and structures. This necessitates the use of backwater computations for all final channel design work. Additional information on generating water surface profiles for channels containing bridges and other structures can be found in Chapter 4 – *Culvert Hydraulics*. The designer is encouraged to make use of computer modeling software, such as HEC-RAS, to carry out water surface profile calculations and checks.

3.1.7 Maintenance

Grass-lined channels must be designed with maintainability in mind. Section 2.3.4 provides guidance for elements of design that permit good maintenance of these installations.

3.2 Composite Channels

When the trickle channel flow capacity limits, as discussed in Section 3.1.4, are exceeded the use of a composite channel is required, namely a channel with a stabilized low-flow section and an overflow section above it to carry major flow. Composite channels are, in essence, grass-lined channels in which more dense vegetation (including wetland-type) is encouraged to grow on the bottom and sides of the low-flow channel. Hence, they are sometimes known as “wetland bottom” channels. Under certain circumstances, such as when existing wetland areas are affected or natural channels are modified, the USACE’s Section 404 permitting process may mandate the use of composite channels that will have wetland vegetation in their bottoms. In other cases, a composite channel with a wetland bottom low-flow channel may better suit individual site needs if used to mitigate wetland damages elsewhere or if used to enhance urban stormwater runoff quality. Composite channels can be closely related to bioengineered and natural channels. Composite channels can provide aesthetic benefits, habitat for aquatic, terrestrial and avian wildlife and water quality enhancement as base flows come in contact with vegetation.

Wetland bottom vegetation within a composite channel will trap sediment and, thereby, reduce the low-flow channel’s flood carrying capacity over time. To compensate for this the channel roughness factor used for design must be higher than for a grass-lined channel. As a result, more right-of-way is required for composite channels that have the potential for developing wetlands in their bottom.

3.2.1 Design Criteria

The simplified design procedures in this *Manual* are based on assumptions that the flow depth is affected by the maturity of vegetation in the low-flow channel, affects the channel roughness, and the rate of sediment deposition on the bottom. These assumptions are based on modern hydraulic publications and observed sediment loading of stormwater laden streams in urban areas across the country.

The recommended criteria parallel the criteria for the design of grass-lined channels (Section 3.1), with several notable differences. Composite channels are, in essence, grass-lined channels in which more dense vegetation (including wetland-type) is encouraged to grow on the bottom and sides of the low-flow channel. From a design perspective, composite channels are differentiated from smaller grass-lined channels by (1) the absence of an impermeable trickle channel, (2) gentler longitudinal slopes and wider bottom widths that encourage shallow, slow flows, (3) greater presence of hydrophytic vegetation along the channel's bottom and lower banks, and (4) non-applicability of the 1% to 2% cross-slope criterion (See figures in Section 3.1). Another major difference is that a wetland bottom channel should be designed as a low-flow channel having a capacity to carry the 2-year flood peak, instead of the ⅓ to ½ of the 2-year peak required for low flow channels. Figure OC-5 illustrates a representative wetland bottom composite channel.

The use of an appropriate Manning's n in the design of a composite channel is critical. In designing low-flow channels for composite channels, the engineer must account for two flow roughness conditions. To ensure vertical stability, the longitudinal slope of the channel should be first calculated and fixed assuming there is no wetland vegetation on the bottom (i.e., "new channel"). Next, in order to ensure adequate flow capacity after the low-flow channel vegetation matures and some sedimentation occurs, the channel's bottom is widened to find the channel cross section needed to carry the design flow using roughness coefficients under the "mature channel" condition. To allow for the "mature channel" condition and potential sediment accumulation, outfalls into channels with low-flow channels shall be at least 2 feet above the low-flow channel invert. The design procedure outlined below provides the reader with the necessary steps and specific channel criteria to carry out a design of a composite channel.

3.2.2 Design Procedure

If a composite channel is to be used, the following steps outline the specific design procedures necessary:

1. Design Discharge – Determine the 2-year peak flow rate in the wetland channel without reducing it for any upstream ponding or flood routing effects.

2. Channel Geometry – Define the newly-built channel's geometry to pass the design 2-year flow rate at ≤ 4-ft/sec with a channel depth between 2- to 4-feet. The channel cross section should be trapezoidal with side slopes of 3:1 (H/V) or flatter. Bottom width shall be ≥ 5-feet.

3. Longitudinal Slope – Set the longitudinal slope using Manning's equation and a Manning's roughness coefficient of n=0.035, for the 2-year flow rate but no flatter than 0.0025 ft/ft. If the desired longitudinal slope cannot be satisfied with existing terrain, grade control checks or small drop structures must be incorporated to provide desired slope.

4. Low-flow Channel Capacity – Calculate the mature channel capacity during a 2-year flood using a Manning's roughness coefficient of n=0.065 and the same geometry and slope used when initially designing the channel with n=0.035.

5. Full-width Channel Capacity – After the low-flow channel has been designed to pass the 2-year storm peak discharge, complete the composite channel design by providing additional channel capacity through design/analysis of channel overbank areas. The final Manning's n for the composite channel shall be determined using Equation OC-11. Use Table OC-7 for Manning's n values for the middle area (low-flow), left overbank, and right overbank areas of a composite channel.

$$n_c = \frac{P * R^{5/3}}{\dfrac{P_L * R_L^{5/3}}{n_L} + \dfrac{P_M * R_M^{5/3}}{n_M} + \dfrac{P_R * R_R^{5/3}}{n_R}}$$ **(Equation OC-11)**

In which:

n_C = Manning's n for the composite channel

n_L = Manning's n for the left overbank (…if grass-lined see Table OC-8)

n_R = Manning's n for the right overbank (…if grass-lined see Table OC-8)

n_M = Manning's n for the middle area (low-flow)

when, 2-ft ≤ y_0 < 5-ft, $n_M = 0.0018 * y_0^2 - 0.0206 * y_0 + 0.099$ **(Equation OC-11a)**

or 5-ft ≤ y_0 < 10-ft, $n_M = 0.0001 * y_0^2 - 0.0025 * y_0 + 0.050$ **(Equation OC-11b)**

where, y_0 = depth of flow

P_L = Wetted perimeter of the left overbank (ft)

P_R = Wetted perimeter of the right overbank (ft)

P_M = Wetted perimeter of the middle area (ft)

R_L = Hydraulic radius of the left overbank (ft)

R = Hydraulic radius of the right overbank (ft)

R_M = Hydraulic radius of the middle area (ft)

Table OC-8 – Values for Manning's *n* in Grass-lined Overflow Bank Areas in Composite Channel (Guo 2006)

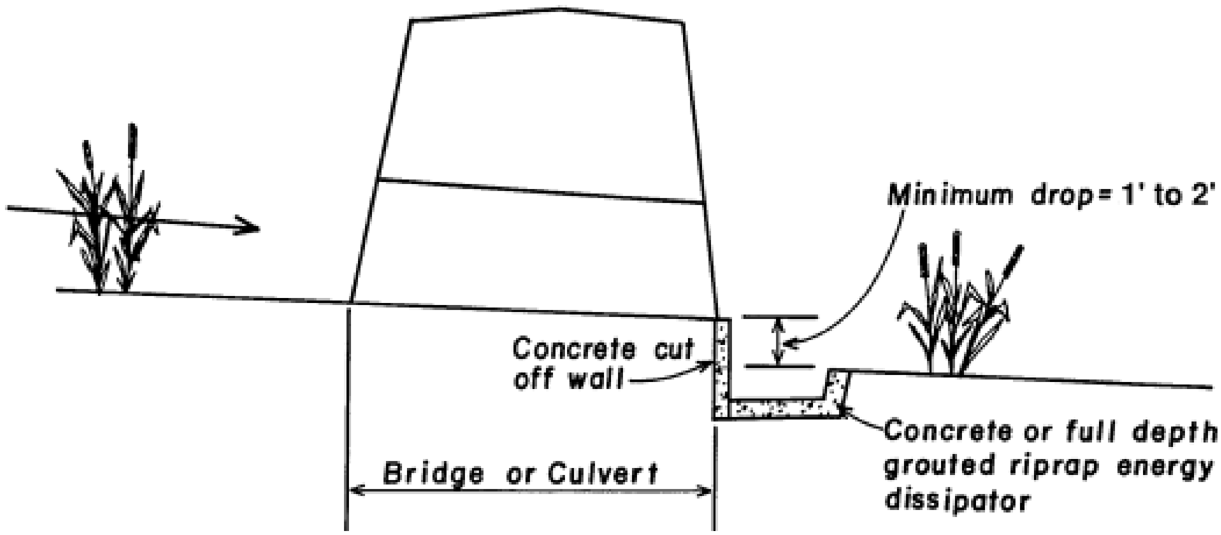
Grass Type	Grass Length	0.1 ft <Depth<1.5 ft For Minor Runoff	Depth>3.0 ft For Major Runoff
Bermuda	2-inch	0.0350	0.0300
	4-inch	0.0400	0.0300
Kentucky	2-inch	0.0350	0.0300
	4-inch	0.0400	0.0300
Grass (Good Stand)	12-inch	0.0700	0.0350
	24-inch	0.1000	0.0350
Grass (Fair Stand)	12-inch	0.0600	0.0350
	24-inch	0.0700	0.0350

6. Flooding Control Design Capacity – The channel shall also provide enough capacity to contain the flow during a 100-year flood while adhering to free-board requirements for the type of channel (primary, secondary, or tertiary) for which the channel design falls under. Adjustment of the channel capacity may be done by increasing the bottom width of the channel. Minimum bottom width shall be 5-feet.

3.2.3 Water Surface Profile

Whenever a composite bottom channel is crossed by a road, railroad, or a trail requiring a culvert or a bridge, a drop structure shall be provided immediately downstream of such a crossing. This will help reduce sediment deposition in the crossing. A minimum 1-foot to 2-foot drop is required (a larger drop may be preferred in larger systems) on the downstream side of each culvert and crossing of a wetland bottom channel (see Figure OC-7).

Figure OC-7 – Composite Channel At Bridge or Culvert Crossing (UDFCD USDCM 2002)



Water surface profiles must be computed, for the 10- and 100-year events. Computation of the water surface profile shall utilize standard backwater methods, taking into consideration all losses due to changes in velocity, drops, bridge openings, and other obstructions. Computations begin at a known point and extend in an upstream direction for subcritical flow. It is for this reason that the channel should be designed from a downstream direction to an upstream direction. It is necessary to show the energy gradient on all preliminary and final drawings to help prevent errors.

The designer must remember that open-channel flow in urban drainage is usually non-uniform because of bridge openings, curves, and structures. This necessitates the use of backwater computations for all final channel design work.

3.2.4 Life Expectancy and Maintenance

The low-flow channel can serve as a productive ecosystem and can also be highly effective at trapping sediment. A composite channel with a wetland bottom is expected to fill with sediment over time. Some sediment accumulation is necessary for a “wetland bottom” channel’s success to provide organic matter and nutrients for growth of biological communities. The life expectancy of such a channel will depend primarily on the land use of the tributary watershed. However, life expectancy can be dramatically reduced to as little as 2 to 5 years, if land erosion in the tributary watershed is not controlled. Therefore, land erosion control practices need to be strictly enforced during land development and other construction within the watershed, and all facilities shall be built to minimize soil erosion to maintain a reasonable economic life for the wetland bottom channel. In addition, sediment traps or forebays located at stormwater runoff points of entry can trap a significant portion of the sediment arising at the wetland channel and, if used, could decrease the frequency of major channel dredging.

3.3 Concrete-Lined Channels

The use of concrete-lined channels <u>is subject to City approval</u>. Although not recommended for general use because of safety water quality and aesthetic reasons; hydraulic, topographic, or right-of-way constraints may necessitate the use of a concrete-lined channel in some instances. A common constraint requiring a concrete-lined channel is the need to convey high velocity, sometimes supercritical, flow. Whether the flow will be supercritical or subcritical, the concrete lining must be designed to withstand the various forces and actions that cause overtopping of the bank, damage to the lining, and erosion of unlined areas.

Concrete-lined channels can be used for conveyance of both subcritical and supercritical flows. In general, however, other types of channels such as grass-lined channels or channels with wetland bottoms shall be used for subcritical flows. The use of a concrete-lined channel for subcritical flows shall not be used except in unusual circumstances where a narrow right-of-way exists.

3.3.1 Design Criteria

3.3.1.1 Design Velocity and Froude Number

Concrete channels can be designed to convey supercritical or subcritical flows; however, the designer must take care to prevent the possibility of unanticipated hydraulic jumps forming in the channel. For concrete channels, flows at Froude numbers between 0.7 and 1.4 are unstable and unpredictable and shall be avoided at all flow levels in the channel. When a concrete channel is unavoidable, the maximum velocity at the peak design flow shall not exceed 18 feet per second.

To calculate velocities, the designer shall utilize Manning's Equation (Equation OC-2) from Section 2.1.1 of this chapter with roughness values from Table OC-9. When designing a concrete-lined channel for subcritical flow, use a Manning's n = 0.013 for capacity calculations and 0.011 to check whether the flow could go supercritical. Do not design a subcritical channel for a Froude number greater than 0.7 using the velocity and depth calculated with a Manning's n = 0.011. Also, do not design a supercritical channel with a Froude number less than 1.4 when checking for it using a Manning's n = 0.013.

Table OC-9 – Manning's n Roughness Coefficients for Concrete-Lined Channels (UDFCD USDCM 2002)

Type of Concrete Finish	Roughness Coefficient (n)		
	Minimum	Typical	Maximum
<u>Concrete</u>			
Trowel finish*	0.011	0.013	0.015
Float finish*	0.013	0.015	0.016
Finished, with gravel on bottom*	0.015	0.017	0.020
Unfinished*	0.014	0.017	0.020
Shotcrete, trowelled, not wavy	0.016	0.018	0.023
Shotcrete, trowelled, wavy	0.018	0.020	0.025
Shotcrete, unfinished	0.020	0.022	0.027
On good excavated rock	0.017	0.020	0.023
On irregular excavated rock	0.022	0.027	0.030

* For a *subcritical* channel with these finishes, check the Froude number using n = 0.011

3.3.1.2 Design Depths

There are no specific limits set for depth for concrete-lined channels, except as required for low-flow channels of a composite section where the low-flow channel is concrete lined (see Section 3.1.4).

3.3.1.3 Curvature

Curvature is not allowed for channels with supercritical flow regimes. For concrete-lined channels with subcritical flow regimes, the centerline radius of curvature shall be at least two-times (2x) the top width, and superelevation shall be evaluated for all bends using Equation OC-9 in Section 2.2.4 and included in determining freeboard.

3.3.1.4 Design Discharge Freeboard

Freeboard above the design water surface shall not be less than that determined by the following:

$$H_{fb} = 2.0 + 0.025 * V * (y_0)^{1/3} + \Delta y \qquad \textbf{(Equation OC-12)}$$

in which:

H_{fb} = Freeboard height (ft)

V = Velocity of flow (ft/sec)

y_o = Depth of flow (ft)

Δy = Increase in water surface elevation due to superelevation at bends (see Equation OC-9) (no bends allowed in supercritical channels)

In addition to H_{fb}, add height of estimated standing roll waves and/or other water surface disturbances to calculate the total freeboard. In all cases, the freeboard shall be no less than 2 feet and the concrete lining shall be extended above the flow depth to provide the required freeboard.

3.3.2 Concrete Lining Specifications

3.3.2.1 Concrete Lining Section

All concrete lining shall be designed to withstand the anticipated hydrodynamic and hydrostatic forces, and the minimum thickness shall be no less than 8-inches for supercritical channels and no less than 5-inches for subcritical channels. Free draining granular bedding shall be provided under the concrete liner and shall be no less than 6-inches thick for channels with Froude number ≤ 0.7 and 9-inches thick for channels with Froude number ≥1.4. Concrete shall comply with Class M concrete according to AHTD's *Standard Specifications for Highway Construction – Section 802 – Concrete for Structures.*

3.3.2.2 Concrete Joints and Reinforcement

Concrete joints must satisfy the following criteria:

1. Channels shall be constructed of continuously reinforced concrete. Channels constructed as 8-inch thick shall be reinforced with #4's at 12-inch transverse spacing and #4's at 18-inch longitudinal spacing. Channels constructed as 6-inch thick shall be reinforced with 6x6–8/8 welded wire mesh. All reinforcement shall be installed to where it is 2-inches from the bottom of the concrete slab.

2. Expansion/contraction joints shall be installed where new concrete lining is connected to a rigid structure or to existing concrete lining which is not continuously reinforced. Expansion joints shall be constructed at a minimum distance of 50-feet between joints and in no case shall exceed 75-feet. Expansion joint fillers shall be of a non-extruding type conforming to ASTM designation D1751.

3. Saw joints are to be made at 10-foot spacing maximum on all ditch sections. All saw joints shall have backer rod and caulking properly installed per manufacture's specifications. Materials used to seal saw joints shall be on AHTD's Qualified Products List.

4. Longitudinal joints, where required, shall be constructed on the sidewalls at least 1-foot vertically above the channel invert.

5. All joints shall be designed to prevent differential movement.

6. Construction joints are required for all cold joints and where the lining thickness changes. Reinforcement shall be continuous through the joint.

3.3.2.3 Concrete Finish

The surface of the concrete lining may be finished in any of the finishes listed in Table OC-9, provided an appropriate finishing technique is used.

3.3.2.4 Weep Holes

Weep holes shall be required in all impervious lined channels. Weep holes at a minimum shall be 2-inch in diameter and placed at ten-foot on center along the channel sides. Crushed rock (1/2-inch to 5/8-inch) wrapped in 6-oz non-woven filter fabric shall be placed in front of the weep holes to prevent loss of the channel subgrade. See Figure OC-8.

3.3.3 Channel Cross Section

3.3.3.1 Side Slopes

The side slopes shall be no steeper than 1.5V:1H unless designed to act as a structurally reinforced wall to withstand soil and groundwater forces. In some cases, a rectangular cross section may be required. Rectangular cross sections are acceptable, provided they are designed to withstand potential lateral loads and adhere to the safety requirements outlined in Section 3.3.4. Provide design calculations stamped by a structural engineer.

3.3.3.2 Depth

Maximum depth shall be consistent with Section 3.3.1.2. For known channel geometry and discharge, normal water depth can be calculated using Manning's Equation (Equation OC-2) from Section 2.1.1.

3.3.3.3 Bottom Width

The bottom width shall be designed to satisfy the hydraulic capacity of the cross section recognizing the limitations on velocity, depth, and Froude number. For a given discharge, the bottom width can be calculated from depth, velocity, slope, and Froude number constraints in Section 3.3.1.1, Section 3.3.1.2, and Section 3.3.1.3 using Manning's Equation. In no case shall the bottom of the channel be any less than 5-feet wide.

3.3.3.4 Trickle and Low-Flow Channels

For a well-designed concrete-lined channel, a trickle or low-flow channel is not necessary since the entire channel is hard-lined. However, if a small base flow is anticipated, it is a good idea to incorporate a trickle flow swale or section to reduce occurrence of bottom slime, noxious odors and mosquito breeding. The trickle flow swale shall be integral to the concrete-lined channel bottom.

3.3.3.5 Outfalls Into Channel

Outfalls into concrete-lined channels shall be at least 1 foot above the channel invert.

3.3.4 Safety Requirements

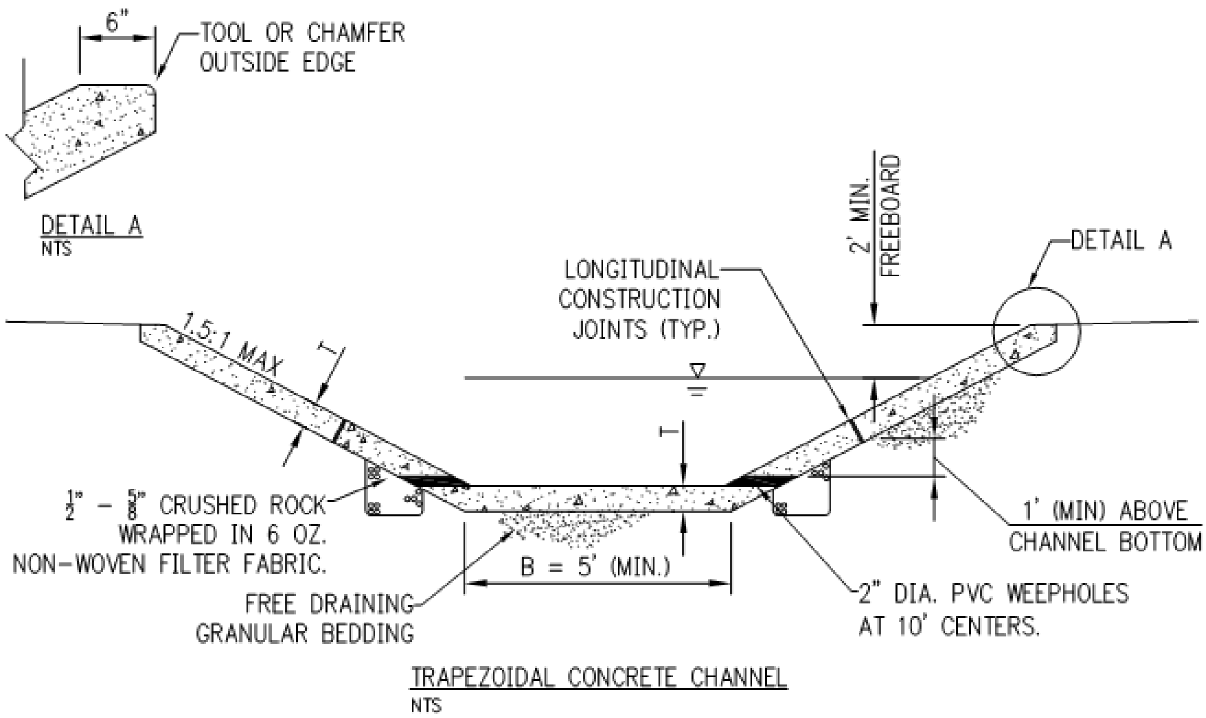
A 6-foot-high chain-link or comparable fence or handrail shall be installed to prevent access wherever the 100-year channel concrete section depth exceeds 3 feet. Appropriate numbers of gates, with top latch, shall be placed and staggered where a fence is required on both sides of the channel to permit good maintenance access.

In addition, ladder-type steps shall be installed not more than 200 feet apart on alternating sides of the channel. A bottom rung shall be placed approximately 12 inches vertically above the channel invert.

3.3.5 Maintenance

Concrete channels require periodic maintenance including debris and sediment removal, patching, joint repair, and other such activities. Their condition should be periodically monitored, especially to assure that flows cannot infiltrate beneath the concrete lining.

Figure OC-8 – Concrete Lined Channel (Trapezoidal)



NOTES:

1. Fr ≤ 0.7, T = 5" REINFORCE WITH 6X6-8/8 WWM INSTALLED 2" FROM THE BOTTOM OF THE SLAB; AND PROVIDE 6-INCH (MIN.) FREE DRAINING GRANULAR BEDDING UNDER CONCRETE SECTION.

   Fr ≥ 14, T = 8" REINFORCE WITH #4'S @ 12" TRANSVERSE INSTALLED 2" FROM THE BOTTOM OF THE SLAB, #4'S @ 18" LONGITUDINAL; AND PROVIDE 9-INCH (MIN) FREE DRAINING GRANULAR BEDDING UNDER CONCRETE SECTION.

2. CONCRETE WORK SHALL CONFORM TO THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE CITY OF ROGERS TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORKS CONSTRUCTION.

3. INSTALL EXPANSION JOINTS AT 50' (MIN.) SPACING NOT TO EXCEED 75' (MAX) AND SAW JOINTS AT 10' SPACING MAXIMUM ON ALL DITCH SECTIONS. ALL SAW JOINTS ARE TO HAVE BACKER ROD & CAULKING PROPERLY INSTALLED PER MANUFACTURE'S SPECIFICATIONS.

3.4 Riprap-Lined Channels

The use of riprap-lined channels <u>is discouraged and subject to City approval</u>. Channel linings constructed from riprap (grouted or partially grouted), soil riprap, grouted boulders, or wire-encased rock (gabion) to control channel erosion may be considered on a case-by-case basis for the following situations:

1. Where major flows such as the 100-year flood are found to produce channel velocities in excess of allowable non-eroding values (5-ft/sec) or when main channel depth is greater than 5 feet.

2. Where channel side slopes must be steeper than 3H:1V.

3. For low-flow channels.

4. Where rapid changes in channel geometry occur such as channel bends and transitions.

Design criteria applicable to these situations are presented in this section. Riprap-lined channels shall only be used for subcritical flow conditions where the Froude number is 0.8 or less. Loose stones serving as a protective blanket will not be accepted for riprap lining. Instead riprap shall either receive a full grout matrix or be partially grouted. The type of grouting, full or partial, a riprap lining is to receive will be as directed by the City. The grout for riprap receiving a full grout matrix shall adhere to the methods and specifications outlined in Table OC-12 of this *Manual*. Furthermore, requirements for riprap that is grouted that aren't covered in this *Manual* shall adhere to AHTD's *Standard Specification for Highway Construction – Section 816 – Filter Blanket and Riprap* for *Dumped Riprap (Grouted)*. Partially grouted riprap shall be designed, specified, and constructed according to the criteria presented in FHWA's HEC 23 (2001) and other trusted sources on the subject. Furthermore, when used, it is required that all riprap outside frequent flow zones have the voids filled with soil, the top of the rock covered with topsoil, and the surface revegetated with native grasses. This combination of riprap, soil, and vegetation is considered *soil riprap*.

3.4.1 Types of Riprap

3.4.1.1 Riprap and Soil Riprap

Many factors govern the size of the rock necessary to resist the forces tending to move the riprap. For the riprap itself, this includes the size and weight of the individual rocks, shape of the stones, gradation of the particles, blanket thickness, type of bedding under the riprap, and slope of the riprap layer. Hydraulic factors affecting riprap include the velocity, current direction, eddy action, waves, and hydraulic uplift forces.

Experience has shown that riprap failures result from a variety of factors: undersized individual rocks in the maximum size range; improper gradation of the rock, which reduces the interlocking of individual particles; and improper bedding for the riprap, which allows leaching of channel particles through the riprap blanket.

Classification and gradation for riprap and boulders are given in Table OC-10 and Table OC-11 and are based on a minimum specific gravity of 2.50 for the rock. Because of its relatively small size and weight, riprap Types 1 and 2 must be used in soil riprap applications only. Type 3 riprap shall be used for all other riprap lining needs. This practice also protects the rock from vandalism.

Soil Riprap consists of 35% by volume of native soil, taken from the banks of the channel, that is mixed in with 65% by volume of riprap on-site, before placement as channel liner. A typical section for soil riprap installation is illustrated in Figure OC-10.

Table OC-10 – Classification and Gradation of Riprap

Riprap Designation	d_{50} (inches)*	Maximum Rock Size (inches)	…a gradation such that no more than 15% will be less than ___ (inches)
Type 1	6**	10	3
Type 2	12**	20	4
Type 3	18	28	6

* d_{50} = mean particle size (intermediate dimension) by weight.

** Mix Type 1 and Type 2 riprap with 35% topsoil (by volume) and bury it with 4 inches of topsoil, all vibration compacted, and revegetate.

Note: Bedding material must be used under riprap. Bedding material shall consist of granular bedding as shown in Table OC-14.

Basic requirements for riprap stone are as follows:

- Rock shall be hard, durable, angular in shape, and free from cracks, overburden, shale, and organic matter.
- Neither breadth nor thickness of a single stone shall be less than one-third its length, and rounded stone shall not be used.
- The rock shall be from a source with a percent of wear not greater than 45% calculated by the Los Angeles Abrasion Test (AASHTO T 96) and shall sustain a loss of not more than 10% after 12 cycles of freezing and thawing (AASHTO test 103 for ledge rock procedure A).
- Rock having a minimum specific gravity of 2.65 is preferred; however, in no case shall rock have a specific gravity less than 2.50.

3.4.1.2 Grouted Boulders

Table OC-11 provides the classification and size requirements for boulders. When grouted boulders are used, they provide a relatively impervious channel lining which is less subject to vandalism than riprap. Grouted boulders require less routine maintenance by reducing silt and trash accumulation and are particularly useful for lining low-flow channels and steep banks. The appearance of grouted boulders is enhanced by exposing the tops of individual stones and by cleaning the projecting rocks with a wet broom right after the grouting operation. In addition, it is required that grouted boulders on channel banks and outside of frequent flow areas be buried with topsoil and revegetated with native grasses, with or without shrubs depending on the local setting. Boulders used for grouting shall meet all the properties of rock for riprap, and rock of uniform size shall be used. The boulder sizes are categorized in Table OC-8.

Table OC-11 – Classification of Boulders (UDFCD USDCM 2002)

Boulder Classification	Nominal Size and [Range in Smallest Dimension of Individual Rock Boulders] (inches)	Maximum Ratio of Largest to Smallest Rock Dimension of Individual Boulders
Type B18	18 [17 – 20]	2.5
Type B24	24 [22 – 26]	2.0
Type B30	30 [28 – 32]	2.0
Type B36	36 [34 – 38]	1.75
Type B42	42 [40 – 44]	1.65
Type B48	48 [45 – 51]	1.50

Grouted boulders shall be placed directly on subbase without granular bedding. The top one-half of the boulders shall be left ungrouted and exposed. Weep holes shall be provided at the toe of channel slopes and channel drops to reduce uplift forces on the grouted channel lining. Underdrains shall be provided if water is expected to be present beneath the liner. Grouted boulders on the banks shall be buried and vegetated with dry-land grasses and shrubs. Cover grouted boulders with slightly compacted topsoil, filling depressions and covering the top of the tallest rocks to a height of no less than 6-inches to establish dry-land vegetation. Staked sod shall be placed to the 100-year storm depth. Shrubs also may be planted, but they will not grow well over grouted boulders unless irrigated.

Two types of grout, Type A and Type B, are to be selected from for filling the voids for the grouted boulders. The technical specifications for two types of structural grout mix are given in Table OC-12. Type A can be injected using a low-pressure grout pump and can be used for the majority of applications. Type B has been designed for use in streams and rivers with significant perennial flows where scouring of Type A grout is a concern. It requires a concrete pump for injection.

Full penetration of grout around the lower one-half of the rock is essential for successful grouted boulder performance. Inject grout in a manner that ensures that no air voids between the grout, subbase, and boulders will exist. To accomplish this, inject the grout by lowering the grouting nozzle to the bottom of the boulder layer and build up the grout from the bottom up, while using a vibrator or aggressive manual rodding. Inject the grout to a depth equal to one-half of the boulders being used and keep the upper one-half ungrouted and clean. Remove all grout splatters off the exposed boulder portion immediately after grout injection using wet brooms and brushes.

Table OC-12 – Specifications and Placement Instructions for Grout in Grouted Riprap and Grouted Boulders (UDFCD USDCM 2002)

Material Specifications	Placement Specifications
1. All grout shall have a minimum 28-day compressive strength equal to 3200 psi. 2. One cubic yard of grout shall have a minimum of six (6) sacks of Type II Portland cement. 3. A maximum of 25% Type F Fly Ash may be substituted for the Portland cement. 4. For Type A grout, the aggregate shall be comprised of 70% natural sand (fines) and 30% 3/8-inch rock (coarse). 5. For Type B grout, the aggregate shall be comprised of 3/4-inch maximum gravel, structural concrete aggregate. 6. Type B grout shall be used in streams with significant perennial flows. 7. The grout slump shall be 4-inches to 6-inches. 8. Air entrainment shall be 5.5%-7.5%. 9. To control shrinkage and cracking, 1.5 pounds of Fibermesh, or equivalent, shall be used per cubic yard of grout. 10. Color additive in required amounts shall be used when so specified by contract.	1. All Type A grout shall be delivered by means of a low pressure (less than 10 psi) grout pump using a 2-inch diameter nozzle. 2. All Type B grout shall be delivered by means of a low pressure (less than 10 psi) concrete pump using a 3-inch diameter nozzle. 3. Full depth penetration of the grout into the riprap/boulder voids shall be achieved by injecting grout starting with the nozzle near the bottom and raising it as grout fills, while vibrating grout into place using a pencil vibrator. 4. After grout placement, exposed riprap/ boulder faces shall be cleaned with a wet broom. 5. All grout between riprap/boulders shall be treated with a broom finish. 6. All finished grout surfaces shall be sprayed with a clear liquid membrane curing compound as specified in ASTM C-309. 7. Special procedures shall be required for grout placement when the air temperatures are less than 40°F or greater than 90°F. Contractor shall obtain prior approval from the design engineer of the procedures to be used for protecting the grout. 8. Clean Riprap/Boulders by brushing and washing before grouting.

3.4.1.3 Wire-Enclosed Rock (Gabions)

Wire-enclosed rock, or gabions, refers to rocks that are bound together in a wire basket so that they act as a single unit. The durability of wire-enclosed rock is generally limited by the life of the galvanized binding wire that has been found to vary considerably under conditions along waterways. Water carrying sand or gravel will reduce the service life of the wire dramatically. Water that rolls or otherwise moves cobbles and large stones breaks the wire with a hammer-and-anvil action, considerably shortening the life of the wire. The wire has been found to be susceptible to corrosion by various chemical agents and is particularly affected by high-sulfate soils. If the designer chooses to utilize gabions, they shall be placed above the low-flow channel or 5-year water surface elevation. All flat mattresses must be filled with topsoil and then covered with a 6-inch layer of topsoil and sodded/seeded. All material and construction requirements of gabions shall follow AHTD's *Standard Specifications for Highway Construction – Section 629 – Gabions*, except for as amended in this *Manual*.

3.4.1.4 Alternatives to Riprap Lining/Structures

As discussed above, riprap lined channels are discouraged by the City and approval will be at their discretion. As such, the City is open to alternative types of channel reinforcement to prevent scour and protect the channel bank and its invert. It is the responsibility of the design engineer to show their proposed method for preventing scour is as good if not superior to riprap. Any proposed alternative needs to show this by outlining its cost effectiveness, maintenance characteristics, engineering capabilities and applications, and long-term potential. Such alternatives to riprap the City finds sound are turf reinforcement mats (TRMs, such as ScourStop and ShoreMax), erosion control blankets (ECBs), hard-flexible armoring systems/units (ie. CONTECH Hard Armor – Armortec, etc.), gabions (as mentioned in Section 3.4.1.3), among many other systems and devices.

3.4.2 Design Criteria

The following sections present design criteria for riprap-lined channels. Additional information on riprap at storm sewer pipe outlets can be found in Chapter 6 – *Storm Sewer System Design*.

3.4.2.1 Design Velocity

Riprap-lined channels shall only be used for subcritical flow conditions where the Froude number is 0.8 or less.

3.4.2.2 Design Depths

There is no maximum depth criterion for riprap-lined channels. Wire-enclosed rock sections shall be used on banks only above the low-flow channel or 5-year flood water surface, placed on a stable foundation.

3.4.2.3 Riprap Sizing

The stone sizing for riprap can be related to the channel's longitudinal slope, flow velocity, and the specific gravity of the stone using the relationship:

$$\frac{V * S^{0.17}}{d_{50}^{0.5} * (G_S - 1)^{0.66}} = 4.5 \qquad \textbf{(Equation OC-13)}$$

in which:

V = Mean channel velocity (ft/sec)

S = Longitudinal channel slope (ft/ft)

d_{50} = Mean rock size (ft)

G_s = Specific gravity of stone (minimum = 2.50, Preferred = 2.65)

Note that Equation OC-13 is applicable for sizing riprap for channel lining. This equation is not intended for use in sizing riprap for rundowns or culvert outlet protection. Information on protection downstream of culverts is discussed in Chapter 5 – *Storm Sewer System Design*.

Table OC-13 shall be used to determine the minimum size of rock type required. Note that rock types for riprap, including gradation, are presented in Table OC-10 .

Table OC-13 – Riprap Requirements for Channel Linings * (UDFCD USDCM 2002 [modified for City of Tontitown])

$\frac{V * S^{0.17}}{(G_S - 1)^{0.66}}$ **	Rock Type
< 3.3	Type 1** (d_{50} = ½ foot)
≥ 3.3 to < 4.6	Type 2 (d_{50} = 1 foot)
≥ 4.6 to 5.6	Type 3 (d_{50} = 1½ foot)

* Applicable only for a Froude number of < 0.8 and side slopes no steeper than 2.5H:1V.

** Use G_s = 2.5 unless the source of rock and its density are known at time of design.

Table OC-13 provides riprap requirements for all channel side slopes up to and including 2.5H:1V. Rock-lined side slopes steeper than 2.5H:1V are unacceptable under any circumstances because of stability, safety, and maintenance considerations. Proper bedding is required both along the side slopes and the channel bottom for a stable lining. The riprap blanket thickness shall be at a minimum two-times (2x) d_{50} and shall extend up the side slopes at least 1-foot above the design water surface. At the upstream and downstream termination of a riprap lining, the thickness shall be increased 50% for at least 3-feet to prevent undercutting.

Where the required riprap size from Equation OC-13 exceeds those as defined in Table OC-10 the design engineer shall look at adjusting the channels geometry and/or slope in order to satisfy the requirements of Equation OC-13, review alternate channel linings, etc.

3.4.2.4 Riprap Toes

Where only the channel sides are to be lined and the channel bottom remains unlined, additional riprap extending below the channel bottom is needed to protect undermining the channel side lining. In this case, the riprap blanket shall extend at least 5-feet below the channel thalweg (invert/flowline), and the thickness of the side slope blanket below the existing channel bed shall be increased to at a minimum three-times (3x) d_{50} to accommodate possible channel scour during higher flows. The designer shall compute the scour depth for the 100-year flow and, if this scour depth exceeds 5-feet, the depth of the riprap blanket shall be increased accordingly.

3.4.2.5 Curves and Bends

The potential for erosion increases along the outside bank of a channel bend due to acceleration of flow velocities on the outside part of the bend. Thus, it is often necessary to provide erosion protection in channels that otherwise would not need protection. TRMs, riprap, among other structural controls provide the needed protection in these areas. The need for protection of the bank on the outside of the bend has been discussed in Section 3.1.5 for channel bends that have a radius less than eight-times (8x) the top width of the channel cross section.

The minimum allowable radius for a riprap-lined bend is two-times (2x) the top width of the design flow water surface. The riprap protection shall be placed along the outside of the bank and shall be extended upstream and downstream from the bend a distance of not less than one-times (1x) and two-times (2x) the top width of the channel, respectively. Whenever an outside bend in a grass-lined channel needs protection, soil riprap, TRMs (e.g. ScourStop, ShoreMax, etc.), or other alternative shall be used, then covered with native topsoil and revegetated to provide a grassed-line channel appearance.

Where the mean channel velocity exceeds the allowable non-eroding velocity so that riprap protection is required for straight channel sections, increase the rock size using the adjusted flow velocity found using Equation OC-10. Use the adjusted velocity in Table OC-13 to select appropriate riprap size.

3.4.2.6 Transitions

Scour potential is amplified by turbulent eddies near rapid changes in channel geometry such as transitions and at structures (culverts, bridges, etc.). Table OC-13 may be used for selecting riprap protection for subcritical transitions (Froude numbers 0.8 or less) by using the maximum velocity in the transition and then increasing the velocity by 25%.

Protection must extend upstream from the transition entrance at least 5 feet and downstream from the transition exit for a distance equal to at least five-times (5x) the design flow depth. This is not intended as culvert outlet protection, refer to Chapter 5 – Storm Sewer System Design.

3.4.2.7 Design Discharge Freeboard

Freeboard above the design water surface shall not be less than that determined by Equation OC-12 in Section 3.3.1.4.

In addition to the freeboard height calculated using Equation OC-12, add the height of estimated standing waves and/or other water surface disturbances and calculate total freeboard. In all cases, the riprap lining shall be extended above the flow depth to provide freeboard.

3.4.3 Roughness Coefficient

The Manning's roughness coefficient, n, for a riprap-lined channel may be estimated for riprap using:

$$n = 0.0395 * d_{50}^{1/6}$$ **(Equation OC-14)**

In which, d_{50} = the mean stone size (ft)

This equation does not apply to grouted boulders or to very shallow flow (where hydraulic radius is less than, or equal to two-times (2x) the maximum rock size). In those cases the roughness coefficient will be greater than indicated by Equation OC-14 and shall be adjusted accordingly.

3.4.4 Bedding Requirements

The long-term stability of riprap erosion protection is strongly influenced by proper bedding conditions. A large percentage of all riprap failures is directly attributable to bedding failures.

Properly designed bedding provides a buffer of intermediate-sized material between the channel bed and the riprap to prevent channel particles from leaching through the voids in the riprap. Two types of bedding are commonly used: (1) a granular bedding filter and (2) filter fabric.

3.4.4.1 Granular Bedding

The acceptable method for establishing gradation requirements for granular bedding for riprap consists of a single- or two-layer bedding that uses what are defined as Type I and Type II gradations. These gradations are shown in Table OC-14.

Table OC-14 – Gradation for Granular Bedding

U.S. Standard Sieve Size	Percent Weight by Passing Square-Mesh Sieves	
	Type I AHTD Sect. 501.02 Materials (b) Fine Aggregate	Type II AHTD Sect. 303 Aggregate Base Course, Class 3
3 inches	-----	90-100
1½ inches	-----	-----
¾ inches	-----	60-90
⅜ inches	100	40-80

#4	95-100	30-60
#8	70-95	-----
#10	-----	20-45
#16	45-85	-----
#30	20-65	-----
#40	-----	10-35
#50	5-30	-----
#100	0-5	-----
#200	-----	3-12

The Type I bedding in Table OC-14 is designed to be the lower layer in a two-layer filter for protecting fine-grained soils and has a gradation identical to AHTD's concrete fine aggregate specification AASHTO T 27 (AHTD Section 501.02 (b)). Type II bedding, the upper layer in the two-layer filter, is equivalent to AHTD's Class 3 aggregate base course specification AASHTO T 11 and T 27 (AHTD Section 303). When the channel is excavated in coarse sand and gravel (50% or more of coarse sand and gravel retained on the #40 sieve by weight), only the Type II filter is required. Otherwise, a two-layer bedding (Type I topped by Type II) is required. Alternatively, a single 12-inch layer of Type II bedding can be used, except at drop structures. For required bedding thickness, see Table OC-15.

Table OC-15 – Granular Bedding Thickness Requirements (UDFCD USDCM 2002)

Riprap Designation	Minimum Bedding Thickness (inches)		
	Fine-Grained Soils*		Coarse-Grained Soils**
	Type I	Type II	Type II
Type 1 (d_{50} = 6 in)	4	4	6
Type 2 (d_{50} = 12 in)	4	4	6
Type 3 (d_{50} = 18 in)	4	6	8

* May substitute one 12-inch layer of Type II bedding. The substitution of one layer of Type II bedding shall not be permitted at drop structures. The use of a combination of filter fabric and Type II bedding at drop structures is acceptable.

** Fifty percent or more by weight retained on the # 40 sieve.

3.4.4.2 Filter Fabric

Filter fabric is not a substitute for granular bedding. Filter fabric provides filtering action only perpendicular to the fabric and has only a single equivalent pore opening between the channel bed and the riprap. Filter fabric has a relatively smooth surface, which provides less resistance to stone movement. As a result, it is recommended that the use of filter fabric be restricted to slopes no steeper than 3H:1V. Tears in the fabric greatly reduce its effectiveness; therefore, direct dumping of riprap on the filter fabric is not allowed, and due care must be exercised during construction. Nonetheless, filter fabric has proven to be a workable supplement to granular bedding in many instances, provided it is properly selected, installed and not damaged during installation.

At drop structures and sloped channel drops, where seepage forces may run parallel to the fabric and cause piping along the bottom surface of the fabric, special care is required in the use of filter fabric. Seepage parallel with the fabric must be reduced by folding the edge of the fabric vertically downward about 2 feet (similar to a cutoff wall) at 12-foot intervals along the installation, particularly at the entrance and exit of the channel reach. Filter fabric has to be lapped a minimum of 12 inches at roll edges, with upstream fabric being placed on top of downstream fabric at the lap.

Fine silt and clay has been found to clog the openings in filter fabric. This prevents free drainage, increasing failure potential due to uplift. For this reason, a double granular filter is often more appropriate bedding for fine silt and clay channel beds. See Figure OC-11 for details on acceptable use of filter fabric as bedding.

3.4.5 Channel Cross Section

3.4.5.1 Side Slopes

For long-term maintenance needs, it is required that riprap channel linings be used only as toe protection in natural channel and in low-flow channel portion of an engineered channel, but not on the banks above the low-flow channel section. For this reason, whenever soil-riprap linings are used above the low-flow section or above what is needed for toe protection, a slope typically used for grass-lined channels is required (i.e., 3H:1V).

Riprap-lined and soil riprap-lined side slopes when used as described above that are steeper than 2.5H:1V are considered unacceptable because of stability, safety, and maintenance considerations. In some cases, such as under bridges and in retrofit situations where right-of-way is very limited, use of slopes up to 2H:1V may be allowed subject to City approval.

3.4.5.2 Depth

The maximum depth shall be consistent with the guidelines in Section 3.4.2.2 of this chapter. For known channel geometry and discharge, normal water depth can be calculated using Manning's Equation from Section 2.1.1 of this chapter.

3.4.5.3 Bottom Width

The bottom width must be designed to satisfy the hydraulic capacity of the cross section, recognizing the limitations on velocity, depth, and Froude number. For a given discharge, the bottom width can be calculated from depth, velocity, slope, and Froude number constraints in Section 3.4.2.1, Section 3.4.2.2, and Section 3.4.2.3 using Manning's Equation from Section 2.1.1 of this chapter.

3.4.5.4 Outfalls Into Channel

Outfalls into riprap-lined channels shall be at least 1 foot (preferably 2 feet) above the channel invert.

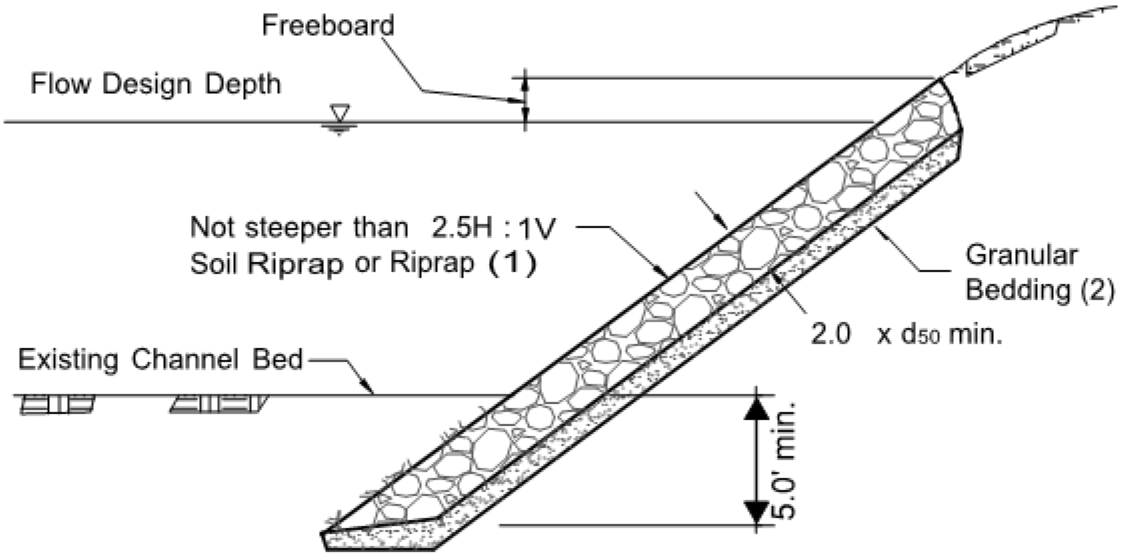
3.4.6 Erosion Control

For a properly bedded and lined riprap channel section, in-channel erosion should not generally be a problem. As with concrete channels, the primary concern with erosion is control of erosion in the watershed tributary leading up to the channel. Good erosion control practices in the watershed will reduce channel maintenance. In addition, accumulation of debris in the channel, especially after a large event, may be of concern due to the potential for movement of riprap and damming.

3.4.7 Maintenance

The greatest maintenance concern is the long-term loss of riprap. Also, grout used in grouting riprap can deteriorate with time, and this should be monitored, as well. Improper grout installation creates long-term maintenance problems.

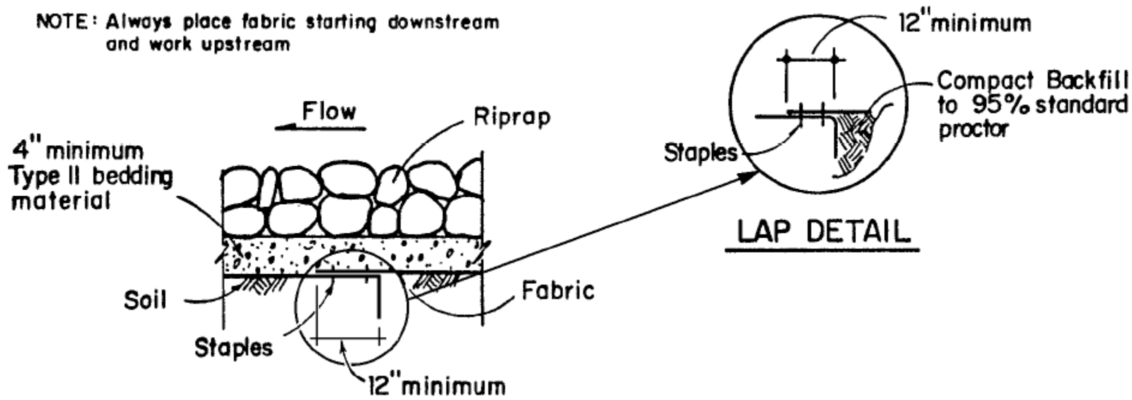
Figure OC-9 – Riprap Channel Bank Lining, Including Toe Protection (UDFCD USDCM 2002)



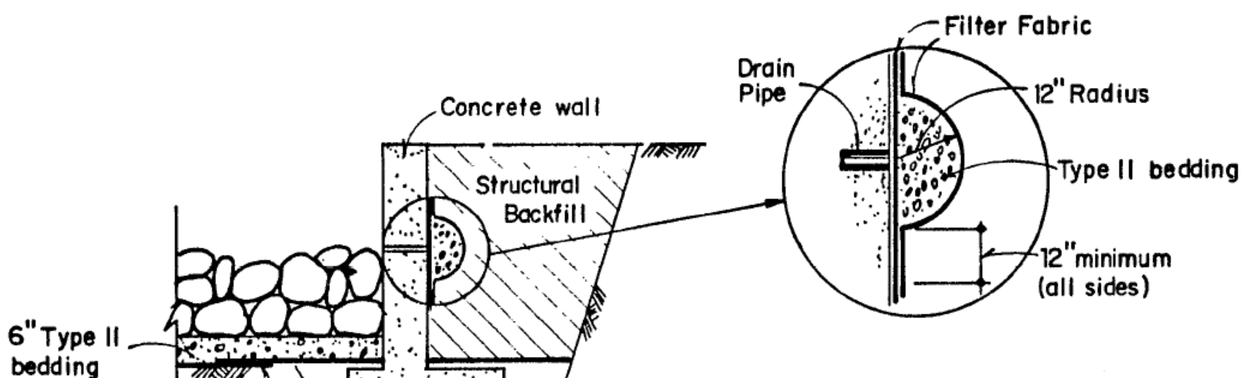
(1) Use Soil Riprapwhen d_{50} is less than or equal to Type 1.
(Suggest use of Soil Riprap for larger riprap sizes as well)

(2) Eliminate granular bedding when soil-riprap is used.

Figure OC-10 – Filter Fabric Details (UDFCD USDCM 2002)

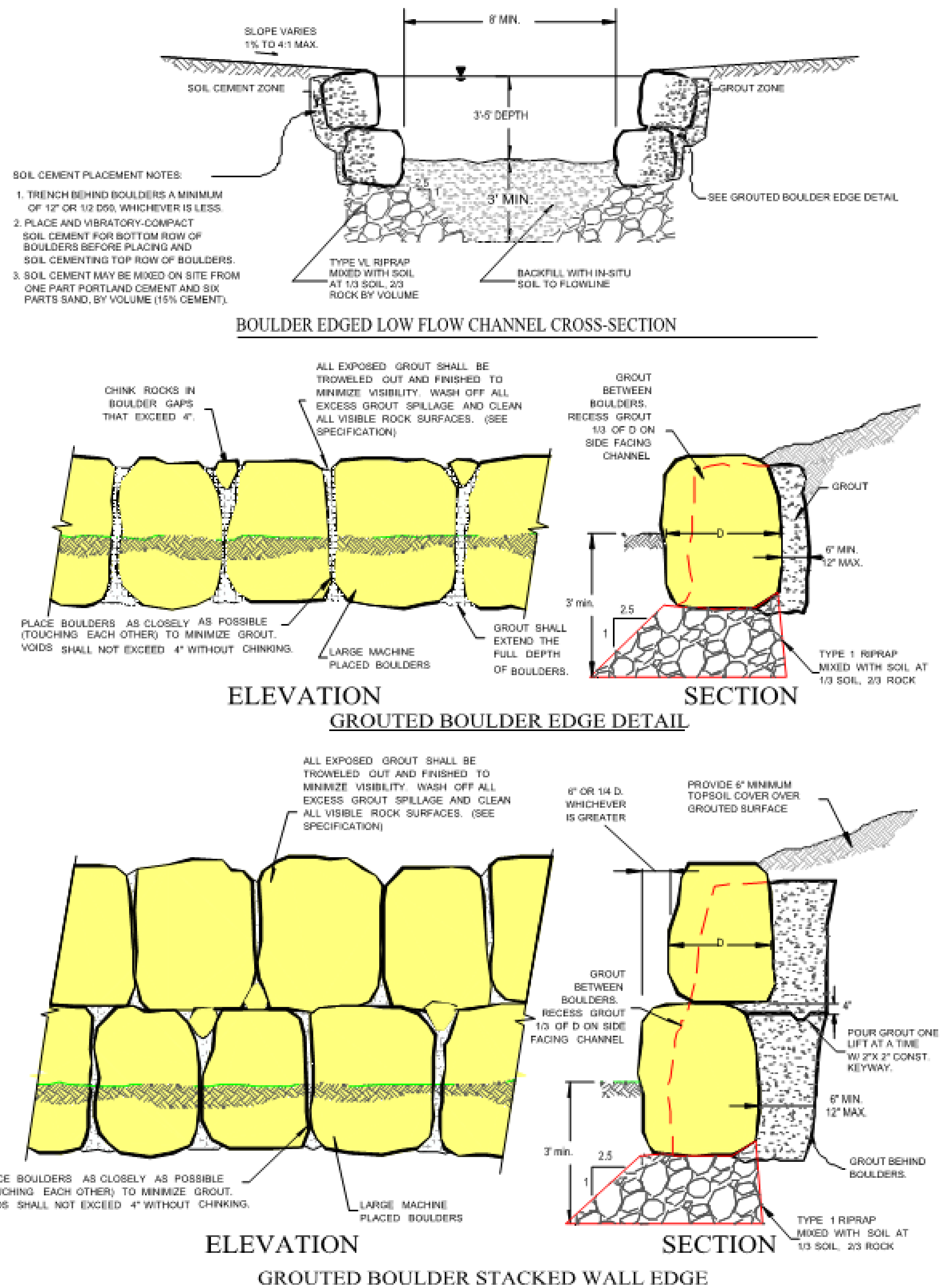


(a) TYPICAL LAP DETAIL AND FILTER FABRIC PLACEMENT



(c) RELIEF DRAIN DETAIL

Figure OC-11 – Detail – Boulder Edged Low-Flow Channel (UDFCD USDCM 2002)



3.5 Bioengineered Channels

Bioengineered channels emphasize the use of vegetative components in combination with structural measures to stabilize and protect stream banks from erosion. The City advocates the integration of bioengineering techniques into drainage planning, design, and construction when the use of such channels is consistent with the City's policies concerning flow carrying capacity, stability, maintenance, and enhancement of the urban environment and wildlife habitat. The following discussion on bioengineered channels interfaces closely with Section 3.2, Composite (Wetland Bottom) Channels, and Section 3.6, Natural Channels; designers are encouraged to read Section 3.2, Section 3.5, and Section 3.6, concurrently. In addition, because bioengineered channels require some structural assistance to maintain stability in urban settings, the designer should be familiar with the design of drop structures as discussed in FHWA's *Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 14, 3rd Edition (HEC-14 2006).*

3.5.1 Components

Vegetation is the basic component of what is known as "bioengineering" (Schiechtl 1980). Schiechtl (1980) states that, "bioengineering requires the skills of the engineer, the learning of the biologist and the artistry of the landscape architect."

It has been hypothesized that vegetation can function as either armor or indirect protection, and, in some applications, can function as both simultaneously (Biedenharn, Elliot, and Watson 1997 and Watson, Biedenharn, and Scott 1999). Grassy vegetation and the roots of woody vegetation may function as armor, while brushy and woody vegetation may function as indirect protection; the roots of the vegetation may also add a degree of geotechnical stability to a bank slope through reinforcing the soil (Biedenharn, Elliot, and Watson 1997 and Watson, Biedenharn, and Scott 1999), but these premises have not yet been technically substantiated through long-term field experience in urban settings. Each species of grass or shrub has differing ecological requirements for growth and differing characteristics such as root strength and density. Species shall be selected based on each site's individual characteristics. Bioengineered channels must be designed with care and in full recognition of the physics and geomorphic processes at work in urban waterways and changing watersheds. Representative components of bioengineered channels include:

1. Planted riprap

2. Planted, grouted boulders

3. Turf reinforcement mats

4. Brush layering

5. Fiber rolls

6. Fascines

7. Live willow stakes (with and without joint plantings in soil filled rock)

8. Live plantings in conjunction with geotextile mats

9. Wide ranges of planting of wetland and upland vegetation

10. Wrapped soil lifts for slope stability

See Figure OC-11 through Figure OC-14 for more guidance.

3.5.2 Applications

Bioengineered channels are applicable when channel designs are firmly grounded in engineering principles and the following conditions are met:

1. Hydrologic conditions are favorable for establishment and successful growth of vegetation.

2. Designs are conservative in nature, and bioengineered features are used to provide redundancy.

3. Maintenance responsibilities are clearly defined.

4. Adequate structural elements are provided for stable conveyance of the major runoff flow.

5. Species are selected based on individual site characteristics.

3.5.3 Bioengineering Resources

The purpose of this section is to provide the designer with an overview of bioengineering and basic guidelines for the use of bioengineered channels on major drainage projects within the City. There are many sources of information on bioengineering that the designer should consult for additional information when planning and designing a bioengineered channel. Some such resources are: Watson, Biedenharn, and Scott 1999; USFISRWG 1998; Riley 1998; and Biedenharn, Elliot, and Watson 1997. An expert in the design and layout of bioengineering channels shall be consulted when attempting such channel design work within the City.

3.5.4 Characteristics of Bioengineered Channels

The following characteristics are generally associated with bioengineered channels:

1. Their design must address the hydrologic changes associated with urbanization (increased peak discharges, increased runoff volume, increased base flow, and increased bank-full frequency). These changes typically necessitate the use of grade control structures. In the absence of grade

control structures purely bioengineered channels will normally be subject to bed and bank erosion, channel instability, and degradation.

2. In addition to grade controls, most bioengineered channels require some structural methods to assist the vegetation with maintaining channel stability. Examples include buried riprap at channel toes and at outer channel banks (see Figure OC-12, Figure OC-13 and Figure OC-14).

3. The designer must ensure that there will be sufficient flow in the channel (or from other sources, such as locally high groundwater) to support the vegetation. A complicating factor is that, in newly developing areas, base flows will *not* be present; whereas, if the tributary drainage area is large enough, base flows will often materialize after substantial urbanization has occurred. Therefore, it is important to match the channel stabilization technique to the water available at the time of construction, whether naturally or from supplemental water sources.

4. The extent to which vegetative techniques for channel stabilization will need to be supplemented with structural measures is a function of several factors:

    a) Slope

    b) Maximum velocity during 5-year event

    c) Maximum velocity during 100-year event

    d) Froude number during 5-year event

    e) Froude number during 100-year event

    f) Tractive force

    g) Sinuosity

    h) Timing of period of construction relative to the growing season

    i) Other site-specific factors

In general, slight channel slopes, lower velocities, lower Froude numbers, lower tractive force values, and higher sinuosity are conducive to channel stabilization approaches that emphasize bioengineering. These factors indicate that park-like settings (areas of open space, parks, office parks, etc.) are often conducive to bioengineered projects because they provide space for the channel to have a meandering pattern that increases flow length and decreases channel slope, velocities, and tractive forces.

A technique that can be utilized is stabilization of the outer banks of a defined low-flow channel to withstand the major storm. Within the defined low-flow channel, base flows and small storm flows can then assume their own flow path (meandering pattern). This pattern can either be pre-established (with a “pilot” channel) or the flows can move freely from one side of the hardened low-flow channel to the other, thereby establishing their own pattern.

Figure OC-11_shows examples of details for boulder toe protection (grouted and ungrouted, for one- and two-boulder high toe walls) that can be used to define a hardened, low-flow channel within which base flows and small storm flows can freely meander. Boulders shall be placed on a Type 1 riprap foundation, and boulders shall be aligned so that they are wider than they are tall. Boulders shall be placed so that the top of the toe protection wall is flat. If stacking is stable, grouting may not be necessary. In areas where the channel is easily accessible to the public, the top row of boulders may be grouted in place so that vandals cannot remove them.

3.5.5 Advantages of Bioengineered Channels

Public reaction to bioengineered channels is generally favorable. In contrast to major drainageway stabilization projects that focus on structural measures, such as concrete-lined or riprap-lined channels, bioengineered channels:

1. Appear more natural in character and, often, more like a channel prior to urbanization. When post-urbanization hydrology permits, riparian areas may be created where there previously was little vegetation. Also, wetlands can often be created in conjunction with bioengineered channels.

2. Have a “softer” appearance and are generally judged by most to be more aesthetic.

3. Are often found where space is not a limitation, such as in public parks and open space areas.

4. Generally, provide wildlife habitat.

5. Provide other benefits such as passive recreational opportunities for the public (like bird watching), open space creation/preservation, potentially water temperature moderation, and/or water quality enhancement.

6. Create a living system that may strengthen over time.

7. Can facilitate obtaining 404 permits.

3.5.6 Technical Constraints

The following constraints are associated with bioengineered channels:

1. There is only limited experience to rely on for successful design of urban channels. The majority of the experience with bioengineering techniques relates to channels in nonurban settings.

2. Careful species selection that reflects the site’s soils and water availability characteristics is essential to ensure survivability of the vegetation chosen for the channel.

3. A basic design criterion within the City is to demonstrate channel stability during the major (100-year) storm to ensure public safety and property protection within urban areas. There is little evidence (locally, regionally, or nationally) as to whether purely bioengineered channels can withstand 100-year (or lesser) flood forces.

4. Significant space can be required for bioengineered channels, yet space is often at a premium in urban areas.

5. Bioengineered facilities can be more expensive than their traditional counterparts.

6. Bioengineered channels can be maintenance intensive, particularly in their early years.

7. During the early years while the vegetation is becoming established, if a significant storm occurs, the probability of significant damage to the facility and adjacent infrastructure and properties (i.e., economic loss) is high.

Additional potential constraints of vegetative stabilization methods are summarized by Biedenharn, Elliot, and Watson (1997), as follows:

- Even well executed vegetative protection cannot be planned and installed with the same degree of confidence, or with as high a safety factor, as structural protection. Vegetation is especially vulnerable to extremes of weather, disease, insects, and inundation before it becomes well established.

- Most vegetation has constraints on the season of the year that planting can be performed.

- Growth of vegetation can cause a reduction in flood conveyance or erosive increases in velocity in adjacent un-vegetated areas.

- Vegetation can deteriorate due to mismanagement by adjacent landowners or natural causes.

- Trunks of woody vegetation or clumps of brushy vegetation on armor revetments can cause local flow anomalies, which may damage the armor.

- Large trees can threaten the integrity of structural protection by root invasion, by toppling and damaging the protection works, by toppling and directing flow into an adjacent unprotected bank, or by leaving voids in embankments due to decomposition.

- Roots can infiltrate and interfere with internal bank drainage systems or cause excess infiltration of water into the bank.

Many of these problems may be avoided through selection of the appropriate type and species of vegetation. Such selections and expert advice must be obtained from qualified individuals in revegetation and bioengineering. Invasion by other species is quite likely over the years the bioengineered channel is in operation.

3.5.7 Design Guidelines

To provide the designer with guidelines for the applicability of bioengineered channels, a comparison of hydraulic characteristics is provided in Table OC-16 for four types of channels, ranging from a fully bioengineered channel to a structural channel. To allow for growth of vegetation and accumulation of sediment, outfalls into bioengineered channels shall be 2 feet above the channel invert.

Table OC-16 – Guidelines for Use of Various Types of Channels

(UDFCD USDCM 2002)

(Note: All channel types typically require grade control structures.)

Design Parameter	Fully Bioengineered Channel	Bioengineered Channel Including Structural Elements	Structural Channel With Bioengineered Elements	Structural Channel
Maximum Slope	0.2%	0.5%	0.6%	1.0%
Is base flow necessary?	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
V_{max} for $Q_{5\text{-}year}$*	3.5 ft/sec (2.5)	4.0 ft/sec (3.0)	5.0 ft/sec (3.5)	**
V_{max} for $Q_{100\text{-}year}$*	5.0 ft/sec (3.5)	6.0 ft/sec (4.5)	7.0 ft/sec (5.0)	**
$Fr_{5\text{-}year}$	0.4 (0.3)	0.6 (0.4)	0.7 (0.5)	**
$Fr_{100\text{-}year}$	0.4 (0.3)	0.8 (0.5)	0.8 (0.5)	**
Maximum tractive force (100-year event)	0.30 lb/ft^2	0.60 lb/ft^2	1.00 lb/ft^2	1.30 lb/ft^2
Maximum sinuosity	1.6	1.2	1.2	1.0

* Values presented for both non-erosive and erosive soils. Erosive soil values are in parenthesis ( ).

** With a purely structural channel, such as a reinforced concrete channel, allowable velocities and allowable Froude numbers, F_r, are based on site-specific design calculations.

3.6 Natural Channels

Natural waterways in the City of Tontitown are sometimes in the form of steep, almost vertical stream banks, which have eroding banks and bottoms. On the other hand, many natural waterways exist in urbanized and to-be-urbanized areas, which have mild slopes, are reasonably stable, and are not currently degrading. If the channel will be used to carry storm runoff from an urbanized area, it can be assumed that the changes in the runoff regime will increase channel erosion and instability. Careful hydraulic analysis is needed to address this projected erosion. In most cases, stabilization of the channel will be required. Stabilization using bioengineering techniques, described in Section 3.5 of this chapter, has the advantage of preserving and even enhancing the natural character and functions of the channel. Some structural stabilization measures will also be required in combination with the bioengineered stabilization measures.

In the Tontitown area, most natural waterways will need drops and/or erosion cutoff check structures to maintain a mild channel slope and to control channel erosion. Typically, these grade control structures are spaced to limit channel degradation to what is expected to be the final stable longitudinal slope after full urbanization of the tributary watershed. In Northwest Arkansas, this slope, depending on watershed size and channel soils, has been observed to range from 0.30% to 1.5%. Whenever feasible, natural channels shall be kept in as near a natural condition as possible by limiting modifications to those necessary to protect against the destabilizing hydrologic forces caused by urbanization.

Investigations needed to ensure that the channel is stable will differ for each waterway; however, generally, it will be necessary to measure existing cross sections, investigate the bed and bank material, determine soil particle size distribution, and study the stability of the channel under future conditions of flow. At a minimum, the designer should consider the concept of the stable channel balance discussed in Section 1.5.2 of this chapter, complete tractive force analysis, and apply the Leopold equations to evaluate channel stability and changes in channel geometry. Oftentimes, more sophisticated analysis will be required. When performing stability and hydraulic analyses, keep in mind that supercritical flow normally does not exist in natural-earth channels. During backwater computations, check to ensure that the computations do not reflect the presence of consistent supercritical flow (Posey 1960). Because of the many advantages of natural channels to the community (e.g., preservation of riparian habitat, diversity of vegetation, passive recreation, flood control and aesthetics), the designer should consult with experts in related fields as to method of development. Nowhere in urban hydrology is it more important to convene an environmental design team to develop the best means for using a natural waterway. It may be concluded that park and greenbelt areas should be incorporated into the channel design. In these cases, the usual rules of freeboard, depth, curvature, and other rules applicable to artificial channels often will need to be modified to better suit the multipurpose objectives. For instance, there are advantages that may accrue if the formal channel is designed to overtop, resulting in localized flooding of adjacent floodplain areas that are laid out for the purpose of being inundated during larger (i.e., > 10-year) flood events. See the Chapter 5 – *Stormwater Detention*.

The following design criteria are required when evaluating natural channels:

1. The channel and overbank floodplain shall have adequate capacity for the 100-year flood.

2. A water surface profile shall be defined in order to identify the 100-year floodplain, to control earthwork, and to build structures in a manner consistent with Tontitown's floodplain regulations and ordinances.

3. Use roughness factors (n) representative of un-maintained channel conditions for analysis of water surface profiles. Roughness factors for a variety of natural channel types are presented in Table OC-7.

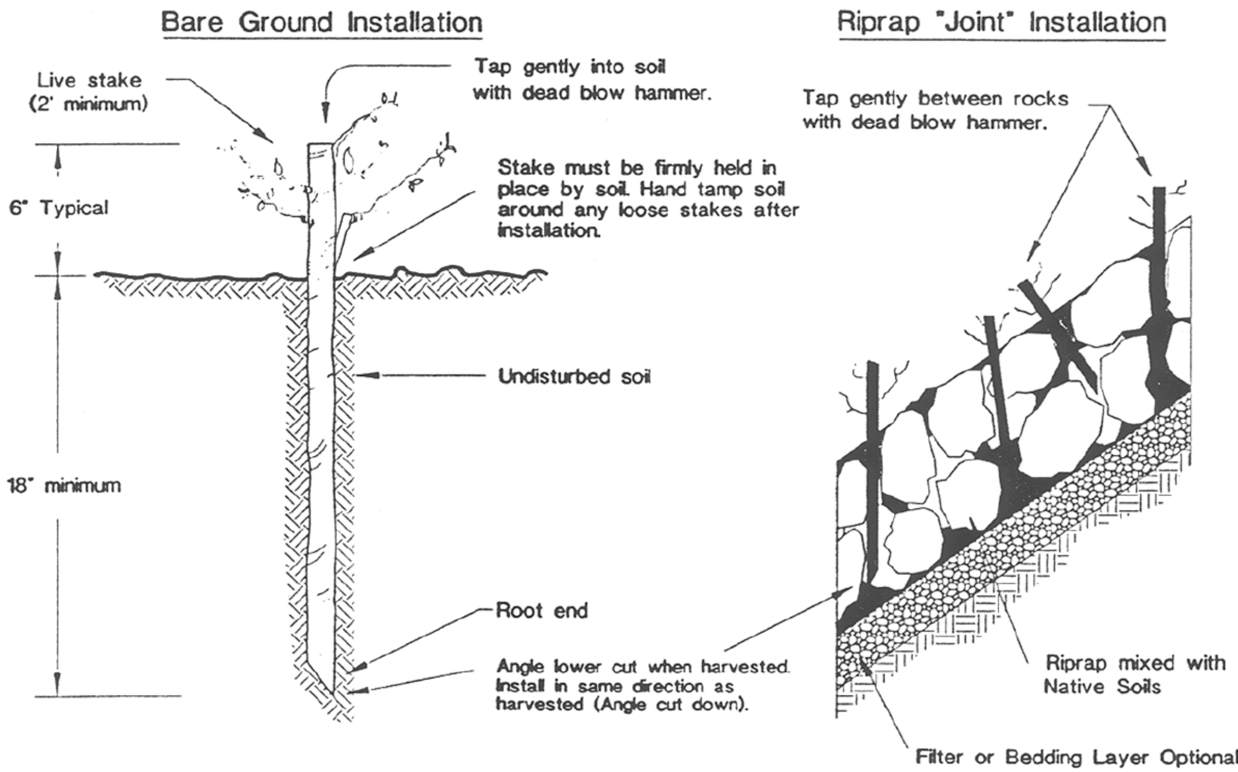
4. Use roughness factors (n) representative of maintained channel conditions to analyze effects of velocities on channel stability. Roughness factors for a variety of natural channel types are presented in Table OC-7.

5. Prepare plan and profile drawings of the channel and floodplain.

6. Provide erosion-control structures, such as drop structures or grade-control checks, to control channel erosion and/or degradation as the tributary watershed urbanizes.

7. Outfalls into natural channels shall be 2 feet above the channel invert to account for vegetation and sediment accumulation. The engineer should visit the site of any outfalls into natural drainageways to examine the actual ground surface condition.

Figure OC-12 – Live Willow Staking for Bare Ground and Joint Installation (UDFCD USDCM 2002)



Single Willow Stake Detail
For use in granular soils with available ground water

Figure OC-13 – Fascine in Conjunction With Jute Mesh Mat (UDFCD USDCM 2002)

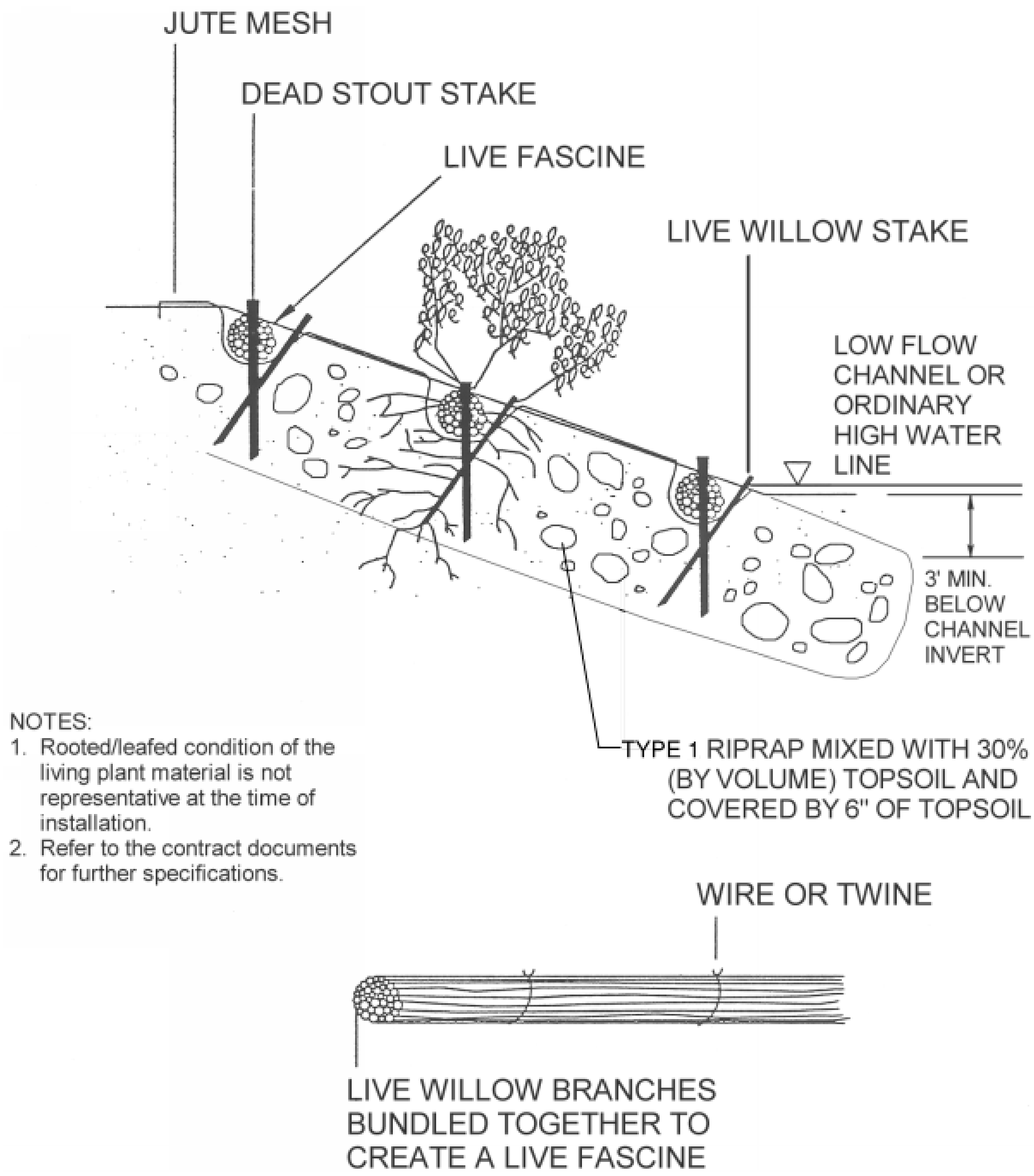
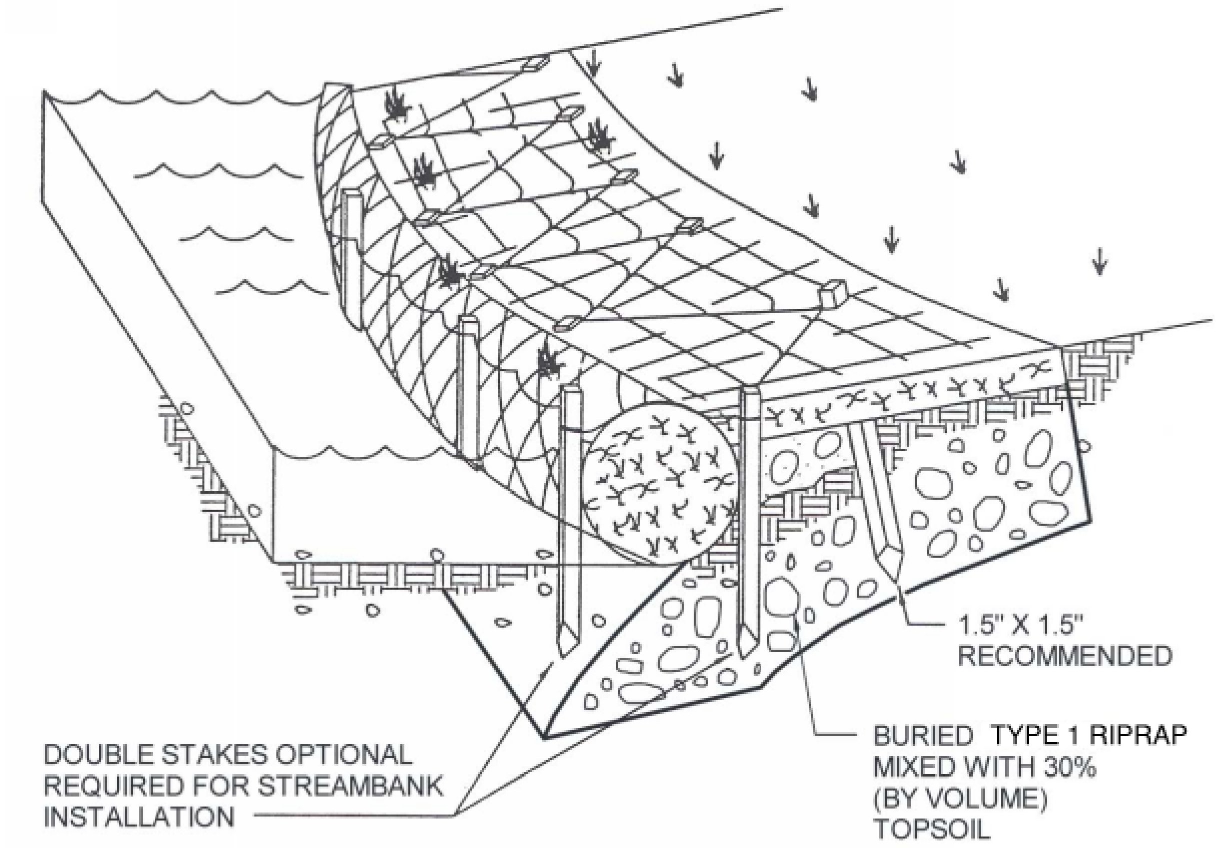


Figure OC-14 – Fiber Roll (UDFCD USDCM 2002)



NOTES:
1. LENGTH OF STAKE DETERMINED BY THE SUBSTRATE.
2. REFER TO CONTRACT DOCUMENTS FOR FURTHER DETAILS.

Reprinted from Salix Applied Earthcare, Erosion Draw 2.0, 1996

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

4.0 REFERENCES

American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE). 1975. *Sedimentation Engineering*. American Society of Civil Engineers Manuals and Reports on Engineering Practice No. 54. New York: ASCE.

American Society of Civil Engineers and Water Environment Federation (ASCE and WEF). 1992. *Design and Construction of Urban Stormwater Management Systems*. American Society of Civil Engineers Manuals and Reports of Engineering Practice No. 77 and Water Environment Federation Manual of Practice FD-20. New York: American Society of Civil Engineers.

Barnes, H.H. Jr. 1967. *Roughness Characteristics of Natural Channels*. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1849. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.

Bedient, Philip B. and Wayne C. Huber. 2002. *Hydrology and Floodplain Analysis*, Third Edition. Upper Saddle River, NJ ; Prentice Hall

Biedenharn, D.S., C.M. Elliot, and C.C. Watson. 1997. *The WES Stream Investigation and Streambank Stabilization Handbook*. Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station.

Bohan, J.P. 1970 *Erosion and Riprap Requirements at Culverts and Storm Drain Outlets.* WES Research Report H-70-2. Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station.

Calhoun, C.C., J.R. Compton, and W.E. Strohm. 1971. *Performance of Plastic Filter Cloth as Replacement for Granular Filter Materials*, Highway Research Record No. 373, pp. 74–85. Washington, D.C.: Highway Research Board.

Chow, V.T. 1959. *Open-Channel Hydraulics*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company.

Daugherty, R.L. and J.B. Franzini. 1977. *Fluid Mechanics with Engineering Applications*. New York: McGraw Hill.

Denver Regional Council of Governments (DRCOG). 1983 *Urban Runoff Quality in the Denver Region.* Denver, CO: Denver Regional Council of Governments.

Fletcher, B.P. and J.L. Grace. 1972. *Practical Guidance for Estimating and Controlling Erosion at Culvert Outlets*, WES Miscellaneous Paper H-72-5. Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station.

Fortier, S. and F.C. Scobey. 1926. Permissible Canal Velocities. *Transactions of the American Society of Civil Engineers,* Volume 89, pp. 940-956.

Guo, J. 1999. Roll Waves in High Gradient Channels. *Journal of Water International* 24(1)65-69.

Hipschman, R.A. 1970. Erosion Protection for the Outlet of Small and Medium Culverts. Master Thesis, Civil Engineering Department, South Dakota State University.

King, H.W. and E.F. Brater. 1963. *Handbook of Hydraulics for the Solution of Hydrostatic and Fluid-Flow Problems*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Lane, E.W. 1952. *Progress Report on Results of Studies on Design of Stable Channels*. Hyd-352. Denver, CO: Department of Interior, Bureau of Reclamation.

Lane, E.W. 1953. Progress Report on Studies on the Design of Stable Channels by the Bureau of Reclamation. *Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers.* Volume 79. Separate No. 280, pp. 1-31. 1953.

Lane, E.W. 1955a. Design of Stable Channels. *Transactions of the American Society of Civil Engineers,* Volume 120, pp. 1234–1260.

Lane, E.W. 1955b. The Importance of Fluvial Morphology in Hydraulic Engineering. *Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers.*

Leopold, L.B. 1994. *A View of the River*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Leopold, L.B. and T. Maddock Jr. 1953. *The Hydraulic Geometry of Stream Channels and Some Physiographic Implications.* Washington, DC: U.S. Geological Survey.

Maricopa County. 2000. *Drainage Design Manual for Maricopa County.* Phoenix, AZ: Maricopa County, Arizona.

Murphy, T.E. 1971. *Control of Scour at Hydraulic Structures*, WES Miscellaneous Paper H–71–5. Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station.

Posey, C.J. 1960. *Flood Erosion Protection for Highway Fills.* Bulletin No. 13. Ames, IA: Iowa Highway Research Board.

Rhoads, B.L. 1995. Stream Power: A Unifying Theme for Urban Fluvial Geomorphology. In *Stormwater runoff and Receiving Systems*, E.E. Herricks, ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Riley, A.L. 1998. *Restoring Streams in Cities: A Guide for Planners, Policymakers, and Citizens*. Washington, D.C.: Island Press. Washington.

Rosgen, D. 1996. *Applied River Morphology.* Pagosa Springs, CO: Wildland Hydrology.

Schiechtl, H. 1980. *Bioengineering for Land Reclamation and Conservation*. Edmonton, Alberta: University of Alberta Press.

Simons, D.B. 1957. *Theory and Design of Stable Channels in Alluvial Materials.* Ph.D. dissertation, Colorado State University. Fort Collins, CO.

Simons, D.B. and F. Senturk. 1992. *Sediment Transport Technology*. Littleton, CO: Water Publications.

Smith, C. D. 1975. Cobble Lined Structures. *Canadian Journal of Civil Engineering,* Volume 2.

Smith, C.D. 1974. *Hydraulic Structures.* Saskatoon, SK: University of Saskatchewan Printing Services.

Stevens, M.A., D.B. Simons, and F.J. Watts. 1971. *Riprapped Basins for Culvert Outfalls*. Highway Research Record No. 373. Washington, D.C.: Highway Research Service.

Stevens, M.A., D.B. Simons, and G.L. Lewis. 1976. Safety Factors for Riprap Protection. *Journal of the Hydraulics Division* 102 (5) 637–655.

Urban Drainage and Flood Control District (District). 1982. Communications between Dr. Michael A. Stevens and District staff.

———. 1984. *Guidelines for Development and Maintenance of Natural Vegetation.* Denver, CO: Urban Drainage and Flood Control District.

———. 1986. *Comparison of Measured Sedimentation With Predicted Sediment Loads*. Technical Memorandum in response to District Agreement No. 85–02.078 from WRC Engineering, Inc., to the Urban Drainage and Flood Control District. Denver, CO: Urban Drainage and Flood Control District.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE). 1970. *Hydraulics Design of Flood Control Channels.* USACE Design Manual EM 1110–2–1601. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.

———. 1991. *HEC-2, Water Surface Profiles, User's Manual*. Davis, CA: Army Corps of Engineers Hydrologic Engineering Center.

———. 1995. *HEC-RAS, River Analysis System, User's Manual*. Davis, CA: Army Corps of Engineers Hydrologic Engineering Center.

U.S. Bureau of Reclamation (USBR). 1984. *Computing Degradation and Local Scour*. Washington, DC: Bureau of Reclamation.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). 1983. *Results of the Nationwide Urban Runoff Program: Final Report*. Washington D.C.: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

U.S. Federal Interagency Stream Restoration Working Group (USFISRWG). 1998. *Stream Corridor Restoration: Principles, Processes, and Practices*. Washington, DC: U.S. Federal Interagency Stream Restoration Working Group.

Vallentine, H. R. and B.A. Cornish. 1962. *Culverts with Outlet Scour Control*. University of New South Report No. 62. Sydney, Australia: Wales, Water Research Laboratory.

Watson, C.C., D.S. Biedenharn, and S.H. Scott. 1999. *Channel Rehabilitation: Process, Design, and Implementation*. Washington, D.C.: Environmental Protection Agency.

Yang, C.T. 1996. *Sediment Transport: Theory and Practice.* New York: The McGraw-Hill.

CHAPTER 8. EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL

CONTENTS

Section Page ESC-

1.0 GENERAL

1.1 REQUIREMENT FOR EROSION CONTROL

Erosion control measures shall be taken during construction to minimize the amount of silt and soil from entering adjacent streams and storm drainage facilities and to protect slopes and fill areas.

1.2 PERMITS REQUIRED

A copy of the erosion control plan, prepared by the Engineer of Record, shall accompany the construction drawing submittal. In addition, the City may require a copy of the Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP), proof of Arkansas Department of Environmental Quality (ADEQ) approval of the SWPPP, and/or a copy of the Notice of Intent.

The Developer and/or Contractor are solely responsible to obtain any and all permits required by this or other statutes, and to be fully informed of the requirements of County, State, and Federal regulations pertaining to construction activity.

2.0 EROSION CONTROL METHODS

Control of erosion during construction requires an examination of the entire site to pinpoint potential problem areas, such as steep slopes, highly erodible soils, soil areas that will be unprotected for long periods or during peak rainy seasons, and natural drainageways. Steps should be taken to assure erosion control in these critical areas. After a heavy storm, the effectiveness of erosion control measures should be evaluated. Periodic maintenance and cleaning of the facilities is also important.

Control of erosion after construction consists primarily of minimizing bottom and side scouring of the natural drainageways. This can be accomplished with a proper initial design that limits velocities and specifies correct drainageways linings and structures, and by proper routine maintenance and repair of the system.

Some of the basic concepts for controlling erosion during and after construction are as follows. This chapter is not intended to be a complete source of information concerning erosion control or best management practices. For a more thorough treatment of these issues, please refer to Field Manual on Sediment and Erosion Control Best Management Practices for Contractors and Inspectors, by Jerald S. Fifield, Ph.D., CPESC.

Earth Slopes: Erosion of cut or fill slopes is usually caused by water concentrations at the top of the slope flowing down an unprotected bank. Runoff should be diverted to safe outlets. Slopes should be protected from erosion by quick establishment of a vegetative cover, benches, terraces, slope protection structures, mulches, or a combination of these practices as appropriate.

Waterways or Channels: Waterways should be designed to avoid serious erosion problems. Wide channels with flat side slopes lined with grass or other vegetation will usually be free of erosion. Where channel gradients are steep, linings or grade control structures may be required Space limitations may make it necessary to use concrete or stone linings. Every effort should be made to preserve natural channels.

Structures for Erosion Control: Erosion may be controlled through the use of grade control structures, energy dissipators, special culverts, and various types of pipe structures. Structures are expensive and should be used only after it has been determined that recommended vegetation, rock revetment, or other measures will not provide adequate erosion control.

Existing Vegetation: Good stands of existing vegetation adequate to control erosion should be preserved wherever possible.

Soil Treatment, Seeding, and Mulching: The ability of the soil to sustain vegetation intended for erosion control must be ascertained. The additional item of a mixture of fine-textured topsoil may be warranted to assure success of more attractive, lower maintenance vegetation. Liming and fertilization should be done according to recommendations based upon soil test information. After the soil has been prepared, the correct seed mixture, sod, ground cover, and mulch should be applied.

Outfall Design: The outfall pipe should be designed and located in a way that minimizes erosion, especially if the outfall flows to an overland flow area with a steep slope or is elevated above the base flow of the receiving streams. An energy dissipator may be necessary.

3.0 SILTATION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL

Proper control of soil erosion during and after construction is the most important element of siltation and sediment control. However, it is physically and economically impractical to entirely eliminate soil erosion. Therefore, provisions should be made to trap eroded material at specified points. Some measures that can be implemented are as follows:

- Temporary ponds that store runoff and allow suspended solids to settle can be used during construction and may be retained as part of the permanent storage system after construction.

- Protection of inlets to the underground pipe system can be accomplished during and after construction by placing straw bales around the structure. Bales will remain or be replaced, if deteriorating, until lots are revegetated.

- Egress points from construction sites should be controlled so that the sediment is not carried offsite by construction traffic.

4.0 CONTROL OF EROSION FOR SWALES, OPEN CHANNELS, AND DITCHES

In designing channels for erosion control, the velocity must be estimated and compared to the allowable velocity for the material in which the water is flowing. Table 9.3 indicates the allowable velocities for grass channels. It should be noted that the quantity of water that can be carried in well-established dense earth swales without erosion is surprisingly large, even for steep slopes. For urban residential drainageways, flow velocities for erosion- potential evaluation should be based upon the 10-year frequency runoff event, which generally is a practical break-point between initial costs and excessive maintenance costs.

Where the allowable velocity for a turf channel is exceeded, there are a number of alternatives to consider. They include: lining the channel with an impervious material; drop structures or other velocity and erosion control measures; gravel or riprap bottoms; and gabions (rock enclosed in wire baskets).

The probable performance of the open channels and swales should be evaluated for major storm runoff with respect to the depth and spread of water and erosion potential. Antecedent flow conditions resulting from previous storms are an important consideration. Open channels and swales may suffer damage during major storms, even if properly designed.

It is important that open channels be constructed in accordance with plans. When intermittent channels are sodded to the depth of the expected flow, they can immediately provide protection from minor storms. It may not be practical to establish turf in a drainage channel by seeding and mulching unless jute mats, or other similar protective materials, are placed over the seedbed.

5.0 DESIGN STANDARDS OF EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL METHODS

The following is a discussion of design standards and definitions for different erosion and sediment control methods to be used on construction sites and similarly disturbed areas. These methods are presented to help establish uniformity in the selection, design, review, approval, installation, and maintenance of practices contained in erosion and sediment control plans.

These methods have similar functions but may differ in life span and degree of maintenance. These methods are defined as temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control measures.

Temporary measures are designed to have a short life, typically for the duration of the construction period. They may be used only for a matter of days or weeks. Because of their short life, they need not be designed to last for many years with minimum maintenance, nor need they be built of highly durable materials. Nonetheless, they must receive regular maintenance during their period of use to remain effective. Such measures may have a low initial cost but may have a relatively high maintenance cost if frequent or intense storms occur during the construction period.

Permanent measures are intended to remain in place for 50 years or more with minimum maintenance, so they may be designed and constructed of durable materials with life span in mind.

Generally, both temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control practices for disturbed areas caused by excavation or other construction activities fall into two broad categories-vegetative practices and mechanical practices. An overview of most of the practices is contained in the following discussion.

5.1 VEGETATION PRACTICES

Vegetation practices may be either temporary or permanent. They may be applied singularly or in combination with other practices. Cutting, filling, and grading soils with heavy equipment results in areas of exposed subsoils or mixtures of soil horizons. Conditions such as acidity, low fertility, compaction, and dryness or wetness often prevail and are unfavorable to plant growth. These conditions should be considered in the selection of plant growth type.

Excessive long slopes and steep grades are often encountered or created .Water disposal structures are normally subjected to hydraulic forces requiring both special establishment techniques and grasses that have high resistance to scouring. Plants and techniques, however, are available to provide both temporary and permanent protective cover on these difficult sites.

1. Temporary Vegetation

   Earth moving activities such as heavy cutting, filling, and grading are generally performed in several stages and are often interrupted by lengthy periods, during which the land lies idle and is subject to accelerated erosion. In addition, final land grading may be completed during a season not favorable for immediate establishment of permanent vegetation. These and similar sites can be temporarily stabilized by establishment of rapid growing annual grasses. This type of vegetation provides quick protective cover and can later be worked into the soil for use as mulch when the site is prepared for establishment of permanent vegetation.

2. Permanent Vegetation

   When areas are to be vegetated permanently, special care should be taken in selecting the plants to be used There is a fairly wide selection of grasses, legumes, ground covers, shrubs, and trees from which to choose. If a high level of management can be provided, the range of plants that can be used is broader. Final selection should be based on adaptation of the plants to the soils and climate, suitability for their specific use, ease of establishment, longevity or ability to reseed, maintenance requirements, aesthetics, and other special qualities.

   Plans that provide long-lived stabilization with the minimum amount of required maintenance should be selected. Where management potential is limited because of specialized circumstances, the best plants to choose are those that are well adapted to the site and to the specific purpose for which they are to be used. For example, grasses used for waterway stabilization must be able to withstand submergence and provide a dense cover to prevent scouring of the channel boundary.

   In playgrounds, grasses must lend themselves to close grooming and be able to withstand heavy trampling. In some places, such as southern-exposed cut-and-fill slopes, the plants must be adapted to full sunlight and drought conditions. In other places, plants must be able to tolerate shade or high moisture conditions. Some plants can be used for beautification as well as for soil stabilization.

   Maintenance must be the most important consideration in selecting plants for permanent stabilization.

3. Mulching

   When final grading has not been completed, straw, wood chips, asphalt emulsion, jute matting, or similar materials can be applied to provide temporary protection. Areas brought to final grade during midsummer or winter can be mulched immediately and over-seeded at the proper season with a number of permanent grasses or legume species. Application of mulch to disturbed areas allows for more infiltration of water into the soil; reduces runoff; holds seed, fertilizer, and lime in place, retains soil moisture; helps maintain temperatures conducive to germination; and greatly retards erosion. Mulch is essential in establishing good stands of grasses and legumes in disturbed areas. It is important to anchor mulch to prevent it from blowing or washing off the site.

5.2 MECHANICAL PRACTICES

Where mulches and vegetated cover will not provide adequate protection against erosion and sediment damages, other erosion and sediment control measures will be needed. A number of mechanical practices can be used to curb erosion and sedimentation during construction. These practices must be selected in the proper combination, carefully designed, and constructed to accomplish the most effective job. The design of all mechanical practices must be based on the maximum storm runoff that will result from a 25-year-frequency storm and must consider the maximum storm runoff that will result from the 100-year-frequency storm if public health and safety are effected Figures 10.1 through 10.6 illustrate commonly used mechanical erosion and sediment control practices. The following are some of the conservation structures appropriate for use on excavation and construction sites and similar disturbed areas:

1. Temporary Construction Entrance

   This structure is a stone stabilized pad constructed at points where traffic will be entering or leaving a construction site from or to public right-of-way, street, alley, sidewalk, or parking area. Its purpose is to reduce or eliminate the transport of mud from the construction area onto the public right-of-way by motor vehicles or by runoff.

2. Diversion Dike

   This is a compacted earthen ridge constructed immediately above a cut or fill slope. Its purpose is to intercept storm runoff from upstream soil drainage areas and divert the water away from the exposed slope to a stabilized outlet.

3. Perimeter Dike

   This is a compacted earthen dike constructed along the perimeter of a disturbed area to divert sediment-laden stormwater to onsite trapping facilities. It is maintained until the disturbed area is permanently stabilized.

4. Interceptor Dike

   This is a temporary ridge of compacted soil or, preferably, gravel constructed across disturbed rights-of-way. An interceptor dike reduces erosion by intercepting stormwater and diverting it to stabilized outlets.

5. Straw Bale Barrier

   This is a temporary barrier constructed across or at the toe of the slope. Its purpose is to intercept and detain sediment from areas one-half acre or smaller where only sheet erosion may be a problem.

6. Gravel Outlet Structure

   This is an auxiliary structure installed in combination with and as a part of a diversion, interceptor, or perimeter dike, or other structures designed to temporarily detain sediment-laden stormwater. The gravel outlet provides a means of draining off and filtering the stormwater while retaining the sediment behind the structure.

7. Level Spreader

   This is a temporary structure that is constructed at zero grade across the slope where concentrated runoff may be intercepted and diverted onto a stabilized outlet. The concentrated flow or stormwater is convened to sheet flow at the outlet.

8. Waterways or Outlets

   Waterways may serve as outlets for diversion, berms, terraces, or other structures.

   They may be natural or constructed, shaped to the required dimension, and vegetated or paved for of runoff water. Usually they are constructed to one of three general cross sections: parabolic, trapezoidal, or V-shaped Where they are to be vegetated, parabolic waterways are the most commonly used. Successful function of a waterway depends on protection from erosion. This is achieved either by designing for flow velocities that are nonerosive for the vegetation used or by paving with concrete or rock.

9. Diversions

   These are designed, graded channels with a supporting ridge on the lower side constructed across the slope. Their purpose is to intercept surface water. Diversion structures may be temporary or permanent and graded or level. They are useful above cut slopes, borrow areas, gully heads, and similar areas. They can be constructed across cut slopes to reduce slope plains into nonerosive segments and can be used to move runoff water away from critical construction sites. They may be used at the base of cut or fill slopes to carry sediment-laden flow to traps or basins. Divisions should be located so that the water will empty into established disposal areas, natural outlets, or prepared individual outlets. Individual outlets can be designed as grass or paved waterways, chutes, or buried pipes.

10. Grade Stabilization Structures

   Grade stabilization structures can be constructed from such materials as earth, pipe, masonry concrete, steel, aluminum, wood, or a combination of these. Grade stabilization structures are used to safely convey water from one level to a lower level without damage, to reduce grade in a watercourse, to stabilize head cutting of watercourses, or to change the direction of flow of water. They can consist of straight drop spillways, box inlet drop spillways, drop box culverts, chutes, pipe drop inlets, or bond inlets. An earthen embankment is usually incorporated as part of this structure.

11. Sediment Basins

   Sediment basins can be used to trap runoff waters and sediment from disturbed areas. The water is temporarily detained to allow sediment to drop out and be retained in the basin while the water is automatically released.

   Sediment basins usually consist of a dam or embankment, a pipe outlet, and an emergency spillway. They are usually situated in natural drainageways or at the low corner of the site. In situations where embankments may not be feasible, a basin excavated below the earth's surface may serve the same purpose. A special provision, however, must be made for draining such an impoundment.

   Sediment basins may be temporary or permanent. Temporary ones serve only during the construction stage and are eliminated when vegetation is established and the area is stabilized. Permanent structures are designed to fit into the overall plan for the permanent installation. The size of the structure will depend upon the location, size of drainage area, soil type, and rainfall pattern. Significant space for sediment should be provided to store the expected sediment from the drainage area for the planned life of the structure, or provisions should be made for periodic cleanout of sediment from the basin. State and local safety regulations must be observed regarding design, warning signs, and fencing of these structures.

12. Sediment Trap

    A sediment trap is a structure of limited capacity designed to create a temporary pond around storm drain inlets or at points where silt-laden stormwater is discharged. It is used to trap sediment on construction sites, prevent storm drains from being blocked, and prevent sediment pollution of watercourses.

13. Land Grading

    Grading should be held to a minimum level that makes the site suitable for its intended purpose without appreciably increasing runoff. Grading only those areas required for immediate construction, as opposed to grading the entire site, greatly helps in controlling erosion. Large tracts should be graded in units of workable size within construction phases so that the first unit is stabilized before the next unit is opened up. This technique helps minimize the area and duration that the bare land is exposed to erosion.

14. Storm Drain Outlet Protection

    This practice involves putting paving or riprap on channel sections immediately below storm drain outlets. A storm drain outlet is designed to reduce the velocity of flow and prevent downstream channel erosion. It is also known as an energy dissipator.

15. Riprap

    This is a layer of rock placed over the soil surface to prevent erosion by service flow or wave action. Riprap may be used, as appropriate, as storm drain outlets, channel bank and bottom protection, roadside ditches protection, drop structures, etc.

16. Subsurface Drains

    Subsurface drains used to remove excess groundwater are sometimes required at the base of fill slopes or around building foundations. When heavy grading is done and natural water channels are filled, the subsurface drains may be used to prevent accumulation of groundwater. Subsurface drains may be needed in vegetated channels to lower a high water table and to improve drainage conditions so vegetation can be established and maintained.

17. Flexible Down Drain

    This is a temporary structure used to convey stormwater from one elevation to another without causing erosion. It is made of heavy-duty fabric or other material that can be removed when the permanent water disposal system is installed.

18. Silt Fence

    Silt fence barriers are constructed of a geosynthetic material attached (usually by staples) to wooden or metal posts to form a barrier "fence" surrounding construction areas. Silt fences must be placed at or beyond the toe of slopes in order to be effective in catching sediments from slopes. Silt fences do not generally act as filters, but cause sediments to drop out of stormwater by impounding the runoff, creating a temporary stilling pond behind the silt fence. Due to their nature and mechanism, silt fences must be installed with the bottom edge entrenched into the ground to be effective, and must be rigorously maintained at all times.

5.3 MISCELLANEOUS PRACTICES

Some other conservation practices should be observed during excavation and construction to increase the effectiveness of erosion and sediment control measures:

1. Locate storage and shop yards where erosion and sediment hazards are slight. If this is not feasible, apply necessary paving and erosion control practices.

2. Saturate ground or apply dust suppressors. Keeping dust down to tolerable limits on the construction site and haul roads is very important.

3. Use temporary bridges with culverts where fording of streams is objectionable. Avoid borrow areas where pollution from this operation is inevitable.

4. Protect streams from chemicals, fuels, lubricants, sewage, or other pollutants.

5. Avoid disposal of fill in floodplains or drainageways.

CHAPTER 9. STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION

CONTENTS

Section Page
SWPP-

1.0 GENERAL PROVISIONS

1.1 Purposes

The purpose and objectives of this Article are as follows:

1. To maintain and improve the quality of water impacted by the storm drainage system within the City of Tontitown.
2. To prevent the discharge of contaminated stormwater runoff and illicit discharges from industrial, commercial, residential, and construction sites into the storm drainage system within the City of Tontitown.
3. To promote public awareness of the hazards involved in the improper discharge of trash, yard waste, lawn chemicals, pet waste, wastewater, oil, petroleum products, cleaning products, paint products, hazardous waste, sediment and other pollutants into the storm drainage system.
4. To encourage recycling of used motor oil and safe disposal of other hazardous consumer products.
5. To facilitate compliance with state and federal standards and permits by owners of construction sites within the City.
6. To enable the City to comply with all federal and state laws and regulations applicable to the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permitting requirements for stormwater discharges.

1.2 Administrations

Except as otherwise provided herein; the City Engineer or other designated representative shall administer, implement, and enforce the provisions of this article.

1.3 Abbreviations

ADEQ – Arkansas Department of Environmental Quality

BMP – Best Management Practices

CFR – Code of Federal Regulations

EPA – U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

HHW – Household Hazardous Waste

MS4 – Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System

NPDES – National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System

SWP3 – Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan

1.4 Definitions

Unless a provision explicitly states otherwise, the following terms and phrases as used in this Article, shall have the meanings hereinafter designated.

Best Management Practices (BMP) here refers to management practices and methods to control pollutants in stormwater. BMPs are of two types: “source controls" (nonstructural) and “treatment controls” (structural). Source controls are practices that prevent pollution by reducing potential pollutants at their source, before they come into contact with stormwater. Treatment controls remove pollutants from stormwater. The selection, application and maintenance of BMPs must be sufficient to prevent or reduce the likelihood of pollutants entering the storm drainage system. Specific BMPs shall be imposed by the City and a list of appropriate BMPs can be obtained from the City.

City means the City of Tontitown, Arkansas.

Clearing means the act of cutting, removing from the ground, burning, damaging or destroying trees, stumps, hedge, brush, roots, logs, or scalping existing vegetation.

Commercial means pertaining to any business, trade, industry, or other activity engaged in for profit.

Construction Site means any location where construction activity occurs.

Contaminated means containing harmful quantities of pollutants.

Contractor means any person or firm performing or managing construction work at a construction site, including any construction manager, general contractor or subcontractor. Also includes, but is not limited to, earthwork, paving, building, plumbing, mechanical, electrical or landscaping contractors, and material suppliers delivering materials to the site.

Discharge means any addition or release of any pollutant, stormwater or any other substance whatsoever into storm drainage system.

Discharger means any person who causes, allows, permits, or is otherwise responsible for, a discharge, including, without limitation, any owner of a construction site or industrial facility.

Domestic Sewage means sewage originating primarily from kitchen, bathroom and laundry sources, including waste from food preparation, dishwashing, garbage grinding, toilets, baths, showers and sinks.

Earthwork means the disturbance of soils on a site associated with clearing, grading, or excavation activities.

Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) means the United State Environmental Protection Agency, the regional office thereof, any federal department, agency, or commission that may succeed to the authority of the EPA, and any duly authorized official of the EPA or such successor agency.

Facility means any building, structure, installation, process, or activity from which there is or may be a discharge of a pollutant.

Fertilizer means a substance or compound that contains an essential plant nutrient element in a form available to plants and is used primarily for its essential plant nutrient element content in promoting or stimulating growth of a plant or improving the quality of a crop, or a mixture of two or more fertilizers.

Garbage means putrescible animal and vegetable waste materials from the handling, preparation, cooking, or consumption of food, including waste materials from markets, storage facilities, and the handling and sale of produce and other food products.

Grading means any land altering activity, including stripping topsoil, excavating, cutting, filling or similar construction activity.

Groundwater means any water residing below the surface of the ground or percolating into or out of the ground.

Harmful Quantity means the amount of any substance that the City Engineer determines will cause an adverse impact to storm drainage system or will contribute to the failure of the City to meet the water quality based requirements of the NPDES permit for discharges from the MS4.

Hazardous Substance means any substance listed in Table 302.4 of 40 CFR Part 302.

Hazardous Waste means any substance identified or listed as a hazardous waste by the EPA pursuant to 40 CFR Part 261.

Household Hazardous Waste (HHW) means any material generated in a household (including single and multiple residences) that would be classified as hazardous.

Illegal Discharge see illicit discharge below.

Illicit Discharge means any discharge to the storm drainage system that is prohibited under this Article.

Illicit Connection means any drain or conveyance, whether on the surface or subsurface, which allows an illicit discharge to enter the storm drainage system.

Industrial Waste (or commercial waste) means any wastes produced as a byproduct of any industrial, institutional or commercial process or operation, other than domestic sewage.

Land Alteration means the process of grading, clearing, filling, excavating, quarrying, tunneling, trenching, construction or similar activities.

Mechanical Fluid means any fluid used in the operation and maintenance of machinery, vehicles and any other equipment, including lubricants, antifreeze, petroleum products, oil and fuel.

Mobile Commercial Cosmetic Cleaning (or mobile washing) means power washing, steam cleaning, and any other method of mobile cosmetic cleaning, of vehicles and/or exterior surfaces, engaged in for commercial purposes or related to a commercial activity.

Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4) means the system of conveyances, including roads, streets, curbs, gutters, ditches, inlets, drains, catch basins, pipes, tunnels, culverts, channels, detention basins and ponds owned and operated by the City and designed or used for collecting or conveying stormwater, and not used for collecting or conveying sanitary sewage.

NPDES means the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System.

NPDES Permit means a permit issued by EPA that authorizes the discharge of pollutants to Waters of the United States, whether the permit is applicable on an individual, group, or general area-wide basis.

Notice of Violation means a written notice detailing any violations of this Article and any action expected of the violators.

Oil means any kind of oil in any form, including, but not limited to: petroleum, fuel oil, crude oil, synthetic oil, motor oil, cooking oil, grease, sludge, oil refuse, and oil mixed with waste.

Owner means the person who owns a facility, part of a facility, or land.

Person means any individual, partnership, co-partnership, firm, company, corporation, association, Joint Stock Company, trust, estate, governmental entity, or any other legal entity; or their legal representatives, agents, or assigns, including all federal, state, and local governmental entities.

Pesticide means a substance or mixture of substances intended to prevent, destroy, repel, or migrate any pest.

Pet Waste (or Animal Waste) means excrement and other waste from domestic animals.

Petroleum Product means a product that is obtained from distilling and processing crude oil and that is capable of being used as a fuel or lubricant in a motor vehicle or aircraft, including motor oil, motor gasoline, gasohol, other alcohol blended fuels, aviation gasoline, kerosene, distillate fuel oil, and #1 and #2 diesel.

Pollutant means any substance attributable to water pollution, including but not limited to rubbish, garbage, solid waste, litter, debris, yard waste, pesticides, herbicides, fertilizers, pet waste, animal waste, domestic sewage, industrial waste, sanitary sewage, wastewater, septic tank waste, mechanical fluid, oil, motor oil, used oil, grease, petroleum products, antifreeze, surfactants, solvents, detergents, cleaning agents, paint, heavy metals, toxins, household hazardous waste, small quantity generator waste, hazardous substances, hazardous waste, soil and sediment.

Pollution means the alteration of the physical, thermal, chemical, or biological quality of, or the contamination of, any water that renders the water harmful, detrimental, or injurious to humans, animal life, plant life, property, or public health, safety, or welfare, or impairs the usefulness or the public enjoyment of the water for any lawful or reasonable purpose.

Potable Water means water that has been treated to drinking water standards and is safe for human consumption.

Private Drainage System means all privately or publicly owned ground, surfaces, structures or systems, excluding the MS4, that contribute to or convey stormwater, including but not limited to, roofs, gutters, downspouts, lawns, driveways, pavement, roads, streets, curbs, gutters, ditches, inlets, drains, catch basins, pipes, tunnels, culverts, channels, detention basins, ponds, draws, swales, streams and any ground surface.

Qualified Person mean a person who possesses the required certification, license, or appropriate competence, skills, and ability as demonstrated by sufficient education, training, and/or experience to perform a specific activity in a timely and complete manner consistent with the regulatory requirements & generally accepted industry standards for such activity.

Release means to dump, spill, leak, pump, pour, emit, empty, inject, leach, dispose or otherwise introduce into the storm drainage system.

Rubbish means non-putrescible solid waste, excluding ashes, that consist of: (A) combustible waste materials, including paper, rags, cartons, wood, excelsior, furniture, rubber, plastics, yard trimmings, leaves, and similar materials; and (B) noncombustible waste materials, including glass, crockery, tin cans, aluminum cans, metal furniture, and similar materials that do not burn at ordinary incinerator temperatures (1600 to 1800 degrees Fahrenheit).

Sanitary Sewage means the domestic sewage and/or industrial waste that is discharged into the City sanitary sewer system and passes through the sanitary sewer system to the City sewage treatment plant for treatment.

Sanitary Sewer means the system of pipes, conduits, and other conveyances which carry industrial waste and domestic sewage from residential dwellings, commercial buildings, industrial and manufacturing facilities, and institutions, whether treated or untreated, to the City sewage treatment plant (and to which stormwater, surface water, and groundwater are not intentionally admitted).

Sediment means soil (or mud) that has been disturbed or *eroded* and transported naturally by water, wind or gravity, or mechanically by any person.

Septic Tank Waste means any domestic sewage from holding tanks such as vessels, chemical toilets, campers, trailers, septic tanks and aerated tanks.

Shall means mandatory; may means discretionary.

Site means the land or water area where any facility or activity is physically located or conducted, including adjacent land used in connection with the facility or activity.

Solid Waste means any garbage, rubbish, refuse and other discarded material, including solid, liquid, semisolid, or contained gaseous material, resulting from industrial, municipal, commercial, construction, mining or agricultural operations, and residential, community and institutional activities.

State means The State of Arkansas.

Storm Drainage System means all surfaces, structures and systems that contribute to or convey stormwater, including private drainage systems, the MS4, surface water, groundwater, Waters of the State and Waters of the United States.

Stormwater means runoff resulting from precipitation.

Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWP3) means a document that describes the Best Management Practices to be implemented at a site, to prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants.

Subdivision Development includes activities associated with the platting of any parcel of land into two or more lots and includes all construction activity taking place thereon.

Surface Water means water bodies and any water temporarily residing on the surface of the ground, including oceans, lakes, reservoirs, rivers, ponds, streams, puddles, channelized flow and runoff.

Uncontaminated means not containing harmful quantities of pollutants.

Used Oil (or Used Motor Oil) means any oil that as a result of use, storage, or handling, has become unsuitable for its original purpose because of impurities or the loss of original properties.

Utility Agency means private utility companies, City departments or contractors working for private utility companies or City departments, engaged in the construction or maintenance of utility distribution lines and services, including water, sanitary sewer, storm sewer, electric, gas, telephone, television and communication services.

Wastewater means any water or other liquid, other than uncontaminated stormwater, discharged from a facility.

Water of the State (or water) means any groundwater, percolating or otherwise, lakes, bays, ponds, impounding reservoirs, springs, rivers, streams, creeks, estuaries, marshes, inlets, canals, inside the territorial limits of the State, and all other bodies of surface water, natural or artificial, navigable or non-navigable, and including the beds and banks of all water courses and bodies of surface water, that are wholly or partially inside or bordering the State or inside the jurisdiction of the State.

Water Quality Standard means the designation of a body or segment of surface water in the State for desirable uses and the narrative and numerical criteria deemed by State or Federal regulatory standards to be necessary to protect those uses.

Waters of the United States means all waters which are currently used, were used in the past, or may be susceptible to use in interstate or foreign commerce, including all waters which are subject to the ebb and the flow of the tide; all interstate waters, including interstate wetlands; all other waters the use, degradation, or destruction of which would affect or could affect interstate or foreign commerce; all impoundments of waters otherwise defined as waters of the United States under this definition; all tributaries of waters identified in this definition; all wetlands adjacent to waters identified in this definition; and any waters within the federal definition of “waters of the United States” at 40 CFR Section 122.2; but not including any waste treatment systems, treatment ponds, or lagoons designed to meet the requirements of the Federal Clean Water Act.

Wetland means any area that is inundated or saturated by surface or groundwater at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances does support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions. Wetlands generally include swamps, marshes, bogs, and similar areas.

Yard Waste means leaves, grass clippings, tree limbs, brush, soil, rocks or debris that result from landscaping, gardening, yard maintenance or land clearing operations.

2.0 PROHIBITIONS AND REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Prohibitions

1. No person shall release or cause to be released into the storm drainage system any discharge that is not composed entirely of uncontaminated stormwater, except as allowed herein. Common stormwater contaminants include trash, yard waste, lawn chemicals, pet waste, wastewater, oil, petroleum products, cleaning products, paint products, hazardous waste and sediment.

2. Any discharge shall be prohibited by this Section if the discharge in question has been determined by the Town Council to be a source of pollutants to the storm drainage system.

3. The construction, use, maintenance, or continued existence of illicit connections to the storm drain system is prohibited. This prohibition expressly includes, without limitation, illicit connections made in the past, regardless of whether the connection was permissible under law or practices applicable or prevailing at the time of connection.

4. No person shall connect a line conveying sanitary sewage, domestic sewage or industrial waste, to the storm drainage system, or allow such a connection to continue.

5. No person shall maliciously destroy or interfere with BMPs implemented pursuant to this Article.

2.2 Exemptions

The following non-stormwater discharges are deemed acceptable and not a violation of this Section:

1. A discharge authorized by an NPDES permit other than the NPDES permit for discharges from the MS4;

2. Uncontaminated waterline flushing and other infrequent discharges from potable water sources;

3. Infrequent uncontaminated discharge from landscape irrigation or lawn watering;

4. Discharge from the occasional non-commercial washing of vehicles on properties zoned A, R-1, R-2, R-3, RE-1, RE-2, MF-1 or MF-2;

5. Uncontaminated discharge from foundation, footing or crawl space drains, sump pumps and air conditioning condensation drains;

6. Uncontaminated groundwater, including rising groundwater, groundwater infiltration into storm drains, pumped groundwater and springs;

7. Diverted stream flows and natural riparian habitat or wetland flows;

8. A discharge or flow of fire protection water that does not contain oil or hazardous substances or materials.

2.3 Requirements Applicable to Certain Dischargers

1. <u>Private Drainage System Maintenance.</u> The owner of any private drainage system shall maintain the system to prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants. This maintenance shall include, but is not limited to, sediment removal, bank erosion repairs, maintenance of vegetative cover, and removal of debris from pipes and structures.

2. Minimization of Irrigation Runoff. A discharge of irrigation water that is of sufficient quantity to cause a concentrated flow in the storm drainage system is prohibited. Irrigation systems shall be managed to reduce the discharge of water from a site.

3. Cleaning of Paved Surfaces Required. The owner of any paved parking lot, street or drive shall clean the pavement as required to prevent the buildup and discharge of pollutants. The visible buildup of mechanical fluid, waste materials, sediment or debris is a violation of this ordinance. Paved surfaces shall be cleaned by dry sweeping, wet vacuum sweeping, collection and treatment of wash water or other methods in compliance with this Code. This section does not apply to pollutants discharged from construction activities.

4. Maintenance of Equipment Any leak or spill related to equipment maintenance in an outdoor, uncovered area shall be contained to prevent the potential release of pollutants. Vehicles, machinery and equipment must be maintained to reduce leaking fluids.

5. Materials Storage. In addition to other requirements of this Code, materials shall be stored to prevent the potential release of pollutants. The uncovered, outdoor storage of unseated containers of hazardous substances is prohibited.

6. Pet Waste. Pet waste shall be disposed of as solid waste or sanitary sewage in a timely manner, to prevent discharge to the storm drainage system.

7. Pesticides, Herbicides and Fertilizers. Pesticides, herbicides and fertilizers shall be applied in accordance with manufacturer recommendations and applicable laws. Excessive application shall be avoided.

8. Prohibition on Use of Pesticides and Fungicides Banned from Manufacture. Use of any pesticide, herbicide or fungicide, the manufacture of which has been either voluntarily discontinued or prohibited by the Environmental Protection Agency, or any Federal, State or City regulation is prohibited.

9. Open Drainage Channel Maintenance. Every person owning or occupying property through which an open drainage channel passes shall keep and maintain that part of the drainage channel within the property free of trash, debris, excessive vegetation, and other obstacles that would pollute, contaminate, or retard the flow of water through the drainage channel. In addition, the owner or occupant shall maintain existing privately owned structures adjacent to a drainage channel, so that such structures will not become a hazard to the use, function, or physical integrity of the drainage channel.

2.4 Release Reporting and Cleanup

Any person responsible for a known or suspected release of materials which are resulting in or may result in illegal discharges to the storm drainage system shall take all necessary steps to ensure the discovery, containment, abatement and cleanup of such release. In the event of such a release of a hazardous material, said person shall comply with all state, federal, and local laws requiring reporting, cleanup, containment, and any other appropriate remedial action in response to the release. In the event of such a release of non-hazardous materials, said person shall notify the City no later than 5:00 p.m. of the next business day.

2.5 Authorization to Adopt and Impose Best Management Practices

The City may adopt and impose requirements identifying Best Management Practices for any activity, operation, or facility, which may cause a discharge of pollutants to the storm drainage system. Where specific BMP’s are required, every person undertaking such activity or operation, or owning or operating such facility shall implement and maintain these BMP’s at their own expense.

3.0 STORMWATER DISCHARGES FROM CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES

3.1 General Requirements for Construction Sites

1. The owner of a site of construction activity shall be responsible for compliance with the requirements of this ordinance.

2. Before construction can begin, the contractor is required to install the erosion control devices and BMPs required in the SWPPP that are necessary and able to be installed. Once this has been done, the contractor shall notify the City and an inspection will be completed by City or other authorized personnel. Upon acceptance of the erosion control device and BMP installation, a pre-construction conference will be scheduled. Construction may begin upon City approval following the pre-construction conference.

3. Waste Disposal. Solid waste, industrial waste, yard waste and any other pollutants or waste on any construction site shall be controlled through the use of Best Management Practices. Waste or recycling containers shall be provided and maintained by the owner or contractor on construction sites where there is the potential for release of waste. Uncontained waste that may blow, wash or otherwise be released from the site is prohibited.

4. Ready-mixed concrete, or any materials resulting from the cleaning of vehicles or equipment containing or used in transporting or applying ready-mixed concrete, shall be contained on construction sites for proper disposal. Release of these materials is prohibited.

5. Erosion and Sediment Control. Best Management Practices shall be implemented to prevent the release of sediment from construction sites. Disturbed areas shall be minimized, disturbed soil shall be managed and construction site entrances shall be managed to prevent sediment tracking. Excessive sediment tracked onto public streets shall be removed immediately.

6. Erosion and Sediment Control. No construction of any development may proceed nor may a Developer receive a Building Permit nor may Final Plat approval be issued for a subdivision without an approved bond being posted for the cost of the site development work that would cause land disturbing activity unless the Developer has:

    a. The approved drainage and/or detention facilities constructed and certified by the project Engineer of Record with "As-built" plans being submitted to the City.

    b. If determined necessary by the City Engineer, an Erosion Control Plan must be submitted for approval.

7. For purposes of this Ordinance, "land disturbing activity" means any use of land by any person in residential, industrial, educational, institutional, or commercial development, highway and road construction and maintenance that results in a change in the natural cover or topography and that may cause to contribute to sedimentation, except for ordinary agricultural practices, City, County, State, or Federally funded and authorized construction and maintenance. Sedimentation occurs whenever solid particulate matter, mineral or organic, is transported by water, air, gravity, or ice from the site of its origin. In determining the need for sedimentation or erosion control, the decision of the City Engineer is final.

8. Upon completion of permitted construction activity on any site, the property owner and subsequent property owners will be responsible for continued compliance with the requirements of this ordinance, in the course of maintenance, reconstruction or any other construction activity on the site.

3.2 Sites Requiring an Approved SWPPP

This section applies to all construction sites of greater than or equal to one (1) acre but less than five (5) acres of land where construction on a site will disturb soil or remove vegetation during the life of the construction project. A copy of the Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWP3) and Construction Site Notice for the project must be provided to the City by the construction site owner before construction begins.

This section also applies to all construction sites of greater than or equal to five (5) acres of land where construction on a site will disturb soil or remove vegetation during the life of the construction project. A copy of the ADEQ approved Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWP3) and ADEQ stormwater permit for the project must be provided to the City by the construction site owner before construction begins.

The owner/developer bears the responsibility for implementation of the SWP3 and notification of all contractors and utility agencies on the site.

3.3 Subdivision Developments and Other Sites Requiring a SWPPP

Where construction of a subdivision development will disturb soil or remove vegetation on greater than or equal to one (1) but less than five (5) acres of land during the life of the development project, a copy of the Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans (SWPPPs) and a copy of the Construction Site Notice for the project must be provided. Where construction of a subdivision development will disturb soil or remove vegetation on five (5) or more acres of land during the life of the development project, a copy of the ADEQ approved Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans (SWPPPs) and a copy of the ADEQ stormwater permit for the project must be provided to the City. The SWPPP must be implemented by the subdivision owner/developer as follows:

1. The area disturbed shall be assumed to include the entire platted area, unless shown otherwise.

2. SWP3's must be provided by the subdivision owner/developer.

3. SWP3's must be provided for all phases of development, including sanitary sewer construction, storm drainage system construction, waterline, street and sidewalk construction, general grading and the construction of individual homes. The subdivision owner/developer will not be required to provide an SWP3 for the activities of utility agencies within the subdivision.

4. The subdivision owner/developer shall provide a copy of the approved SWP3's to all utility agencies prior to their working within the subdivision.

5. The subdivision owner/developer bears the responsibility for implementation of the approved SWP3's for all construction activity within the development, excluding construction managed by utility agencies.

6. The subsequent owner of an individual lot bears the responsibility for continued implementation of the approved SWP3's for all construction activity within or related to the individual lot, excluding construction managed by utility agencies.

Where construction of any kind of site will disturb soil or remove vegetation on greater than or equal to one (1) acres of land during the life of the development project, a Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans (SWPPPs) must be prepared per ADEQ regulations.

3.4 Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans

Preparation and implementation of Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans for construction activity shall comply with the following:

1. Preparation

    a. The SWP3 shall be prepared under the direction of a qualified person.

    b. The SWP3 shall follow all the current EPA and ADEQ guidelines set forth for the development of said plans.

    c. The SWP3 shall be prepared in accordance with the current City of Tontitown drainage ordinance.

2. Implementation

    a. BMP's shall be installed and maintained by qualified persons. The owner/developer or their representative shall maintain and be able to provide upon request a copy of the SWP3 on site and shall be prepared to respond to unforeseen maintenance of specific BMP's.

    b. The owner/developer or their representative shall inspect all BMP's at least once per month and within 24 hours after a rainfall of one half of an inch or more as measured at the site.

Based on inspections performed by the owner/developer or by authorized City personnel, modifications to the SWP3 will be necessary if at any time the specified BMP’s do not meet the objectives of this ordinance. In this case, the owner/developer or authorized representative shall meet with authorized City personnel or their authorized representative to determine the appropriate modifications. All modifications shall be completed within seven (7) days of the referenced inspection, except in circumstances necessitating more timely attention, and shall be recorded on the owner’s copy of the SWP3.

3.5 Requirements for Utility Construction

1. Utility agencies shall be responsible for compliance with the requirements this ordinance.

2. Utility agencies shall develop and implement Best Management Practices (BMP’s) to prevent the discharge of pollutants on any site of utility construction within the City. In addition, the City may adopt and impose BMP's on utility construction activity.

3. Utility agencies shall implement BMP’s to prevent the release of sediment from utility construction sites. Disturbed areas shall be minimized, disturbed soil shall be managed and construction site entrances shall be managed to prevent sediment tracking. Excessive sediment tracked onto public streets shall be removed immediately.

4. Prior to entering a construction site or subdivision development, utility agencies shall have obtained from the owner a copy of any SWP3’s for the project. Any disturbance to BMP’s resulting from utility construction shall be repaired immediately by the utility company in compliance with the SWP3.

5.

4.0 ENFORCEMENT

4.1 Enforcement Personnel Authorized

The following personnel shall have the power to issue Notices of Violations and implement other enforcement actions under this ordinance as provided by the City of Tontitown:

1. All inspectors employed by the City of Tontitown.

2. The City Engineer or his authorized representatives.

4.2 Right of Entry and Sampling

1. Whenever the City Engineer has cause to believe that there exists, or potentially exists, in or upon any premises any condition which constitutes a violation of this ordinance, the City Engineer or his authorized representative shall have the right to enter the premises at any reasonable time to determine if the discharger is complying with all requirements of this ordinance. In the event that the owner or occupant refuses entry after a request to enter has been made, the City is hereby empowered to seek assistance from a court of competent jurisdiction in obtaining such entry.

2. The City shall have the right to set up on the property of any discharger to the storm drainage system such devices that are necessary to conduct sampling of discharges.

4.3 Enforcement Procedures

This policy establishes a formal enforcement procedure to be followed by the City of Tontitown's City Engineer when enforcement action is necessary on sites that do not comply with the City's Stormwater Pollution Prevention, Erosion Control, and Grading Ordinance. Enforcement cases can be generated in any of three ways: (1) through the construction review process; (2) through complaints from individuals, groups, etc.; and (3) through referrals from City/State agencies. Procedures to be followed for each of these methods are outlined below.

1. Construction Review: Every effort is made to use the Construction Review process to correct deficiencies in site compliance whenever possible. Should that process fail to achieve expected results or if the site reviewer feels that a violation is serious enough to warrant enforcement action, the following procedures shall be followed:

   a. Issuance of Notice of Violation:

      If site deficiencies are noted, the owner/developer or authorized agent shall be given a notice of violation. The notice of violation shall be specific as to the noted violation, corrective measures to be taken, and time frame allowed to complete the work.

   b. Compliance Review;

      At the end of the time period specified above, a follow-up site inspection shall take place to determine whether compliance has been achieved. Depending on that determination, the following actions may occur.

1. Site Violations Corrected: If all previous site violations have been corrected, the site reviewer shall issue an inspection report stating that fact and the site shall be returned to a normal Construction Review status.

2. Previous Violations Not Corrected: If previously noted violations have not been satisfactorily corrected, the further actions may be initiated as outlined in the following section.

2. Submissions from the General Public

   Members of the General Public may submit information pertaining to this ordinance to the City of Tontitown. The Stormwater Inspector and/or Code Enforcement Officer will consider such submissions as they pertain to the implementation and enforcement of this ordinance and will provide written or verbal response to the person submitting the information.

3. Referrals from other agencies will be handled in the following manner:

   a. Cases will be referred directly to the Stormwater Inspector. At this point the Stormwater Inspector will determine if enforcement actions are warranted and if proper documentation has been obtained. If the Stormwater Inspector determines that action is required, the enforcement process will be set into motion.

   b. Cases received by the Stormwater Inspector will handled on a first come, first served basis. All enforcement actions will be initiated by a site inspection to verify site conditions that caused the case to be referred. If conditions have been corrected or do not exist as stated in the referral, the case will be returned to file for documentation and reporting purposes. If conditions exist as stated in the referral, *enforcement* actions will proceed. (See 3c)

   c. Once site conditions have been verified and the site is determined to be in a state of non-compliance two avenues of enforcement can be pursued, one for the infrequent offender and one for the frequent offender.

      1. <u>Infrequent Offender</u>, if an individual or company is being reviewed by the Stormwater Inspector for the first time or it has been at least 3 years since the last violation (36 months has elapsed since last review), notice to comply will be issued to the owner/developer informing them they are not in compliance with the City's Stormwater Pollution Prevention, Erosion Control, and Grading Ordinance, the steps needed to be taken to get into compliance, and that they

have an established time frame to complete the work. At the end of the period the Stormwater Inspector will re-inspect to check for compliance. If all work has been satisfactorily completed the case will be returned to file for documentation and reporting purposes. If the work has not been satisfactorily completed within the established time frame a citation (ticket) will be issued to the owner developer and follow up will be done until the site is brought into compliance.

2. Frequent Offender, if an individual or company has been reviewed by the Stormwater Inspector at any time in the preceding 36 months, they will be considered repeat offenders. Repeat offenders will be issued a citation (ticket) by the Code Enforcement Officer upon verification of non-compliance with the City's Stormwater Pollution Prevention, Erosion Control, and Grading Ordinance. Follow-up will continue until the site has been brought into compliance.

4.4 Enforcement Options for Failure to Comply

1. City of Tontitown's Stormwater Inspector or Code Enforcement Officer may issue a stop work order to any persons violating any provision of the City's Stormwater Pollution Prevention, Erosion Control, and Grading Ordinance by ordering that all site work stop except that necessary to comply with any administrative order.

2. City of Tontitown's Stormwater Inspector or Code Enforcement Officer may request that the City of Tontitown refrain from issuing any further building or grading permits until outstanding violations have been remedied.

3. City of Tontitown's Code Enforcement Officer may initiate penalties as stipulated herein. Complete information concerning enforcement and penalties is described below.

4.5 Action without Prior Notice

Any person who violates a prohibition or fails to meet a requirement of this Article will be subject, without prior notice, to one or more of the enforcement actions, when attempts to contact the person have failed and the enforcement actions are necessary to stop an actual or threatened discharge which presents or may present imminent danger to the environment, or to the health or welfare of persons, or to the storm drainage system.

4.6 Enforcement Actions

1. Recovery of Costs. Within 30 days after abatement by City representatives, the Public Works Director shall notify the property owner of the costs of abatement, including administrative costs, and the deadline for payment. The property owner may protest the assessment before the City Council. The written protest must be received by the Mayor's Office within 15 days of the date of the notification. A hearing on the matter will be scheduled before the City Council. The decision of the City Council shall be final. If the amount due is not paid within the protest period or within 10 days of the decision of the City Council, the charges shall become a special assessment against the property and shall constitute a lien on the property for the amount of the assessment. A copy of the resolution shall be turned over to the County Clerk so that the Clerk may enter the amounts of the assessment against the parcel as it appears on the current assessment roll, and the Treasurer shall include the amount of the assessment on the bill for taxes levied against the parcel of land.

2. Termination of Utility Services. After lawful notice to the customer and property owner concerning the proposed disconnection, the Mayor shall have the authority to order the disconnection of City water, sanitary sewer and/or sanitation services, upon a finding by the Code Enforcement Officer that the disconnection of utility services will remove a violation of this Article that poses a public health hazard or environmental hazard.

3. Performance Bonds. Where necessary for the reasonable implementation of this Article, the Mayor may, by written notice, order any owner of a construction site or subdivision development to file a satisfactory bond, payable to the City, in a sum not to exceed a value determined by the City Engineer to be necessary to achieve consistent compliance with this Article. The City may deny approval of any building permit, subdivision plat, site development plan, or any other City permit or approval necessary to commence or continue construction or to assume occupancy, until such a performance bond has been filed. The owner may protest the amount of the performance bond before the City Council. The written protest must be received by the Mayor's Office within 15 days of the date of the notification. A hearing on the matter will be scheduled before the City Council. The decision of the City Council shall be final.

4. Criminal Prosecution. Any person who violates or continues to violate a prohibition or requirement of this Article shall be liable to criminal prosecution to the fullest extent of the law, and shall be subject to criminal penalties.

4.7 Criminal Penalties

The violation of any provision of this ordinance shall be deemed a municipal offense. Any person violating this ordinance shall, upon an adjudication of guilt or a plea of no contest, be fined according to the schedule of fines. Each separate day on which a violation is committed or continues shall constitute a separate offense.

1. Other Legal Action

   Notwithstanding any other remedies or procedures available to the City, if any person discharges into the storm drainage system in a manner that is contrary to the provisions of this ordinance, the City Attorney may commence an action for appropriate legal and equitable relief including damages and costs in any court of competent jurisdiction. The City Attorney may seek a preliminary or permanent injunction or both which restrains or compels the activities on the part of the discharger.

2. Violations/Schedule of Fines

   A violation of any of the foregoing provisions shall be punished in accord with the following schedule of fines:

Offense	Fine (per offense)
First	$1,000
Second	$2,000
Third	$4,000
Fourth and subsequent offenses	$8,000